

Grammar Sense

SERIES DIRECTOR
Susan Kesner Bland

2

NEBRASKA
PROFESSOR

Cheryl Pavlik

OXFORD

Grammar Sense

2

SERIES DIRECTOR

Susan Kesner Bland

Cheryl Pavlik

Linda e-mail

lsw16@psu.edu.

Chapter= 10, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17, 20, 21, 22

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

198 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street
Oxford OX2 6DP England

Oxford New York
Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai
Nairobi São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

OXFORD is a trademark of Oxford University Press.

Copyright © 2004 Oxford University Press
ISBN 0-19-436571-9 Student Book
ISBN 0-19-436634-0 Student Book with CDs pack

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Pavlik, Cheryl, 1949-
Grammar sense 2 / series director, Susan Kesner Bland ;
Cheryl Pavlik.
p. cm.
Includes index.
ISBN 0-19-436571-9
1. English language—Textbooks for foreign speakers. 2. English
language—Grammar—Problems, exercises, etc. I. Title: Grammar
sense two. II. Bland, Susan Kesner. III. Title.

PE1128.P375 2004
428.2'4—dc21

2003051757

No unauthorized photocopying.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Oxford University Press.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Editorial Manager: Janet Aitchison
Senior Editor: Stephanie Karras
Editor: Diane Flanel Piniaris
Associate Editor: Kim Steiner
Art Director: Lynn Luchetti
Design Project Manager: Mary Chandler
Designer (cover): Lee Anne Dollison
Senior Art Buyer: Jodi Waxman
Art Buyer: Judi DeSouter
Production Manager: Shanta Persaud
Production Controller: Eve Wong

Book design: Bill Smith Studio
Composition: Compset, Inc.
Indexer: Leonard Neufeld

Printing (last digit): 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

Printed in Hong Kong.

Acknowledgments

Cover image: © Kevin Schafer / Peter Arnold, Inc.

Illustrations by:

Barbara Bastian, Lyndall Culbertson, Mike Hortens Design, Patrick Faricy, Paul Hampson, Randy Jones, Jon Keegan, Laura Hartman Maestro, Tom Newsom, Roger Penwill, Alan Reingold, Don Stewart, Bill Thomson, Scott Tysick / Masterfile, Bob Wilson

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs:

Macduff Everton / CORBIS; Tom Brakefield / Bruce Coleman, Inc.; Wally McNamee / CORBIS; Ron Russell / ImageState; photograph of Voyager: NASA, JPL, and Caltech; Associated Press; Hulton Archive / Getty Images; Ted Streshinsky / CORBIS; Rosenberg Library, Galveston, Texas; Keith Black / Index Stock Imagery; PhotoDisc; Comstock; Robin Lynne Gibson / Getty Images; Eric Futran / FoodPix; Bettmann / CORBIS; Patrick Robert / Corbis Sygma; W. Bibikow / Jonarnold.com; EyeWire / Getty Images; Rob Gage / Getty Images; Ken Reid / Getty Images; Renee Lynn / Photo Researchers, Inc.; Ron Cohn / The Gorilla Foundation; Dan Suzio / Photo Researchers, Inc.; Will and Deni McIntyre / Getty Images / Stone; Hammecher Schlemmer; Jodi Waxman / OUP; Roy Morsch / CORBIS; PhotoAlto / Robert Harding World Imagery; Pictures Colour Library; Duomo / CORBIS

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce these extracts and adaptations of copyrighted material:

pp. 4–5. "Mysterious Island." This article first appeared in *The Christian Science Monitor* on June 16, 1998, and is reproduced with permission. © 1998 The Christian Science Publishing Society. All rights reserved; pp. 48–49. "The Decade That Mattered." ©1991 Time Inc. Reprinted by permission; pp. 90–91. "This man's been nearly everywhere." This article first appeared in *The Christian Science Monitor* on March 10, 1998, and is reproduced with permission. © 1998 The Christian Science Publishing Society. All rights reserved; p. 263. "Mood Foods." Courtesy of *Seventeen* magazine / Karen Robinovitz. www.seventeen.com; p. 283. From *Carnivorous Plants* by Cynthia Overbeck. Text copyright © 1982 by Lerner Publications, a division of Lerner Publishing Group. Adapted from a book first published in Japan by Akane Shobo Publishers (Tokyo) entitled *Insectivorous Plants* by Kiyoshi Shimizu. Used by permission. All rights reserved; p. 303. From the *Hammacher Schlemmer* catalog; pp. 318–319. From *The Personality Compass* by Diane Turner. Reprinted with permission by HarperCollins Publishers Ltd; pp. 382–383. "10 Easy Ways to Start Saving Money" by Franny Van Nevel; p. 413. Adapted from "Learn2Fry An Egg" with permission by Learn2.com, Inc. All rights reserved.

Acknowledgements

It takes a village to write a grammar series. I am humbled by the expertise of all those who have contributed in so many ways.

I am grateful to Cheryl Pavlik for her intellectual curiosity, creativity, wit, and for her friendship. A special thanks goes to Stephanie Karras for putting all of the pieces together with such commitment and superb organizational and problem-solving skills, mixed with just the right amount of levity. I owe a special debt of gratitude to Janet Aitchison for her continued support and encouragement from the very beginning, and for her help with the big issues as well as the small details.

It has been a pleasure working closely with Diane Flanel Piniaris, Pietro Alongi, Andrew Gitzy, James Morgan, Nan Clarke, Randee Falk, and Marietta Urban. Their comments, questions, grammar insights, and creative solutions have been invaluable. Many thanks also go to the talented editorial, production, and design staff at Oxford University Press; to Susan Lanzano for her role in getting this project started; and to Susan Mraz for her help in the early stages.

Finally, I owe everything to my family, Bob, Jenny, and Scott, for always being there for me, as well as for their amusing views about everything, especially grammar.

Susan Kesner Bland,
Series Director

The Series Director and Publisher would like to acknowledge the following individuals for their invaluable input during the development of this series:

Harriet Allison, Atlanta College of Art, GA; **Alex Baez**, Southwest Texas State University, TX; **Nathalie Bailey**, Lehman College, CUNY, NY; **Jamie Beaton**, Boston University, MA; **Michael Berman**, Montgomery College, MD; **Angela Blackwell**, San Francisco State University, CA; **Vera Bradford**, IBEU, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil; **Glenda Bro**, Mount San Antonio Community College, CA; **Jennifer Burton**, University of California, San Francisco, CA; **Magali Duignan**, Augusta State University, GA; **Anne Ediger**, Hunter College, CUNY, NY; **Joyce Grabowski**, Flushing High School, NY; **Virginia Heringer**, Pasadena City College, CA; **Rocia Hernandez**, Mexico City, Mexico; **Nancy Hertfield-Pipkin**, University of California, San Diego, CA; **Michelle Johnstone**, Mexico City, Mexico; **Kate de Jong**, University of California, San Diego, CA; **Pamela Kennedy**, Holyoke Community College, MA; **Jean McConochie**, Pace University, NY; **Karen McRobie**, Golden Gate University, CA; **Elizabeth Neblett**, Union County College, NJ; **Dian Perkins**, Wheeling High School, IL; **Fausto Rocha de Marcos Rebelo**, Recife, Brazil; **Mildred Rugger**, Southwest Texas State University, TX; **Dawn Schmidt**, California State University, San Marcos, CA; **Katharine Sherak**, San Francisco State University, CA; **Lois Spitzer**, University of Nebraska-Lincoln, NE; **Laura Sterling**, University of California, San Francisco, CA; **Annie Stumpfhauser**, Morelios, Mexico; **Anthea Tillyer**, Hunter College, CUNY, NY; **Julie Un**, Massasoit Community College, MA; **Susan Walker**, SUNY New Paltz, NY; **Cheryl Weckslers**, California State University, San Marcos, CA; **Teresa Wise**, Georgia State University, GA.

Contents

Introduction	x
--------------------	---

PART 1: The Present

CHAPTER 1: The Simple Present	3
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Mysterious Island	4
B. FORM: The Simple Present	6
C. MEANING AND USE: The Simple Present	11
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	15
CHAPTER 2: Imperatives	17
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Do's and Don'ts with Bears	18
B. FORM: Imperatives	20
C. MEANING AND USE: Imperatives	22
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	27
CHAPTER 3: The Present Continuous	29
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Long-Distance Messenger	30
B. FORM: The Present Continuous	32
C. MEANING AND USE: The Present Continuous	36
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	43

PART 2: The Past

CHAPTER 4: The Simple Past	47
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Decade That Made a Difference	48
B. FORM 1: The Simple Past	50
C. MEANING AND USE 1: The Simple Past	57
D. FORM 2: <i>Used To</i>	62
E. MEANING AND USE 2: The Habitual Past with <i>Used To</i>	65
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	67
CHAPTER 5: The Past Continuous and Past Time Clauses	69
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Galveston's Killer Hurricane	70
B. FORM 1: The Past Continuous	72
C. MEANING AND USE 1: The Past Continuous	76

D. FORM 2: Past Time Clauses	80
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Past Time Clauses	83
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	86
CHAPTER 6: The Present Perfect	89
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Tales of a World Traveler	90
B. FORM: The Present Perfect	92
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Continuing Time Up to Now	97
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Indefinite Past Time	100
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	106

PART 3: The Future

CHAPTER 7: Future Time: <i>Be Going To</i>, <i>Will</i>, and the Present Continuous	111
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Election	112
B. FORM 1: The Future with <i>Be Going To</i> and the Present Continuous	114
C. MEANING AND USE 1: <i>Be Going To</i> and the Present Continuous as Future	119
D. FORM 2: The Future with <i>Will</i>	125
E. MEANING AND USE 2: <i>Will</i> vs. <i>Be Going To</i>	130
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	134
CHAPTER 8: Future Time Clauses and <i>If</i> Clauses	137
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: What Will Happen in the Future?	138
B. FORM: Future Time Clauses and <i>If</i> Clauses	140
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Using Future Time Clauses for Events in Sequence	144
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Expressing Future Possibility with <i>If</i> Clauses	146
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	150

PART 4: Modals

CHAPTER 9: Modals of Ability and Possibility	155
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: A Real-Life Hero	156
B. FORM 1: Modals of Ability: <i>Can</i> and <i>Could</i> ; <i>Be Able To</i>	158
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Past, Present, and Future Ability	162
D. FORM 2: Modals of Future Possibility	167
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Future Possibility	170
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	174

CHAPTER 10: Modals and Phrases of Request, Permission, Desire, and Preference	177
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: How <i>Not</i> to Ask for a Raise	178
B. FORM: Modals of Request; Modals of Permission; <i>Would Like</i> , <i>Would Prefer</i> , and <i>Would Rather</i>	180
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Modals of Request	186
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Modals of Permission	190
E. MEANING AND USE 3: <i>Would Like</i> , <i>Would Prefer</i> , and <i>Would Rather</i>	193
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	197
CHAPTER 11: Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice, Necessity, and Prohibition	199
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Rules	200
B. FORM: Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice, Necessity, and Prohibition	202
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice	208
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Modals of Necessity and Prohibition	214
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	218

PART 5: Tag Questions and Other Additions

CHAPTER 12: Tag Questions	223
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Women's Language and Men's Language	224
B. FORM: Tag Questions	226
C. MEANING AND USE: Tag Questions	231
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	237
CHAPTER 13: Additions with Conjunctions	239
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Equal Rights for Apes?	240
B. FORM 1: Additions with <i>And . . . Too</i> , <i>And . . . Either</i> , and <i>But</i>	242
C. FORM 2: Additions with <i>And So</i> and <i>And Neither</i>	247
D. MEANING AND USE: Expressing Similarities and Differences	250
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	256

PART 6: Nouns, Quantity Expressions, and Articles

CHAPTER 14: Nouns and Quantity Expressions	261
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Mood Foods	262
B. FORM: Nouns and Quantity Expressions	264
C. MEANING AND USE 1: General Quantity Expressions	270
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Specific Quantity Expressions	276
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	279

CHAPTER 15: Indefinite and Definite Articles	281
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Meat-Eating Plants	282
B. FORM: Indefinite and Definite Articles	284
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Indefinite and Definite Articles	287
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Nouns in General Statements	293
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	297

PART 7: Adjectives and Adverbs

CHAPTER 16: Adjectives	301
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Unusual Gifts for Unusual People	302
B. FORM: Adjectives	304
C. MEANING AND USE: Describing with Adjectives	309
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	314
CHAPTER 17: Adverbs	317
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Personality Compass	318
B. FORM 1: Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion	320
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion	325
D. FORM 2: Adverbs of Degree	328
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Adverbs of Degree	331
F. FORM 3: <i>Too</i> and <i>Enough</i>	335
G. MEANING AND USE 3: Contrasting <i>Too</i> and <i>Enough</i>	337
H. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	340

PART 8: Comparatives and Superlatives

CHAPTER 18: Comparatives	345
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Early to Rise Makes Teens . . . Less Attentive?	346
B. FORM 1: Comparatives	348
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Making Comparisons	352
D. FORM 2: <i>As . . . As</i> with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns	356
E. MEANING AND USE 2: <i>As . . . As</i> with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns	358
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	362

CHAPTER 19: Superlatives	365
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Strange but True	366
B. FORM: Superlatives	368
C. MEANING AND USE: Superlatives	372
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	377
<hr/>	
PART 9: Gerunds, Infinitives, and Phrasal Verbs	
CHAPTER 20: Gerunds	381
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: 10 Easy Ways to Start Saving Money	382
B. FORM 1: Gerunds as Subjects and Objects	384
C. FORM 2: Gerunds After Prepositions	387
D. MEANING AND USE: Gerunds	389
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	393
CHAPTER 21: Infinitives	395
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The <i>Twenty-One</i> Quiz Show Scandal	396
B. FORM: Infinitives	398
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Infinitives	402
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Contrasting Gerunds and Infinitives	405
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	409
CHAPTER 22: Phrasal Verbs	411
A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: “Eggstraordinary” Breakfasts Are Easy	412
B. FORM: Phrasal Verbs	414
C. MEANING AND USE: Phrasal Verbs	418
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	421
Appendices	A-1
Glossary of Grammar Terms	G-1
Index	I-1

Introduction

Grammar Sense: A Discourse-Based Approach

Grammar Sense is a comprehensive three-level grammar series based on the authentic use of English grammar in discourse. The grammar is systematically organized, explained, and practiced in a communicative, learner-centered environment, making it easily teachable and learnable.

Many people ask, why learn grammar? The answer is simple: meaningful communication depends on our ability to connect form and meaning appropriately. In order to do so, we must consider such factors as intention, attitude, and social relationships, in addition to the contexts of time and place. All of these factors make up a discourse setting. For example, we use the present continuous not only to describe an activity in progress (*He's working.*), but also to complain (*He's always working.*), to describe a planned event in the future (*He's working tomorrow.*), and to describe temporary or unusual behavior (*He's being lazy at work.*). It is only through examination of the discourse setting that the different meanings and uses of the present continuous can be distinguished from one another. A discourse-based approach provides students with the tools for making sense of the grammar of natural language by systematically explaining *who, what, where, when, why, and how* for each grammatical form.

Systematically Organized Syllabus

Learning grammar is a developmental process that occurs gradually. In *Grammar Sense* the careful sequencing, systematic repetition, recycling, review, and expansion promote grammatical awareness and fluency.

Level 1 (basic level) focuses on building an elementary understanding of form, meaning, and use as students develop basic oral language skills in short conversations and discussions. Level 1 also targets the grammar skills involved in writing short paragraphs, using basic cohesive devices such as conjunctions and pronouns.

At **Level 2 (intermediate level)** the focus turns to expanding the basic understanding of form, meaning, and use in longer and more varied discourse settings, and with more complex grammatical structures and academic themes. Level 2 emphasizes grammar skills beyond the sentence level, as students begin to initiate and sustain conversations and discussions, and progress toward longer types of writing.

Finally, at **Level 3 (high intermediate to advanced level)** the focus moves to spoken and written grammar in academic discourse settings, often in contexts that are conceptually more challenging and abstract. Level 3 emphasizes consistent and appropriate language use, especially of those aspects of grammar needed in extended conversations and discussions, and in longer academic and personal writing.

Introduction of Form Before Meaning and Use

Form is introduced and practiced in a separate section before meaning and use. This ensures that students understand what the form looks like and sounds like at the sentence level, before engaging in more challenging and open-ended activities that concentrate on meaning and use.

Focus on Natural Language Use

Grammar Sense uses authentic reading texts and examples that are based on or quoted verbatim from actual English-language sources to provide a true picture of natural language use. To avoid unnatural language, the themes of the introductory reading texts are only subtly touched upon throughout a chapter. The focus thus remains on typical examples of the most common meanings and uses.

Exposure to authentic language helps students bridge the gap between the classroom and the outside world by encouraging awareness of the “grammar” all around them in daily life: in magazines, newspapers, package instructions, television shows, signs, and so on. Becoming language-aware is an important step in the language-learning process: Students generalize from the examples they find and apply their understanding to their independent language use in daily living, at work, or as they further their education.

Special Sections to Extend Grammatical Knowledge

Understanding grammar as a system entails understanding how different parts of the language support and interact with the target structure. *Grammar Sense* features special sections at strategic points throughout the text to highlight relevant lexical and discourse issues.

- **Beyond the Sentence** sections focus on the structure as it is used in extended discourse to help improve students’ writing skills. These sections highlight such issues as how grammatical forms are used to avoid redundancy, and how to change or maintain focus.
- **Informally Speaking** sections highlight the differences between written and spoken language. This understanding is crucial for achieving second language fluency. Reduced forms, omissions, and pronunciation changes are explained in order to improve aural comprehension.
- **Pronunciation Notes** show students how to pronounce selected forms of the target language, such as the regular simple past ending *-ed*.
- **Vocabulary Notes** provide succinct presentations of words and phrases that are commonly used with the target structure, such as time expressions associated with the simple present and simple past.

Student-Centered Presentation and Practice

Student-centered presentation and practice allow learners at all levels to discover the grammar in pairs, groups, and individually, in both the Form and in the Meaning and Use sections of each chapter. Numerous inductive activities encourage students to use

their problem-solving abilities to gain the skills, experience, and confidence to use English outside of class and to continue learning on their own.

Flexibility to Suit Any Classroom Situation

Grammar Sense offers teachers great flexibility with hundreds of intellectually engaging exercises to choose from. Teachers may choose to skip chapters or sections within chapters, or teach them in a different order, depending on student needs and time constraints. Each Student Book is self-contained so teachers may choose to use only one book, or the full series, if they wish.

Components at Each Level

- The **Student Book** is intended for classroom use and offers concise charts, level-appropriate explanations, and thorough four-skills practice exercises. Each Student Book is also a useful reference resource with extensive Appendices, a helpful Glossary of Grammar Terms, and a detailed Index.
- The **Audio Cassettes and CDs** feature listening exercises that provide practice discriminating form, understanding meaning and use, and interpreting non-standard forms.
- The **Workbook** has a wealth of additional exercises to supplement those in the Student Book. It is ideal for homework, independent practice, or review. The Answer Key, on easily removable perforated pages, is provided at the back of the book.
- The **Teacher's Book** has many practical ideas and techniques for presenting the Form and the Meaning and Use sections. It also includes troubleshooting advice, cultural notes, and suggestions for additional activities. The Answer Key for the Student Book and the complete Tapescript are also provided.
- **TOEFL®-Style Tests** and Answer Keys, along with advice on conducting the tests and interpreting the results, are available for teachers to download from the Internet. (See *Grammar Sense Teacher's Book 2* for the website address.)

Tour of a Chapter

Each chapter in *Grammar Sense* follows this format:

The **Grammar in Discourse** section introduces the target structure in its natural context via a high-interest authentic reading text.

- *Authentic reading texts show how language is really used.*

GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE

A

Tales of a World Traveler

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you like to travel? What are some good and bad things about traveling? Name some countries you have visited. Where else do you want to go?

A2 Read

Read this magazine article to find out about world traveler John Clouse.

Tales of a World Traveler

According to *Guinness World Records*[™], John Clouse has visited more places than anyone else in the world. He has been to 192 countries and almost all of the world's territories. In his travels, he has crossed the Atlantic Ocean at least 100 times and the Pacific Ocean 40 or 50 times. In addition to holding the *Guinness* world record for travel, Clouse is also the most-traveled member of the Travelers' Century Club. All of the members of this club have traveled to at least 100 countries.

All of this traveling has cost John Clouse a lot of money. So far he has spent about \$1.25 million. It has also taken a long time. Clouse started traveling 40 years ago.



Has John Clouse stopped traveling? No, he hasn't. He has continued his journeys. There are three places that he hasn't visited yet: the Paracel Islands in the South China Sea, Clipperton, a French island about 700 miles west of Acapulco, Mexico; and Bouvet Island, near Antarctica.

Some of Clouse's journeys have been difficult. For example, while trying to reach Danger Island in the Pacific, he almost had to turn back just a few yards from the shore because the waves were too high. The real problem was that he doesn't know how to

swim, so another man had to carry him on his back!

Clouse has never publicly stated his favorite country. He doesn't like to list favorites, but he has said that Kenya and Tanzania in Africa are both beautiful. What place has Clouse visited the most? Paris. He's been there 35 times. Does Clouse feel proud of his world record? Not at all. In fact, he realizes that it's all a bit ridiculous. "Wanderlust is a sickness that I got from my father. After all, if you've seen one atoll, you've seen them all," he says with a smile.

Adapted from *The Christian Science Monitor*

atoll: a very small island made of coral
journey: a trip
ridiculous: very silly, foolish

tale: a story
territory: an area of land that belongs to a country
wanderlust: a strong desire to travel

A3 After You Read

A. Circle the places that John Clouse has *not* visited.

Bouvet Island Danger Island the Paracel Islands
Clipperton Kenya Tanzania

B. Match each number with the correct description.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| <u> c </u> 1. 100 | a. the number of times Clouse has visited Paris |
| ___ 2. 1.25 million | b. the number of countries Clouse has visited |
| ___ 3. 35 | c. the number of dollars Clouse has spent on travel |
| ___ 4. 192 | d. the number of times Clouse has crossed the Pacific Ocean |
| ___ 5. 40 or 50 | e. the smallest number of countries each person in the Travelers' Century Club has visited |

- *Structured reading tasks help students read and understand the text.*

The **Form** section(s) provides clear presentation of the target structure, detailed notes, and thorough practice exercises.

• **Inductive Examining Form exercises encourage students to think about how to form the target structure.**

FORM

B The Present Perfect

Examining Form

Look at the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. He has crossed the Atlantic many times. 2a. They flew to Paris last night.
 - 1b. He crossed the Atlantic in 1999. 2b. They have flown to Paris many times.
1. Which two sentences are in the simple past? Which two sentences are in the present perfect? How many words are necessary to form the present perfect?
 2. Underline the verb forms that follow *has* and *have*. These are past participles. Which form resembles the simple past? Which form is irregular?
 3. Look back at the article on page 90. Find five examples of the present perfect.

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	PAST PARTICIPLE	
I	have		
You			
He	has	traveled	to Paris.
She		flown	
It			
We			
You	have		
They			
CONTRACTIONS			
I've			
She's		traveled	to Paris.
They've			

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	NOT	PAST PARTICIPLE
I	have		
You			
He	has	not	traveled
She			flown
It			to Paris.
We			
You	have		
They			
CONTRACTIONS			
I	haven't		
She	hasn't		traveled
They	haven't		

• **Clear and detailed Form Charts make learning the grammar easy.**

• **A wealth of exercises provide practice in manipulating the form.**

Yes/No Questions			
HAVE/HAS	SUBJECT	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Have	you		traveled to Paris?
Has	it	traveled	flown
Have	they		

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	NO	SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS + NOT
	I	have.		I	haven't.
Yes,	he	has.	No,	he	hasn't.
	they	have.		they	haven't.

Information Questions			
WH-WORD	HAVE/HAS	SUBJECT	PAST PARTICIPLE
Who		you	seen?
What	have		
Why	has	she	been
How long	have	they	been
			in the hospital?

WH-WORD (SUBJECT)	HAS	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Who	has	traveled	to Paris?
What		happened?	

- The past participle of a regular verb has the same form as the simple past (verb + *-d/-ed*). See Appendices 4 and 5 for the spelling and pronunciation of verbs ending in *-ed*.
- Irregular verbs have special past participle forms. See Appendix 6 for a list of irregular verbs and their past participles.

B4 Completing Conversations with the Present Perfect

A. Complete these conversations with the words in parentheses and the present perfect. Use contractions where possible.

Conversation 1

Silvio: How long 1 *have* you 2 *lived* (live) here?

Victor: Five years. 3 you 4 (be) here long?

Silvio: No, I 5 (not). I 6 only 7 (be) here for six months.

Conversation 2

Gina: Hi, Julie. I 1 (not/see) you for a long time.

Julie: Hi, Gina. I think it 2 (be) almost three years since we last met. How 3 your family 4 (be)?

Gina: Oh, there 5 (be) a lot of changes. My older brother, Chris, 6 (get) married, and Tony and his wife, Marta, 7 (have) two children.

B. Practice the conversations in part A with a partner.

B5 Building Sentences

A. Build eight logical sentences: four in the present perfect and four in the simple past. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

Present Perfect: *She has been a good friend.* Simple Past: *She went to a restaurant.*

she	have	been	for a long time
they	has	waited	to a restaurant
		learned	a good friend
		went	English

B. Rewrite your sentences as negative statements.

The **Meaning and Use** section(s) offers clear and comprehensive explanations of how the target structure is used, and exercises to practice using it appropriately.

- **Inductive Examining Meaning and Use exercises encourage students to analyze how we use the target structure.**

MEANING AND USE 1

C Continuing Time Up to Now

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 1

Listen to each sentence. Is the speaker talking about a past situation that continues to the present, or a situation that began and ended in the past? Check (✓) the correct column.

MEANING AND USE 2

D Indefinite Past Time

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. I've flown in an airplane.
1b. I flew to Rome last month.
 - 2a. There have been many car accidents on this road.
2b. There was an accident here yesterday.
1. Which sentences talk about an indefinite (not exact) time in the past? Which form of the verb is used in these sentences?
2. Which sentences mention a definite (exact) time in the past? Which form of the verb is used in these sentences?

Meaning and Use Notes

Indefinite Past Time

- 1A** Use the present perfect to talk about actions or states that happened at an indefinite (not exact) time in the past.
A: Have you met Bob?
B: Yes, I've met him. He's really nice.
- 1B** Actions or states in the present perfect can happen once or repeatedly.
He's visited Hawaii once.
I've tried three times to pass my driver's license exam.
- 1C** Do not use the present perfect with time expressions that express a definite (exact) time in the past. When you mention the definite time an event happened, use the simple past.
I went to Europe in 1999.
*I've gone to Europe in 1999. (INCORRECT)

- **Succinct explanations and authentic examples illustrate the various meanings and uses of the structure.**

- **Practice exercises enable students to use the structure appropriately and fluently.**

Using Ever with Indefinite Past Time

2 The adverb ever means "at any time." Use ever in present perfect questions to ask if an action took place at any time in the past.

- A: Have you ever seen a ghost?
B: Yes, I have. or
No, I haven't.

▲ We usually do not use ever in present perfect affirmative statements.
I have seen a ghost.

* I have ever seen a ghost. (INCORRECT)

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1C

Listen to each sentence. Does it refer to a definite time in the past or an indefinite time in the past? Check (✓) the correct column.

	DEFINITE TIME IN THE PAST	INDEFINITE TIME IN THE PAST
1.		✓
2.		

D3 Asking Questions About Indefinite Past Time

► Notes 1A, 2

Write two Yes/No questions for each of these situations. Use the present perfect.

1. Your friends have traveled a lot. You want to find out about their trips.
Have you ever been to Egypt? Have you seen the pyramids?
2. You are thinking about buying a used car. You meet a woman who is trying to sell her car.

3. You want to hire a babysitter. You are interviewing a teenager for the job.

4. You are looking for a new roommate. Someone comes to see your apartment.

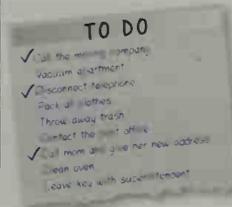
5. Your friend, Lee, has moved to a new town. You want to find out about his experiences.

D4 Describing Progress

► Notes 1A, 1B

Paul has made a list of things to do before he moves to his new apartment. Look at the list and make statements about his progress so far.

He's called the moving company.
He hasn't vacuumed the apartment.



The **Review** section allows students to demonstrate their mastery of all aspects of the structure. It can be used for further practice or as a test.

• **Thinking About Meaning and Use exercises consolidate students' understanding of all aspects of the structure.**

• **Editing exercises teach students to correct their own writing.**

REVIEW

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: He visited Sweden four years ago.

B: _____

- a. Where is he staying?
- b. Did he have a good time?

2. A: Emily has worked for the school for a long time.

B: _____

- a. Is she going to retire soon?
- b. Why did she leave?

3. A: I've already cooked dinner.

B: _____

- a. Can I help you?
- b. What did you cook?

4. A: It has rained only once this month.

B: _____

- a. Does it usually rain more?
- b. Has it rained a lot?

5. A: We've been here for half an hour, and a waiter still hasn't come to our table.

B: _____

- a. I'm sorry. I'll try to find your waiter.
- b. How long have you been here?

• **Beyond the Classroom activities offer creative suggestions for further practice in new contexts.**

6. A: I haven't been to Europe yet.

B: _____

- a. Do you want to go sometime?
- b. When did you go?

7. A: Have you ever flown a plane?

B: _____

- a. No, I didn't.
- b. No, not yet.

8. A: So far I've spent \$100 on course books.

B: _____

- a. Do you think you'll need to buy more?
- b. You're lucky you don't need any more.

E2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them. Use the simple present, the simple past, and the present perfect.

Rita and Bob ~~have been~~ ^{are} the most-traveled people I know. They went almost everywhere. Rita has been a photographer, and Bob has been a travel writer, so they often travel for work. They been to many



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an English-language encyclopedia or on the Internet for information about someone's life. Choose a person who is still alive. What has he or she done or accomplished? Find three sentences in the present perfect and bring them to class. Why is the present perfect used instead of the simple past? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about someone you admire.

1. Write about someone who is still alive. Think about your subject and make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you.
 - Who do you admire?
 - What has the person done? For example, has he or she worked somewhere special or helped other people?
 - Where has the person lived and worked?
 - How has the person influenced you?
2. Write a first draft. Use the present perfect, simple past, and simple present where appropriate.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

I admire my Uncle Tomás. He is a doctor. He has worked with poor people since he graduated from college twenty years ago. . . .

Special Sections appear throughout the chapters, with clear explanations, authentic examples, and follow-up exercises.

• **Pronunciation Notes** show students how to pronounce selected forms of the target language.

• **Beyond the Sentence** sections show how structures function differently in extended discourse.

• Pronunciation Notes

Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in -ed

The regular simple past ending *-ed* is pronounced in three different ways, depending on the final sound of the base form of the verb.

- The *-ed* is pronounced /t/ if the verb ends with the sound /p/, /k/, /tʃ/, /f/, /s/, /ʃ/, or /ks/.
work — worked /wɜ:kt/ wash — washed /wɔ:ʃt/ watch — watched /wɔ:ʃt/
- The *-ed* is pronounced /d/ if the verb ends with the sound /b/, /g/, /dʒ/, /v/, /ð/, /z/, /ʒ/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/, or /r/.
plan — planned /plænd/ judge — judged /dʒʌʒd/ bang — banged /bæŋd/
bathe — bathed /bæθd/ massage — massaged /mə'sɑ:ʒd/ rub — rubbed /rʌbd/
- The *-ed* is also pronounced /ɪd/ if the verb ends with a vowel sound.
play — played /pleɪd/ sigh — sighed /saɪd/ row — rowed /roud/
bow — bowed /baʊd/ sue — sued /sud/ free — freed /fri:d/
- The *-ed* is pronounced as an extra syllable, /ɪd/, if the verb ends with the sound /d/ or /t/.
guide — guided /'gaɪdɪd/ remind — reminded /rɪ'maɪndɪd/
rent — rented /rentɪd/ invite — invited /ɪn'vaɪtɪd/

33 Pronouncing Verbs Ending in -ed

Listen to the pronunciation of each verb. Which ending do you hear? Check (✓) the correct column.

	t	d	ɪd

• Vocabulary Notes

More Adverbs with the Present Perfect

Never means "not ever" or "not at any time." We can use *never* instead of *not* in negative statements. Do not use *never* with *not*. *Never* comes before the past participle.

She has **never** been to Greece.

Already means "at some time before now." Use *already* with questions and affirmative statements. It comes before the past participle or at the end of a sentence.

She has **already** left. Have they **already** eaten? What has he **already** done?
She has **left already**. Have they eaten **already**? What has he done **already**?

Yet means "up to now." Use *yet* with negative statements and Yes/No questions. It comes at the end of a sentence.

They **haven't arrived yet**. Have you met him **yet**?

Still also means "up to now." It has a similar meaning to *yet*, but with the present perfect is used only in negative statements. It comes before *have* or *has*.

She **still** hasn't called. (= She hasn't called **yet**.)

So far means "at any time up to now." Use *so far* in affirmative and negative statements and in questions. It comes at the beginning or end of a sentence.

So far he's spent \$500. How much money have you spent **so far**?
So far I haven't had a good time. Have you had a good time **so far**?

05 Using Adverbs with the Present Perfect

A. Rewrite these sentences. Place the word or words in parentheses in an appropriate position in each sentence. Use contractions where possible.

Conversation 1

A: Have you asked Sara to help you (yet)?

Have you asked Sara to help you yet?

B: No, I haven't asked her (still).

Conversation 2

A: Have you played golf (ever)?

B: No, I've played golf (never).

• Beyond the Sentence

Introducing Background Information with the Past Continuous

The past continuous and simple past often occur together in the same story. The past continuous is used at the beginning of a story to describe background activities that are happening at the same time as the main events of the story. The simple past is used for main events.

Yesterday was beautiful. The sun was shining, the birds were singing, and I was walking in a valley. Suddenly, a UFO landed on the ground. Three small green men appeared. They took my hand and said, "Come with us."

34 Introducing Background Information with the Past Continuous

A. Work with a partner. Imagine that each sentence is the beginning of a story. Write two sentences in the past continuous to give background information.

- The beach was gorgeous. The sun was shining on the water. The waves were moving quickly.
- The bank was full of customers. _____
- The students were late to class. _____
- My boss was very angry. _____

• Informally Speaking

Reduced Forms of Have and Has

Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How is the underlined form in the cartoon different from what you hear?



We often reduce *have* and *has* with names and other nouns in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM	WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR
Mark has changed.	"/marks/ changed."
The cities have grown.	"The /stuzəv/ grown."

We also often reduce *have* and *has* with *wh-* words in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM	WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR
Why has he left?	"/waɪz/, he lef?"
Where have you been?	"/wɜ:vɪz/ you been?"

33 Understanding Informal Speech

Listen and complete these sentences with the standard form of the words you hear.

- John has been here for a long time.
- Kedra and Rick _____ the movie already.
- Paul _____ a new racing bicycle.
- The guests _____ home.
- The police _____ the thief.
- Where _____ she _____?
- Fresno _____ bigger since the 1930s.
- Why _____ it _____ so long?

• **Vocabulary Notes** highlight the important connection between key vocabulary and grammatical structures.

• **Informally Speaking** sections show the differences between written and spoken language.

The Present

PART

1

The Simple Present

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Mysterious Island	4
B. FORM: The Simple Present	6
He <u>eats</u> fresh fruit.	
Pronunciation Notes: Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in -s or -es	9
C. MEANING AND USE: The Simple Present	11
Repeated Activities	
Factual Information	
States or <u>Conditions</u>	
Adverbs of Frequency with the Simple Present	
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	15

A

Mysterious Island

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

What do you think about when you imagine an island? Do you imagine warm weather or cold weather? Can you name any islands that are countries?

A2 Read

 Read this geography quiz to find out more about Iceland.

QUIZ

Mysterious ISLAND

ICELAND IS A TRULY UNIQUE ISLAND—in fact, it's like nowhere else on Earth. The interior of this island nation contains incredible contrasts. It has tundras, huge glaciers, volcanoes, and waterfalls.

Read these amazing facts about Iceland. Then guess the answers to the questions. Check your guesses on page 5.

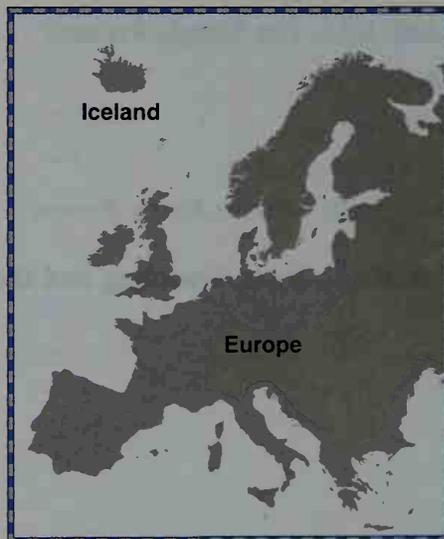
1

Swimsuit maker Speedo® sells a very large number of bathing suits in Iceland. Is it warm here all year?

2

The island's climate is cool, but most people don't pay much money for heat. Energy is very cheap and it doesn't cause pollution.

15 What kind of energy do Icelanders use?



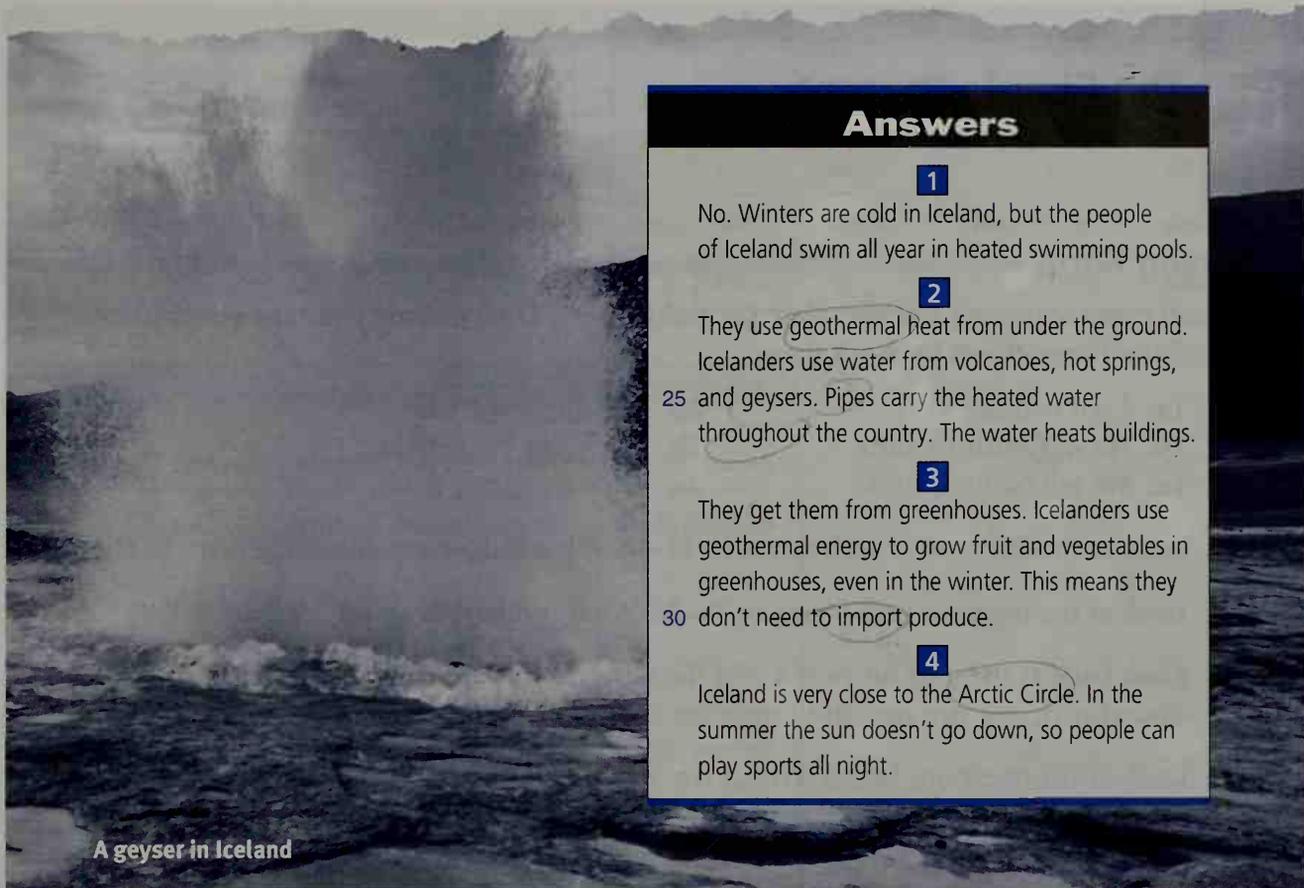
3

Icelanders eat fresh fruit and vegetables all year, but they rarely buy them from other countries. Where do they get them?

4

Icelanders like to play golf all night during the summer. How do they see the ball?

20



A geyser in Iceland

Adapted from *The Christian Science Monitor*

Answers

1

No. Winters are cold in Iceland, but the people of Iceland swim all year in heated swimming pools.

2

They use geothermal heat from under the ground. Icelanders use water from volcanoes, hot springs, and geysers. Pipes carry the heated water throughout the country. The water heats buildings.

3

They get them from greenhouses. Icelanders use geothermal energy to grow fruit and vegetables in greenhouses, even in the winter. This means they don't need to import produce.

4

Iceland is very close to the Arctic Circle. In the summer the sun doesn't go down, so people can play sports all night.

ey/oil
ci/si
climate: the typical weather conditions of a place

geyser: a hot spring that shoots water into the air

glacier: a large body of ice that moves slowly over land

greenhouse: a glass building used for growing plants

produce: foods such as fruit and vegetables

tundra: a large, flat area of frozen land without trees

volcano: a mountain from which hot melted rock, gas, smoke, and ash can escape from a hole in its top

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. Iceland is warm in the winter.
2. Icelanders use geothermal energy.
3. Geothermal energy comes from the sun.
4. Icelanders heat their houses with oil.
5. Icelanders don't grow fresh fruit.
6. The sun shines all night in Iceland in the summer.

B

The Simple Present

Examining Form

Read these sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. I sell bathing suits. 2a. You don't buy fruit.
 1b. He sells bathing suits. 2b. She doesn't buy fruit.
 1c. We sell bathing suits. 2c. They don't buy fruit.

- Look at the affirmative verb forms in 1a–1c. What is different about the form in 1b?
- Look at the negative verb forms in 2a–2c. What is different about the form in 2b?
- Look back at the quiz on page 4 and the answers on page 5. Two affirmative forms are underlined, and two negative forms are circled. Find two more examples of each form.
- Look at the questions below. Which is a *Yes/No* question? Which is an information question? How are they different? How are they the same?
 - Does it snow in the winter?
 - Where do they get the fruit and vegetables?

Affirmative Statements		
SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB or BASE FORM OF VERB + -S/-ES	
I	eat	fresh fruit.
You		
He She It	eats	
We	eat	
You		
They		

Negative Statements		
SUBJECT	DO/DOES + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB
I	do not don't	eat fresh fruit.
You		
He She It	does not doesn't	
We	do not don't	
You		
They		

Yes/No Questions			
DO/DOES	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Do	you	eat	fresh fruit?
Does	she		
Do	they		

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	DO/DOES	NO	SUBJECT	DO/DOES + NOT
	I	do.		I	don't.
Yes,	she	does.	No,	she	doesn't.
	they	do.		they	don't.

Information Questions				
WH- WORD	DO/DOES	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	do	you	teach	on Tuesdays?
What	does	he	eat?	
When				
Where				
Why	do	they	travel	in the winter?
How				

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)		BASE FORM OF VERB + -S/-ES	
Who		works	on Tuesdays?
What		happens	there?

- In affirmative statements, add *-s* or *-es* to the base form of the verb when the subject is third-person singular (*he*, *she*, or *it*). See Appendices 1 and 2 for the spelling and pronunciation of verbs ending in *-s* and *-es*.
- Use *does* in negative statements and questions when the subject is third-person singular. For all other persons, use *do*.

She doesn't play golf.	I don't play golf.
Does he play golf?	Do they play golf?
- Do not use *do* or *does* in information questions when *who* or *what* is the subject.

Who lives here?	*Who does live here. (INCORRECT)
-----------------	----------------------------------
- Have* and *be* are irregular in the simple present.

I have a problem.	She has a red car.	We have dinner at 6:00.
I am busy.	He is a musician.	They are home.
- Do not use *do/does* in negative statements or in questions with *be*.

You aren't late.	Is he ready?
-------------------------	---------------------

B1 Listening for Form

 Listen to this paragraph. Write the verb forms you hear.

Many people in Hawaii live₁ in two different worlds—the world of traditional Hawaiian culture and the world of modern American culture. Keenan Kanaeholo is₂ a typical Hawaiian. He lives₃ on the island of Oahu. Like many Hawaiians, Keenan speaks₄ two languages. At home he and his family don't speak₅ English. They talk₆ to each other in Hawaiian. Keenan works₇ in a large hotel. At work he speaks₈ English. Keenan's wife, Emeha, doesn't work₉ in the hotel. She works₁₀ at an elementary school. Both Keenan and Emeha like₁₁ to dance. They go₁₂ to discos on the weekends. Emeha also knows₁₃ the hula, but Keenan doesn't₁₄.

B2 Working on Affirmative and Negative Statements

Complete this paragraph with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Use contractions where possible.

An okapi looks₁ (look) like the child of a zebra and a giraffe, but it isn't₂ (not/be). It has₃ (have) stripes like a zebra, and it has₄ (have) a body like a giraffe. The okapi's stripes hide₅ (hide) it from its enemies. The okapi is₆ (be) a relative of the giraffe, but it doesn't have₇ (not/have) a long neck. It doesn't need₈ (not/need) one to find food because it eats₉ (eat) fruit and leaves near the ground. Okapis play₁₀ (play) in a strange way. They put₁₁ (put) their heads down, move₁₂ (move) their tails, and run₁₃ (run) in circles. Okapis live₁₄ (live) only in Central Africa and are₁₅ (be) very rare.



Pronunciation Notes

prəˈnʌnsiəʃən/

Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in -s or -es

The letters -s or -es at the end of third-person singular verbs are pronounced in three different ways, depending on the final sound of the base form of the verb.

- The -s or -es is pronounced /s/ if the base form of the verb ends with the sound /p/, /t/, /k/, or /f/.
 stop – stops /stɒps/ like – likes /laɪks/ laugh – laughs /lɑːfs/
- The -s or -es is pronounced /z/ if the base form of the verb ends with the sound /b/, /d/, /g/, /v/, /ð/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/, /r/, or a vowel sound.
 leave – leaves /li:vz/ run – runs /rʌnz/ go – goes /gəʊz/
- The -es is pronounced /ɪz/ if the base form of the verb ends with the sound /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, or /ks/. This adds an extra syllable to the word.
 notice – notices /ˈnəʊtɪsɪz/ buzz – buzzes /ˈbʌzɪz/ watch – watches /ˈwɒtʃɪz/

B3 Pronouncing Verbs Ending in -s or -es

- A.  Listen to the pronunciation of each verb. What ending do you hear? Check (✓) the correct column.

		/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
1.	lives		✓	
2.	practices			✓
3.	works	✓		
4.	closes			✓
5.	arranges		✓	
6.	tells		✓	

- B. Work with a partner. Take turns reading these sentences aloud. Be sure to pronounce the verb endings correctly.

- Pablo lives in San Diego.
- The team practices every day.
- The computer works just fine.
- My mother closes the window at night.
- Tony arranges all the meetings.
- Sara tells everyone's secrets.

B4 Forming Yes/No Questions

A. Use these words and phrases to form Yes/No questions. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. study/do/a lot/you Do you study a lot?
2. teacher/does/your/speak/language/your Does your teacher speak your language
3. have/do/homework/you/a lot of Do you have a lot of homework.
4. a/do/use/you/dictionary Do you use a dictionary
5. speak/you/do/English/of/class/outside do you speak class English outside
6. your/computers/school/does/have Does your ^{school have} computers

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering the questions in part A.

A: Do you study a lot?

B: Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.

B5 Changing Statements into Questions

A. Write an information question about each underlined word or phrase.

1. Water freezes at 32° Fahrenheit. What freezes at 32° Fahrenheit?
2. Kim has a test today. who has a test today
3. A power plant makes electricity. what a power plant makes
4. Niagara Falls is in North America. where is Niagara Falls
5. Dan drives Lee to school every day. who drives Lee to school every day
6. Dan drives Lee to school every day. whom does Dan drive to school every day
7. It is hot in Chicago in the summer. when is it hot in Chicago
8. The eucalyptus tree is from Australia. where is the eucalyptus tree from

B. In your notebook, write a Yes/No question about each sentence in part A.

Does water freeze at 32° Fahrenheit?

C

The Simple Present

chore 雑務
computer manual

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Thailand has three seasons: a hot season, a cold season, and a rainy season.
 - b. Maria doesn't like her new roommate.
 - c. My teacher always arrives at school before class starts.
1. Which sentence talks about a repeated activity? c
 2. Which sentence talks about factual information that you can find in a book? a
 3. Which sentence talks about a feeling? b

Meaning and Use Notes

Repeated Activities 専断的活動

1 Use the simple present to talk about activities that happen repeatedly (again and again). These events can be personal habits or routines (for example, activities at home or at work), or scheduled events.

Habits or Routines 習慣
I always **eat** cereal for breakfast.
He **takes** the bus to work every day.

Scheduled Events
School **starts** at 8:00 and **finishes** at 3:00.
The club **meets** in the library every Friday.

Factual Information 事実の資料

2 Use the simple present to talk about factual information, such as general truths, scientific facts, or definitions.

General Truths 大抵知っている事柄
Doctors **study** for many years.

Definitions
The word **brilliant** **means** "very intelligent."

Scientific Facts
Iceland **has** more than 100 volcanoes.

(Continued on page 12)

States or Conditions

- 3 Use the simple present with stative verbs (verbs that do not express action) to talk about states or conditions, such as physical descriptions, feelings, relationships, knowledge, beliefs, or possession. Some common stative verbs are *be, have, seem, like, want, know, understand, mean, believe, own, and belong*. See Appendix 7 for a list of common stative verbs.

He **is** tall and **has** dark hair. She **knows** the answer.
 She **seems** angry. I don't **understand**.
 You **like** sports. I **believe** you.
 They **want** a new car. We **belong** to the soccer club.

Adverbs of Frequency with the Simple Present

- 4 Use adverbs of frequency with the simple present to express how often something happens. Adverbs of frequency usually come before the main verb, but after the verb *be*.

She **always** has ballet from 3:00 to 6:00 P.M.
 The cafeteria food **is usually** bad.
 My mother **often** cooks for us.
 It **sometimes** rains here in the summer.
 My brother and I **seldom** fight.
 He **never** cleans his room.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1, 2



Listen to each statement. Is the speaker describing a personal routine or a general truth? Check (✓) the correct column.

	PERSONAL ROUTINE	GENERAL TRUTH
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

C2 Talking About Routines

► Notes 1, 4

A. Read these statements. Check (✓) the ones that are true for you.

- ___ 1. I always wash the dishes after dinner.
main verb
- ___ 2. I often ride the bus in the morning.
- ✓ 3. My friends sometimes visit me on Saturdays.
- ___ 4. I often get up at 7:00 A.M.
- ___ 5. I usually recycle newspapers.
- ___ 6. I never go to bed before midnight.
- ✓ 7. My friends and I sometimes study together in the evenings.
- ___ 8. I never stay home on Saturday nights.

B. Work with a partner. Look at the statements in part A that you did not check. Take turns talking about them.

A: I don't always wash the dishes after dinner. I sometimes leave them for the next day.

B: I seldom ride the bus in the morning. I have a car.

C3 Asking for Definitions

► Note 2

A. Work with a partner. How much do you remember from the quiz about Iceland on page 4? Take turns asking and answering questions about the meaning of these words. If you don't remember the meaning of a word, look at the definitions on page 5.

1. tundra

A: What does the word tundra mean?

B: The word tundra means "a large, flat area of frozen land."

2. glacier - a mass of ice which moves very slowly down a mountain valley

3. greenhouse - a glass building used for growing plants which need heat, light, and protection from winds

4. climate - the average weather conditions

5. geyser - a natural spring of hot water and steam which can rise suddenly

6. volcano - a mountain with fire
↓
into action the earth

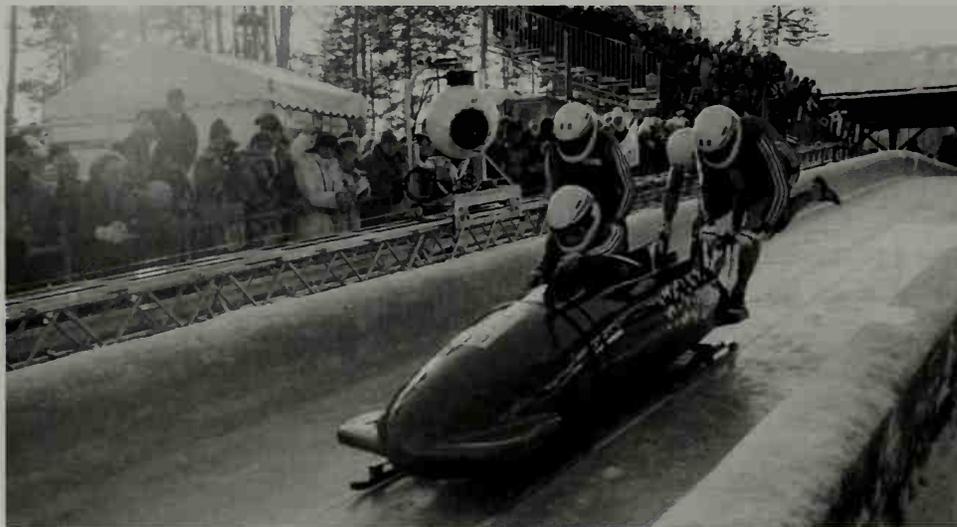
B. Look back at the quiz on page 4. Find a word that is new to you and ask your partner what it means. If your partner doesn't know, look in a dictionary.

C4 Expressing Factual Information

► Notes 2, 3

A. Complete this paragraph with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Bobsledding is¹ (be) a dangerous sport. A bobsled weighs² (weigh) about 600 pounds and carries³ (carry) four people. Each person on a bobsled team has⁴ (have) an important job. First, all four people move⁵ (move) the sled back and forth. When it starts⁶ (start) to move, they push⁷ (push) it very hard, and the pilot jumps⁸ (jump) into the bobsled to steer. Then, the person on each side jumps⁹ (jump) in. The brakeman stays¹⁰ (stay) at the back and pushes¹¹ (push) for a few more seconds. Then he or she gets¹² (get) in, too. The bobsled is¹³ (be) very fast. It goes¹⁴ (go) up to 90 miles per hour.



B. Describe another sport. In your notebook, write five or six facts about the sport, using the simple present.

Ice hockey is a popular sport in cold places like Canada and the northeastern United States. This game has two teams of players. The players wear ice skates and play on an ice-skating rink. . . .

D Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Look at these topics. Check (✓) the ones you can discuss or write about with the simple present. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- ✓ 1. Traditions in your country
- ✗ 2. Your childhood *过去了.*
- ___ 3. A party you went to last night *过去*
- ✓ 4. The geography of a country
- ✗ 5. The life of a 19th-century politician *已过去了!! ≠ simple present.*
- ___ 6. A vacation you took
- ✓ 7. How a machine works
- ___ 8. Your best friend's personality *nice.*

D2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

Which large American city ~~are~~^{is} on three islands? New York City! New York is on Manhattan Island, Long Island, and Staten Island. Most people thinks of Manhattan when they think of New York City. This is because Manhattan ~~have~~ the tall buildings that New York is famous for. Sometimes people travel from Staten Island to Manhattan by boat. However, most people in New York ~~not~~ use boats to go from one part of the city to another. Large bridges ~~connects~~ the islands. Trains and cars also ~~uses~~ long tunnels under the water to move between the islands. In fact, New Yorkers usually forget that they ~~lives~~ on an island.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look for advertisements in English-language newspapers and magazines or on the Internet. Find five examples of the simple present and bring them to class. Try to find examples with different meanings and uses. Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Follow these steps to prepare an oral report about an unusual animal like the okapi on page 8.

1. Do research at the library or on the Internet for information about an unusual animal.
2. Take notes. Answer these questions, and write five or six facts about the animal. Use the simple present.
 - What is the animal?
 - What does it look like?
 - Where does it live?
 - What interesting or unusual habits does it have?
3. Try to find a photo of the animal.
4. Bring your notes and photo to class. Use the information in your notes to tell your classmates about the animal.

that information
is an find in the book

不可用 simple present 尋找 困難

9/12 課程內容
- syllabus 課程內容
- simple present
- review
- writing
- imperatives 命令式

9/14
- simple present
- peer editing
- authentic examples
- speaking real
- imperatives

Contraction:
縮寫 He's
I'm

Imperatives

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Do's and Don'ts with Bears	18
B. FORM: Imperatives	20
Open your books.	
C. MEANING AND USE: Imperatives	22
Common Uses of Imperatives	
Imperatives and Politeness	
Using <i>You</i> or Names in Imperatives	
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	27

A

Do's and Don'ts with Bears

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you like to walk in the woods? Are there wild animals in the woods in your area? Are they dangerous?

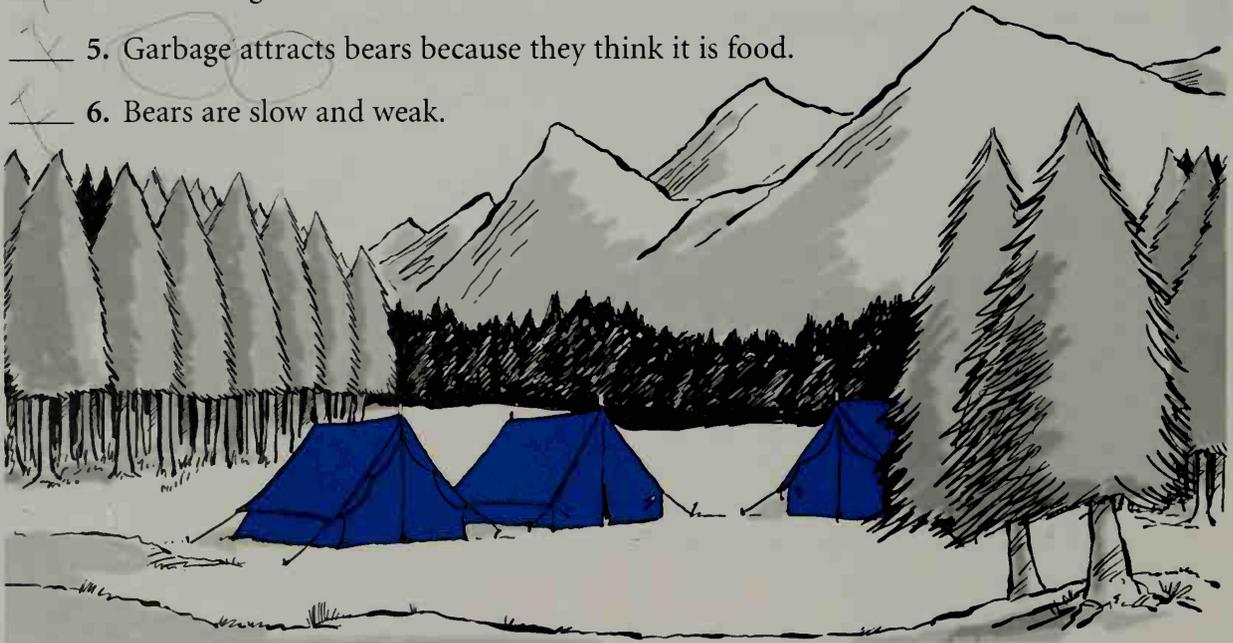
A2 Read

 Read the leaflet on the following page to find out about what to do if you see a bear.

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. Bears often attack cars.
- F 2. If a bear attacks you, you should run.
- T 3. Bears attack when they feel threatened.
- T 4. Bears are great tree climbers.
- X 5. Garbage attracts bears because they think it is food.
- X 6. Bears are slow and weak.



imperatives = commands 命令指令
affirmate + negative -

BLACK BEAR MOUNTAIN PARK

Do's and Don'ts with Bears

About 250 black bears live in Black Bear Mountain Park. If you run into a bear in the park, it is important to know what to do.

5  Talk loudly, sing, or clap as you walk through the woods. Bears don't like surprises. Singing or clapping will probably frighten the bears off before you even see them.

10  Don't hike through the woods at night.
Bears are most active at nighttime.

 If you are in a car and see a bear, stay inside. Close the windows. Most bears will not attack a car, so you are safest inside. Don't get out to take a photograph.

15  If you are outside and see a bear, stay calm. Stand still and don't run. Slowly move backward. Bears are nervous animals. They are more likely to attack you if they feel threatened.

20  If a bear attacks you, don't fight. Lie still and be quiet. Maybe the bear will lose interest and wander off.

 Do not climb a tree to get away from a bear. Bears are great tree climbers!

25  Do not keep food or cosmetics in your tent. Put them in a bag and hang them in a tree that is at least 100 yards from your tent. Bears like anything that resembles food. Remove food, cosmetics, and toothpaste from your tent so you won't attract their attention.

 Burn food waste. Bears cannot tell the difference between food and garbage. They will go after both.

35 Remember bears are dangerous animals. They are very fast and very strong. Be safe. Don't be sorry!



attract: to cause someone or something to feel interest

do's and don'ts: rules about what you should and should not do in a situation

resemble: to be like or to look like

run into: meet by chance

wander off: to walk away from a place

B

Imperatives

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. Bears are dangerous animals. c. Most bears do not attack cars.
b. Do not climb a tree. d. Lie still and be quiet.
- Underline the verbs. Circle the subjects. Which sentences do not seem to have a subject? These are imperatives.
 - Look back at the leaflet on page 19. Find five imperatives.

Affirmative Imperatives

原形动词

BASE FORM OF VERB	
Open	your books.
Drive	carefully.
Be	here at six.

= Do not

Negative Imperatives

DO + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Do not Don't	open	your books.
	leave	yet.
	be	late.

- The subject of an imperative is *you* (singular or plural), even though we don't usually say or write the subject.
- The imperative has the same form whether we talk to one person or more than one.
Teacher to Student: Sit down, please. Teacher to Class: Sit down, please.
- In spoken English, *don't* is more common than *do not* in negative imperatives.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences. Write the verb forms you hear.

- Don't leave. It's early.
- Turn right at the corner.
- Don't study in the kitchen.
- Come home before dinner.
- Don't be angry with me, please.
- Please turn off the light.

B2 Forming Sentences with Imperatives

Use these words and phrases to form sentences with affirmative and negative imperatives. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

- take/you/your/with/book Take your book with you.
- notebook/leave/your/home/at/don't Don't leave your notebook home
- tomorrow/be/for/test/ready/the Be ready for the test tomorrow
- questions/to/the/answer/all/try Try the answer to all questions
- not/the/during/talk/test/do Don't talk during the test

B3 Working on Affirmative and Negative Imperatives

A. Read the tips below. Check (✓) the ones that you think are bad advice.

1. Don't write English definitions for new words. #4
2. Keep a vocabulary notebook. good.
3. Don't try to use new words in conversation.
4. Look up every new word you read.
5. Try to guess the meaning of new words. good
6. Write a translation of every new word.

B. Now change the bad advice to good advice. Compare answers with a partner.

Write English definitions for new words.

B4 Building Sentences

Build ten imperative and simple present sentences. Use a word or phrase from each column, or from the second and third columns only. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

Imperative: *Listen to him!*

Simple Present: *She goes to class.*

	goes	to class
she	listen	gum
don't	speak	late
they	chew	to him
	is	Korean

She is Korean.
She speaks Korean.
Don't chew gum.
They speak Korean.
Don't listen to him.
She goes to class.
She is late.
Don't speak Korean.
Don't speak to him.
Listen to him.
They listen to him.

C Imperatives

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Walk to the corner and turn left. The post office is right there.
 - b. Watch out! There's ice on the road.
 - c. Are you getting coffee now? Buy me a coffee, too, please.
 - d. Talk to the teacher. She can help you.
1. Which underlined sentence gives advice? b d
 2. Which underlined sentence makes a request?
 3. Which underlined sentence gives directions?
 4. Which underlined sentence gives a warning? b

Meaning and Use Notes

Common Uses of Imperatives

1A An imperative tells someone to do something. Common uses include:

Giving Commands: **Stop** the car!

Giving Advice: **Don't worry** about it.

Making Requests: Please **come** home early.

Giving Directions: **Turn left. Walk** three blocks.

Giving Instructions: First, **peel** the potatoes. Then, **boil** the water.

Giving Warnings: **Be** careful! The floor is wet.

Making Offers: Here. **Have** another piece of cake, Gina.

1B Although we usually leave out the subject *you* (singular or plural), it is understood as the subject of an imperative.

Boss to Employee

Come to my office, please.

Boss to Several Employees

Come to my office, please.

! = exclamation point.

Imperatives and Politeness

- 2A** Use *please* to make an imperative sound more polite or less authoritative. We often use imperatives with *please* in formal situations when we speak to strangers or to people in authority. In less formal situations, especially with friends and family members, *please* is often used to soften the tone of an imperative. If *please* comes at the end of a sentence, we put a comma before it.

Train Conductor to Passenger

Child to Parent

Please **watch** your step.

Mom, **hand** me a towel, please. I spilled my drink.

- 2B** You can also make an imperative sound more polite by using polite forms such as *sir*, *ma'am*, or *miss*. In written English, the polite form of address is separated from the rest of the sentence with a comma.

Sir, **watch** your step!

Stay calm, ma'am. Help is on the way.

Using *You* or Names in Imperatives

- 3** Although we usually leave out the subject *you*, we sometimes use it to make it clear who we are speaking to. We can also add the person's name with or without *you* as the stated subject.

A Roommate to Two Other Roommates

You **sweep** the hall, you **vacuum** the living room, and I'll clean the bathroom.

Maria, you **sweep** the hall. Bill, you **vacuum** the rug. I'll clean the bathroom.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-3



Listen to each conversation. Who are the speakers? Choose the correct answer.

- a. a boss and an employee

b. two co-workers

c. two strangers
- a. a teacher and a student

b. two family members

c. two strangers
- a. two strangers

b. two friends

c. two family members
- a. two family members

b. two strangers

c. a boss and an employee
- a. a boss and an employee

b. two family members

c. two strangers
- a. a teacher and a student

b. two friends

c. two strangers

C2 Giving Warnings and Commands

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2A

Look at the pictures. Match the warnings and commands to the pictures.

Stop! Police!

Please put your seat belt on.

Watch out for the ball!

Look out!

Don't step on the truck!

Sit down and be quiet.



1. Look out!



4. _____



2. _____



5. _____



3. _____



6. _____

C3 Making Requests

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2A, 2B

Work with a partner. Write a request that you might hear in each place below.

1. (in a classroom) Please give your papers to me.
2. (in an office) _____
3. (in an airport) _____
4. (at a party) _____
5. (at home) _____
6. (at a movie theater) _____

C4 Giving Advice

► Notes 1A, 1B

Read each problem. In your notebook, write two sentences of advice: one with an affirmative imperative and one with a negative imperative. Then compare answers with a partner.

1. The light doesn't work.
Don't touch the lightbulb. Turn the light off first.
2. My son is sick.
3. The gas tank is almost empty.
4. I can't sleep at night.
5. I don't have many friends.
6. I have a headache.

C5 Giving Instructions

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2A

Work with a partner. You are leaving on vacation, and a friend is going to stay in your apartment. Take turns telling your friend what to do while you are away. Use affirmative and negative imperatives.

cat	lights	newspaper	rent	voice mail
dog	mail	plants	trash	windows

Don't forget to feed the cat.
Please walk the dog twice a day.

9/18
Homework
10 sentences
type...
verb.
1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8-9-10
练习

肯定句
否定句
imperative

A. Write an appropriate affirmative or negative imperative sentence for each situation.

1. Your friend is new in town. Tell him how to go to the post office.

Go down three blocks and turn left at the traffic light.

2. You are a bus driver. A man is getting off the bus. Tell him to watch his step.

Be Careful

3. You are going on vacation with some friends. Your mother is worried. Reassure her.

Don't worry about me.

4. You are a salesperson. Tell your customer to sign the credit card receipt.

Please sign the credit card.

5. You want your roommates to help you clean the apartment. Give each person a chore.

a job

6. You dropped a glass on the floor. Warn your roommate.

7. Josh, a close friend, is visiting your home. Offer him something to eat.

8. Your uncle looks very tired. Give him some advice.

9. You are going out to dinner with some co-workers. Tell them to wait for you in the lobby.

10. You are crossing a busy street with your cousin. Give her a warning.

B. Would you use *you* in any of the situations in part A? Why or why not? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read what each person says. Is the imperative appropriate for the situation? If it is not appropriate, rewrite it. Then discuss your answers with a partner.

1. (an army sergeant to a soldier) Please get up. It's 5:00 A.M.

Get up! It's 5:00 A.M.

2. (a cook to his assistant) Bake the chicken at 375° for one hour.

~~Please~~

3. (one stranger to another on the street) Please look out! A car is coming!

4. (a young girl to her grandmother) Sit down!

~~Please~~

5. (a bank robber to a bank teller) Please give me all of your money.

6. (an adult to a child) Turn off the television, sir.

~~_____~~

D2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. ~~You don't worrying~~ about your memory.

Don't worry

2. Be not noisy!

Don't be noisy

3. Don't listen to her.

4. Megan, closes the door, please.

5. Study the vocabulary for tomorrow's test.

6. Leave not now!

Don't

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of grammar in everyday life. Look for imperatives in how-to articles or advice columns in an English-language magazine or on the Internet. You can also look at the English-language section of an instruction manual for a computer, DVD player, or other home appliance. Write down five examples and bring them to class. Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Find a recipe for your favorite food in an English-language cookbook or on the Internet. Bring it to class. Work with a partner. Take turns telling each other how to prepare your recipes. Use imperatives where possible.

My favorite recipe is my mother's chocolate cake. First, beat two eggs in a bowl. Then, add a cup of milk and stir well. Next, . . .



The Present Continuous

present progressive

be + Ving

am
are
is
are

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Long-Distance Messenger	30
B. FORM: The Present Continuous	32
She is working today.	
C. MEANING AND USE: The Present Continuous	36
Activities in Progress	
Stative Verbs and the Present Continuous	
Vocabulary Notes: Adverbs and Time Expressions with the Present Continuous	40
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	43

walking
= walkin'
不正規の

A

Long-Distance Messenger

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you think there is life on other planets? Is it a good idea to look for life on other planets? Why or why not?

A2 Read



Read the magazine article on the following page to discover the two different purposes of a famous spacecraft.

A3 After You Read

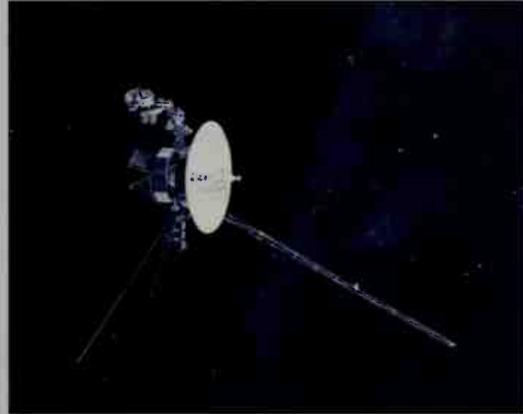
Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- T 1. *Voyager* is a spacecraft.
- T 2. *Voyager* is traveling through space.
- F 3. *Voyager* is coming back to Earth right now.
- T 4. People aren't traveling on *Voyager*.
- F 5. *Voyager* isn't carrying pictures.
- F 6. *Voyager* is carrying live animals.

LONG-DISTANCE MESSENGER

Voyager I is a spacecraft that left Earth in 1977. Its purpose was to explore our solar system. Scientists expected to receive information about other planets from *Voyager* for ten to fifteen years. They were very wrong. They are still receiving messages from *Voyager* today. *Voyager* is currently moving away from Earth at a speed of 39,000 miles per hour (62,904 kilometers per hour). Now it is so far away that its messages take almost ten hours to travel to Earth. After all this time, these messages are still giving scientists important information about our solar system.

Voyager has another important job. It is a messenger from our planet to other planets. *Voyager* is not carrying any astronauts, but it is carrying more than 100 pictures of life on Earth and greetings in over 50 languages. It also has examples of animal sounds, different



Voyager I

kinds of music, the sound of a mother kissing a baby, and messages from world leaders. In addition, it is carrying pictures of humans and a map that shows Earth's location.

Scientists say that *Voyager* will send messages until the year 2020. Perhaps one day someone from another planet will find the spacecraft and learn about our planet.

astronaut: a person who travels in a spacecraft
greetings: words that you say when you see or meet someone
messenger: a person or thing that brings information

solar system: the Sun and the planets that move around it
spacecraft: a vehicle that can travel in space
voyager: somebody or something that travels

B

The Present Continuous

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. Voyager is a messenger from Earth. b. It is carrying pictures of humans.

- Underline the verbs. Which is simple present? Which is present continuous?
- How many words are necessary to form the present continuous? What ending is added to the base form of the verb?
- Look back at the article on page 31. Find three examples of the present continuous.

Affirmative Statements				
SUBJECT	BE	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING		
I	am	working	today.	
You	are			
He She It	is			
We	are			
You				
They				

Negative Statements				
SUBJECT	BE	NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
I	am	not	working	today.
You	are			
He She It	is			
We	are			
You				
They				

CONTRACTIONS				
I'm	working	today.		
You're				
He's				
They're				

CONTRACTIONS				
I'm not	working	today.		
You're not You aren't				
He's not He isn't				
They're not They aren't				

Yes/No Questions			
BE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
Are	you	working	now?
Is	it		
Are	they		

Short Answers				
YES	SUBJECT	BE	NO	SUBJECT + BE + NOT
Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm not.
	it	is.		it isn't.
	they	are.		they aren't.

Information Questions			
WH- WORD	BE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING
How	am	I	doing?
Who	are	you	calling?
What			studying?
Where	is	he	working?
Why	are	they	shouting?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	BE		BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING
Who	is		laughing?
What		happening?	

- n. 附錄 17. Present continuous vt. 正在做*
- See Appendix 3 for the spelling of verbs ending in *-ing*.
 - See Appendix 16 for more contractions with *be*.

⚠ Do not use contractions in affirmative short answers.

Yes, I am.

*Yes, I'm. (INCORRECT)

⚠ Do not use a subject pronoun in information questions when *who* or *what* is the subject.

What is happening?

*What is it happening? (INCORRECT)

B1 Listening for Form

 Listen to each sentence. Choose the verb form you hear.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. a. is living
b. isn't living
c. are living
d. aren't living | 4. a. am sleeping
b. am not sleeping
c. is sleeping
d. is not sleeping |
| 2. a. am trying
b. am not trying
c. are trying
d. are not trying | 5. a. is working
b. isn't working
c. are working
d. aren't working |
| 3. a. is meeting
b. is not meeting
c. are meeting
d. are not meeting | 6. a. am cooking
b. am not cooking
c. are cooking
d. aren't cooking |

B2 Forming Statements and Yes/No Questions

A. Form sentences in the present continuous from these words and phrases. Use contractions where possible, and punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. in Canada/Maria and Hector/live

Maria and Hector are living in Canada.

2. Hector/in a factory/work

Hector is working in a factory.

3. not/Maria/in a factory/work

Maria is not working in a factory.

4. she/Spanish/teach

She is teaching Spanish.

5. English/Hector/at night/study

6. not/live/they/in an apartment

They are not living in an apartment.

= They're not

7. rent/a small house/they

8. learn/Maria and Hector/about life in Canada

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering Yes/No questions about the sentences in part A.

A: Are Maria and Hector living in Canada?

B: Yes, they are. OR

A: Are Maria and Hector living in the United States?

B: No, they're not. They're living in Canada.

B3 Writing Information Questions

Write an information question about each underlined word or phrase.

1. The rice is burning!

What is burning?

2. Carol is talking on the telephone.

Who is talking on the telephone

3. Ben is reading the newspaper.

What is Ben reading

4. Eric is studying at the library.

Where is Eric study

5. Their children are playing a game.

What are these children doing

6. The children are yelling because they're excited.

Why the children are yelling

7. He's feeling sad today.

How is he feeling today

8. They're doing their homework now.

What are they doing now

C

The Present Continuous

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- The earth's climate is becoming warmer.
 - I'm eating dinner now. Can I call you back?
 - I'm taking a computer programming course this semester.
- Which sentence describes an activity that is happening at the exact moment the speaker is talking? *b*
 - Which sentence describes an activity that is in progress, but not happening at the exact moment the speaker is talking? *c*
 - Which sentence describes a changing situation? *a*

Meaning and Use Notes

Activities in Progress

- right now!*
- 1A** Use the present continuous for activities that are in progress (or happening) at the exact moment the speaker is talking. You can use time expressions such as *now* or *right now* to emphasize that an action is happening currently (and may end soon).

Activities in Progress at This Exact Moment

Look! It's **snowing**!

She's **making** dinner now.

Steve can't come to the phone right now. He's **taking** a bath.

- 1B** Use the present continuous for activities that are in progress, but not happening at the exact moment the speaker is talking. You can use time expressions such as this week or these days to show when the action is happening.

Activities in Progress, but Not Happening at This Exact Moment

I'm **looking** for a cheap car. Do you have any ideas?

I'm **painting** my house this week. It's **taking** a long time.

1C Use the present continuous for changing situations.

Changing Situations

My grades **are improving** this semester.

Computers **are getting** cheaper all the time.

Stative Verbs and the Present Continuous

2A Many stative verbs are not generally used in the present continuous. They are usually used in the simple present. Some of these verbs are know, mean, own, seem, and understand. See Appendix 7 for a list of more stative verbs.

Simple Present

Do you know the answer?

What **does solar system mean**?

We **don't own** a car.

Present Continuous

*Are you **knowing** the answer? (INCORRECT)

*What is **solar system meaning**? (INCORRECT)

*We're not **owning** a car. (INCORRECT)

2B Some stative verbs can be used in the present continuous, but they are used as action verbs and have a different meaning from their simple present meaning. Some of these verbs are have, look, see, taste, think, and weigh.

Simple Present

They **have** a large house.

(They own a large house.)

Mark **looks** very unhappy.

(Mark seems unhappy.)

I **see** Lisa. She's behind Bob.

(I'm looking at Lisa.)

The soup **tastes** salty.

(The soup has a salty taste.)

I **think** that's a great idea.

(I believe that's a great idea.)

The package **weighs** two pounds.

(Its weight is two pounds.)

Present Continuous

They're **having** a good time.

(They're experiencing a good time.)

Mark **is looking** for his car keys.

(Mark is searching for his car keys.)

I'm **seeing** Lisa.

(I'm dating Lisa.)

The chef **is tasting** the soup.

(The chef is trying the soup.)

I'm **thinking** about Lisa. I like her a lot.

(Lisa is in my thoughts right now.)

The postal worker **is weighing** the package.

(The postal worker is using a scale.)

2C Stative verbs that refer to physical conditions can occur in the simple present or present continuous with no difference in meaning. Some of these verbs are ache, feel, and hurt.

Simple Present

I **don't feel** well.

My throat **hurts**.

Present Continuous

I'm **not feeling** well.

My throat **is hurting**.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 1A

 Listen to the announcements. Where would you hear each one?

in an airport on an airplane on a train
in a store on a ship on television or the radio

1. on an airplane 3. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 4. _____ 6. _____

C2 Understanding Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A-1C

Read each conversation and look at the underlined verb form. Is the statement that follows true or false? Write *T* for true or *F* for false. Then discuss your answers with a partner.

1. **Carlos:** Thanks for the ride, Marta. You seem really tired. Are you OK?

Marta: Well, I'm working a lot of extra hours these days. I guess I am pretty tired.

not right now

F Marta is working in the office right now.

2. **Dan:** I need to find a cheap apartment, and it's not easy.

Lee: I know. Rents here are becoming more expensive every year.

T The cost of renting an apartment is changing.

3. **Amy:** How's school this semester?

Emily: Great! I'm studying physics, and I really like it.

F Emily is studying physics at this exact moment.

4. **Nesha:** Please answer the phone, Nicole.

Nicole: I'm sorry. I can't. I'm helping a customer.

T Nicole is helping a customer right now.

5. **Steve:** How's your new puppy?

Jenny: Don't ask! She's ruining everything in my apartment.

T The puppy is ruining everything these days.

6. **Minhee:** What's wrong, Hanna? You don't look happy.

Hanna: I'm getting a cold.

F Hanna woke up with a bad cold.

C3 Describing Activities in Progress

▶ Note 1A

Look at the pictures. How are they different? In your notebook, write as many sentences as you can. Use the verbs below and the present continuous. (You can use some verbs more than once.)

chase enter help look run shout wait walk

In picture 1, the police officer is helping the woman.

In picture 2, he isn't helping the woman. He's chasing a thief.



1.



2.

10 sentences
+ type
use present continuous
打打打
(连续动作)

Adverbs and Time Expressions with the Present Continuous

Still and the Present Continuous *Still* is an adverb that is often used with the present continuous. *Still* emphasizes that the activity or state is in progress. It often suggests surprise that the activity or state has not ended. Place *still* after *be* in affirmative statements, before *be* in negative statements, and after the subject in questions.

AFFIRMATIVE STATEMENT

He is **still** living with his parents.

NEGATIVE STATEMENT

He **still** isn't living on his own.

YES/NO QUESTION

Is he **still** living with his parents?

INFORMATION QUESTION

Why is he **still** living with his parents?

Time Expressions with the Present Continuous Time expressions are also commonly used with the present continuous. Some time expressions refer to an exact moment in the present. These include *now*, *right now*, and *at the moment*.

Others refer to a longer time period that includes the present moment. These include *this morning*, *this afternoon*, *this evening*, *this week*, *this month*, *this semester*, *this year*, *these days*, and *nowadays*.

Time expressions can occur at the beginning or end of a sentence.

EXACT MOMENT

Now I'm making dinner.

He's sleeping **right now**.

He's taking a shower **at the moment**.

LONGER TIME PERIOD

She's working hard **this morning**.

This week I'm doing research at the library.

She's feeling much better **these days**.

C4 Using Adverbs and Time Expressions with the Present Continuous

In your notebook, write sentences about yourself and people you know. Use the present continuous and these subjects and time expressions.

1. I/right now

I am studying English right now.

2. My best friend/these days

3. Some of my friends/still

4. My English class/right now

5. My family/nowadays

6. I/still

7. I/this year

8. My neighbor/still

type

一阵子 - 一段时间
Zhu!

C5 Contrasting Routines with Activities in Progress

Look at the pictures. In your notebook, use these words and phrases to write sentences about the people's jobs and what they are doing now.



1. Tom/drive a taxi/watch TV
Tom drives a taxi. Now he's watching TV.



4. Greg/teach math/play the violin



2. Celia/teach ballet/shop for food



5. David/cook in a restaurant/fish



3. Linda and Kendra /wait on tables/go to the movies



6. Ed and Reiko/work in a hospital/bowl

动词 (simple present)
contraction
需要 a

他们
their

C6 Distinguishing Between States and Actions

► Notes 2A-2C

- A. Complete this conversation with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple present or present continuous. More than one answer is sometimes possible.

Doctor: What seems¹ (seem) to be the problem?

Rita: I don't know² (not/know). My head hurts³ (hurt), and my stomach aches⁴ (ache).

Doctor: You look⁵ (look) pale. I think⁶ (think) it's probably the flu.

Rita: Oh, no! I have⁷ (have) a hard time at work right now. I can't get sick now!

Doctor: I think⁸ (think) about your health right now, not your work.

- B. Practice the conversation in Part A with a partner.

C7 Distinguishing Differences in Meaning

► Notes 2B-2C

Read each pair of sentences and look at the underlined verbs. Do the verbs have different meanings or the same meaning? Write *D* for different or *S* for same. Discuss your answers in small groups.

- D 1. a. You look really nice today.
b. We're looking at some photos right now.
- D 2. a. I weigh 150 pounds.
b. The clerk is weighing the bananas. = feeling etc
- S 3. a. I need to go home because I don't feel well.
b. Paul says that he's not feeling well.
- D 4. a. I see the boys. There they are!
b. I'm seeing Jake. He's wonderful!
- D 5. a. Nicole is thinking about moving.
b. I don't think that's a good plan.
- D 6. a. They're having a good time at the party.
b. We have a new puppy.

D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Stop her! She ____!

B: What's the matter?

- a. leaves
- b. is leaving
- c. leave

2. A: ____ you ____ hard these days?

B: Yes, I'm really tired every night.

- a. Are/working
- b. Do/work
- c. Are/work

3. A: ____ you ____ their car?

B: I'm not sure. Is it that green Ford?

- a. Do/see
- b. Are/seeing
- c. Is/see

4. A: Why ____ he ____ German?

B: He's not studying enough.

- a. does/fail
- b. is/failing
- c. does/failing

5. A: How ____ the soup ____?

B: It's delicious.

- a. is/tasting
- b. is/taste
- c. does/taste

6. A: What ____?

B: My parents. I'm worried about them.

- a. do you think
- b. do you think about
- c. are you thinking about

7. A: This package is really heavy.

B: How much ____ it ____?

- a. is/weigh
- b. does/weigh
- c. is/weighing

8. A: Where's Maria?

B: She's busy now. She ____ the baby.

- a. feeds
- b. feeding
- c. is feeding

D2 Editing

Find the errors in this letter and correct them.

Dear Donna,

I love Sunrise Inn. It ^{has} ~~is having~~ a very restful atmosphere. Right now I sit under a large tree in the garden. I ^{= am not} ~~don't~~ ^{worrying} worrying about anything. The sun ^{is} shining, a cool breeze blows, and birds ^{are} singing. I ^{= am having} have a wonderful vacation!

What ^{are} ~~do~~ you ^{doing} ~~do~~ these days? Are you ^{working} ~~work~~ hard? Is Ted still being angry at you? Are you ^{having} ~~have~~ good weather?

Write and tell me your news.

Myles

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Listen to an English-language news report for uses of the present continuous. Write down three examples and bring them to class. Why do you think the reporter used the present continuous? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about what you are doing these days at school, at work, or in your free time.

1. Write a list of activities that you are doing these days, such as studying English, reading newspapers, working in an office, exercising, etc.
2. Write a first draft. Use the present continuous where appropriate.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

These days I'm studying a lot for my English exams. I'm also cooking a lot of Italian food at home. . . .

The Simple Past

The Past

PART

2

The Simple Past

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Decade That Made a Difference	48
B. FORM 1: The Simple Past	50
I arrived yesterday.	
Pronunciation Notes: Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in <i>-ed</i>	53
Informally Speaking: Reduced Form of <i>Did You</i>	56
C. MEANING AND USE 1: The Simple Past	57
Actions or States Completed in the Past	
Vocabulary Notes: Time Expressions with the Simple Past	60
Beyond the Sentence: Using Time Expressions with Tense Changes	61
D. FORM 2: <i>Used To</i>	62
She used to arrive late.	
E. MEANING AND USE 2: The Habitual Past with <i>Used To</i>	65
Comparing the Past and the Present	
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	67

A The Decade That Made a Difference

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

1960 ~ 1969

What do you know about the 1960s? What were some important events? Do you have a good opinion or a bad opinion about this decade?

A2 Read

 Read the book excerpt on the following page to find out about the 1960s.

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true and *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. Before the 1960s all Americans questioned their country's values.
- F 2. John F. Kennedy led the Civil Rights movement during the 1960s.
- T 3. The Vietnam War occurred during the 1960s.
- F 4. All young people agreed with the war in Vietnam.
- T 5. Hippies agreed with their parents' ideas about life.
- T 6. Relationships between men and women were different after the 1960s.



Woodstock music festival, 1969



I talked ...
 I didn't talk ...
 Did you talk ...?

THE DECADE THAT MADE A DIFFERENCE

Many people who grew up during the 1960s think it was a very special time. Before the 1960s most Americans used to believe that the American way was the best. People respected the law, trusted their leaders, and did not use to question American values. All that changed in the 1960s.

The 1960s was the decade that made a difference. John F. Kennedy became president; Martin Luther King, Jr., led the Civil Rights movement; and women's groups fought for equal rights. It was an exciting time to be young: the Beatles wrote their songs, and many young Americans flocked to the famous three-day Woodstock music festival. But the 1960s was also the time of the Vietnam War. Many young people were very angry with the government. They protested against the war because they did not want to fight.

The youth rebellion of the 1960s went beyond politics. It questioned many of the values of American society. This was the time of the "hippies." The hippies were young people who had long hair, wore strange, colorful clothes, and believed in peace. They were not interested in money, and they did not agree with many of their parents' ideas about life.

Many things changed in the 1960s. Some of them, such as hairstyles and clothing, were not very important. Others, such as laws about the rights of African Americans and the relationship between men and women, were very significant. And there is certainly no doubt about one thing: when the 1960s ended, the United States was different, and the world was, too.



A 1960s peace protest

Civil Rights movement: a series of political and social actions to gain equal rights for African Americans

decade: a period of ten years (for example, 1960–1969)

protest: to express strong public disagreement

rebellion: organized fighting or protest against a government or other authority

significant: important

value: a belief about what is right or wrong

B

The Simple Past = action that started + finished in the past

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. The youth rebellion questioned the values of American society.
- b. Young people protested against the war.
- c. The hippies believed in peace.

1. Underline the verbs.

fly → flew →

2. All of these verbs are regular verbs in the simple past. How do we form the simple past of regular verbs?

3. Look back at the excerpt on page 49. Find the simple past of the irregular verbs below. How are they different from the verbs in sentences a, b, and c?

make lead write go

肯定陈述

Affirmative Statements		
SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -D/-ED or IRREGULAR FORM	
I	arrived worked left	yesterday.
You		
He		
She		
It		
We		
You		
They		

否定陈述

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	DID + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	did not didn't	arrive work leave	yesterday.
You			
He			
She			
It			
We			
You			
They			

Yes/No Questions

DID	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Did	you	arrive	yesterday?
	he	work	
	they	leave	

Short Answers

YES	SUBJECT	DID	NO	SUBJECT	DID + NOT
Yes,	I	did.	No,	I	didn't.
	he			he	
	they			they	

short answer

Information Questions

WH- WORD	DID	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	did	you	see	yesterday?
What		he	do	
Where		she	go	
When		we	study	
Why		you	leave	
How		they	feel	

Yes/No 問題

did not.

用於強調的時候

Did + subject + base form

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)		VERB + -D/-ED or IRREGULAR FORM	
Who		left	yesterday?
What		happened	

- To form the simple past of most regular verbs, add *-ed* to the base form. If the base form of a regular verb ends in *e*, add *-d*. See Appendices 4 and 5 for the spelling and pronunciation of verbs ending in *-ed*.
- Some verbs are irregular in the simple past. See Appendix 6 for a list of irregular verbs and their simple past forms.

⚠ Do not use *did* in information questions when *who* or *what* is the subject.
What happened yesterday?

- The verb *be* has two irregular simple past forms: *was* and *were*.
I **was** at the concert. You **were** at the mall.
He **was** a musician. They **were** home.

⚠ Do not use *did* in negative statements or questions with *was/were*.

I **wasn't** there. Why **was** she late?
We **weren't** angry. Were you **at the concert**?

B1 Listening for Form

 Listen to these sentences. Write the simple past verb forms you hear.

1. Dan invited us to the movies.
2. They didn't go to the hockey game. *曲棍球*
3. She found 20 dollars on the street.
4. They didn't close the store at nine. *close door*
close the table
5. I went to work by car every day last week.
6. He played baseball for the New York Mets.
7. You got a haircut! It looks great!
8. We ate chocolate cake at the restaurant.

B2 Working on Regular Verb Forms

Complete this paragraph with the simple past form of the verbs below.

believe carry listen live *protest* study support want

I was a college student in the 1960s. I

studied₁ history at a university in Chicago.

I lived₂ in an apartment near the university with four classmates. Like many other

students, I protested₃ against the war in

Vietnam. My friends and I carried₄ signs

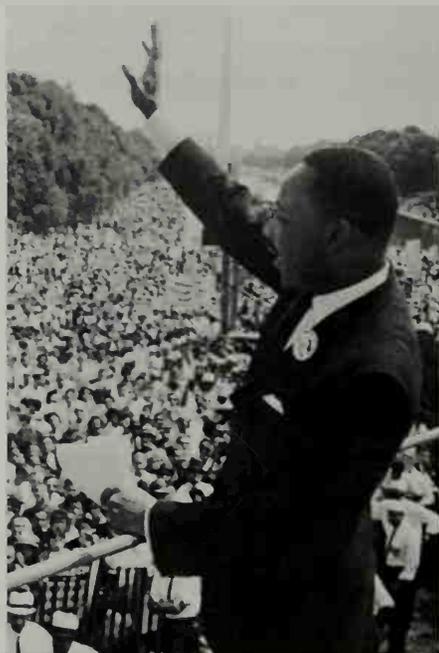
that said "Peace." We all believed₅ in peace

and freedom. We wanted₆ to change the

world. We also supported₇ the Civil Rights

movement and listened₈ to speeches by its

leader, Martin Luther King, Jr.



Martin Luther King, Jr., 1963

Jr. = Junior *资历浅的*
Sr. = Senior *资历深的*

study ⇒ studied
carry ⇒ carried
believe ⇒ believed
live ⇒ lived

play ⇒ played
vowel 字母 a.e.i.o.u
cry ⇒ cried

Stop ⇒ stopped
V-ing 的规则是一个音节一个再判定, but 不适用在 Past Verb 上。

Pronunciation Notes

Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in -ed

The regular simple past ending *-ed* is pronounced in three different ways, depending on the final sound of the base form of the verb.

- The *-ed* is pronounced /t/ if the verb ends with the sound /p/, /k/, /tʃ/, /f/, /s/, /ʃ/, or /ks/.
work — worked /wɜːkt/ wash — washed /wɔːʃt/ watch — watched /wɒtʃt/
- The *-ed* is pronounced /d/ if the verb ends with the sound /b/, /g/, /dʒ/, /v/, /ð/, /z/, /ʒ/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/, or /r/.
plan — planned /plænd/ judge — judged /dʒʌdʒd/ bang — banged /bænd/
bathe — bathed /beɪðd/ massage — massaged /mə'sɑːʒd/ rub — rubbed /rʌbd/
- The *-ed* is also pronounced /d/ if the verb ends with a vowel sound.
play — played /pleɪd/ sigh — sighed /saɪd/ row — rowed /rouəd/
bow — bowed /baʊd/ sue — sued /sud/ free — freed /friəd/
- The *-ed* is pronounced as an extra syllable, /ɪd/, if the verb ends with the sound /d/ or /t/.
guide — guided /'gaɪdɪd/ remind — reminded /,rɪ'maɪndɪd/
rent — rented /'rentɪd/ invite — invited /,ɪn'vaɪtɪd/

B3 Pronouncing Verbs Ending in -ed

 Listen to the pronunciation of each verb. Which ending do you hear? Check (✓) the correct column.

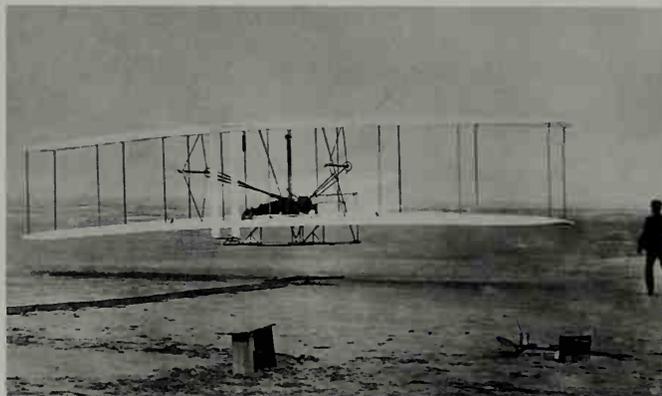
		/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
1.	wait ed			✓
2.	walked			
3.	rained			
4.	played			
5.	coughed			
6.	decided			
7.	jumped			
8.	answered		✓	

/t/ = -k, -ch, -sh, p, t, s.
 /d/ = f, s, ks

B4 Working on Irregular Verb Forms

- A. Read about the first airplane flight by Wilbur and Orville Wright. Complete the paragraph with the verbs in parentheses and the simple past.

The first airplane flight
 _____₁ (take) place in
 Kitty Hawk, North Carolina,
 on December 17, 1903. Orville
 Wright _____₂ (lie) face
 down in the middle of the
 airplane, and his brother, Wilbur



Wright, _____₃ (run) alongside it. Near the end of the runway, the plane
 _____₄ (rise) smoothly into the air. It _____₅ (fly) for several seconds, but
 then it _____₆ (fall) to the ground. This 12-second flight _____₇ (make)
 history, but no one _____₈ (pay) attention to the Wright brothers at first.
 However, after they _____₉ (give) many public demonstrations of their flying
 machine, the Wright brothers _____₁₀ (become) famous.

- B. In your notebook, write three Yes/No and three Wh- questions about the paragraph in part A.

Did the first airplane flight take place in North Carolina?

OR

Where did the first airplane flight take place?

- C. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering your questions in part B.

A: *Did the first airplane flight take place in North Carolina?*

B: *Yes, it did.*

OR

A: *Where did the first airplane flight take place?*

B: *In North Carolina.*

Did + subject + base form verb
helping verb

B5 Building Yes/No Questions in the Simple Past

Build eight logical Yes/No questions. Use a word or phrase from each column. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

Did it rain yesterday?

单数 → was
复数 → were

did	it	v. rain yesterday
was	the party	<u>first</u>
were	the test	<u>nervous</u>
	Maria	<u>fun</u>
	you	v. win
	the children	v. leave
	they	<u>difficult</u>
	your team	v. start on time

Was the party fun?
Did you win?
Were they start on time?
Was it difficult?
Was the test difficult?
Did Maria leave?
Did your team win?
Were you nervous?

Did it rain yesterday? Was Maria nervous? Were they first?
Were they fun? Did the children start on time?

B6 Working on Yes/No Questions and Short Answers in the Simple Past

A. Complete this conversation with *did*, *didn't*, *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

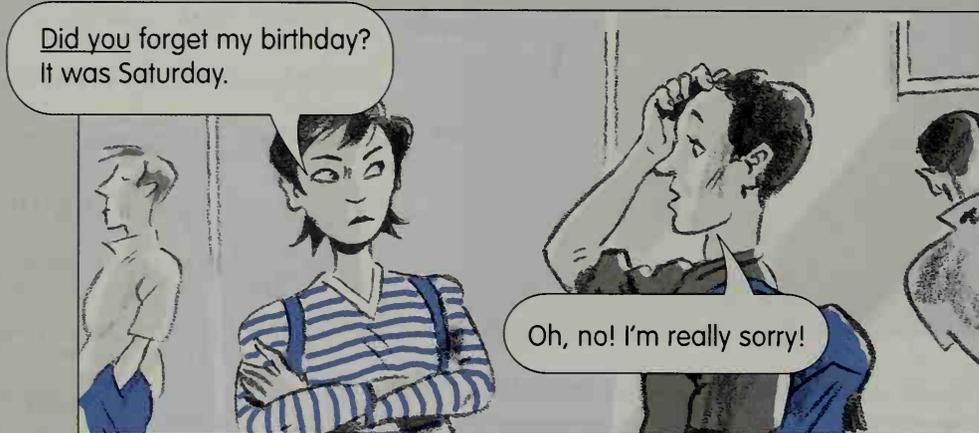
Lynn: Did₁ you go to the basketball game last night?
Gary: Yes, I did₂.
Lynn: Was₃ it exciting?
Gary: Yes, it was₄ great. Maple Valley didn't₅ win until the last minute. What did₆ you and Bill do last night?
Lynn: We were₇ tired, so we didn't₈ go out.
Gary: Did₉ you watch that new television show?
Lynn: Yes, we did₁₀ but we didn't₁₁ like it. It was₁₂ really boring!

B. Practice the conversation in part A with a partner.

Did. Verb
was
were → 没有 verb
adj
ex: tired
great
boring exciting

Reduced Form of *Did You*

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How is the underlined form in the cartoon different from what you hear?



Did you is often pronounced /'dɪdʒə/ in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

Did you work yesterday?

“/'dɪdʒə/ work yesterday?”

Did you eat yet?

“/'dɪdʒə/ eat yet?”

B7 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen and write the standard form of the words you hear.

1. A: Did you go₁ to the party?

B: Yes, I did.

A: _____₂ a good time?

B: Yes, but today I'm very tired.

2. A: _____₁ lunch yet?

B: Yes, I did.

A: What _____₂?

B: A burger and fries.

3. A: _____₁ home last night?

B: No, I went to a movie.

A: _____₂ it?

B: No, it wasn't very good.

4. A: Why _____₁ so late?

B: My boss needed help on a report.

A: _____₂ it?

B: Yes, it wasn't difficult.

C

The Simple Past

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- I walk a mile every day.
- During my childhood we lived in Morocco.
- I went to Jake's party last night.

Which sentence talks about the present? Which sentences talk about situations that started and ended in the past? Which sentence talks about a situation that happened a short time ago? a long time ago?

Meaning and Use Notes

Actions or States Completed in the Past

- 1A** Use the simple past for actions or states that started and ended in the past. Use time expressions to describe the time period.

I **lived** in Boston in 1999.

They **played** baseball on Saturdays.

We **went** shopping yesterday.

The garden **was** beautiful last year.

- 1B** The actions or states can happen in the recent past (a short time ago) or the distant past (a long time ago).

Recent Past

He **called** five minutes ago.

She **felt** tired yesterday.

Distant Past

They **got married** in 1973.

He **was** very sick ten years ago.

- 1C** The actions or states can last for a long or short period of time.

Long Period of Time

I **worked** there for many years.

She **was** ill for six months.

Short Period of Time

It **rained** hard all afternoon.

He **seemed** happy to see me.

- 1D** The actions or states can happen once or repeatedly.

Happened Once

I **graduated** on June 5, 1999.

Happened Repeatedly

He **always studied** hard before a test.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A-1D

- A.  Listen to each conversation. Listen carefully for the phrases in the chart. Is the second speaker talking about the recent past or the distant past? Check (✓) the correct column.

		<i>short time ago</i> RECENT PAST	<i>long time ago</i> DISTANT PAST
1.	grandmother died	✓	
2.	walked to school		✓
3.	saw Kedra	✓	
4.	bought the dress		✓
5.	took part in protests	✓	✓
6.	studied French		✓

- B.  Listen again. Is the second speaker referring to a situation that happened once or repeatedly? Check (✓) the correct column.

		<i>-1x</i> HAPPENED ONCE	HAPPENED REPEATEDLY
1.	grandmother died	✓	
2.	walked to school		✓
3.	saw Kedra		✓
4.	bought the dress	✓	
5.	took part in protests		✓
6.	studied French		✓

C2 Making Excuses

► Notes 1A-1D

- A. You were supposed to meet your friend for lunch yesterday, but you didn't. Use these words and phrases to make excuses.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. go/the wrong restaurant
<i>I'm sorry. I went to the wrong restaurant.</i> | 4. my car/run out of gas |
| 2. forget/the name of the restaurant | 5. my watch/stop |
| 3. have/an important meeting at work | 6. have/a terrible headache |

- B. Now think of three more excuses. Use your imagination.

Lo
1/18
Hiw
record

C3 Guessing What Happened

► Notes 1A-1D

Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and guess what happened. Use *maybe* or *perhaps* and the simple past to make two sentences for each picture.



Maybe she didn't study for the test.
Perhaps she forgot about the test.



Time Expressions with the Simple Past

Time expressions are commonly used with the simple past. These words and phrases often refer to an exact point in time in the past or to a past time period. Time expressions can occur at the beginning or end of a sentence.

yesterday

the day before yesterday

this morning/afternoon

last night/week/month/year

recently

a few/several/many years ago

a long time ago/a while ago

I saw Silvio **yesterday**.

We didn't go to school **the day before yesterday**.

This morning she stayed home.

Where did they go **last month**?

Did you move **recently**?

A few years ago he lost his job.

Rick graduated **a long time ago**.

C4 Using Time Expressions with the Simple Past

A. In your notebook, write sentences about yourself in the simple past with these time expressions and the phrases below. You can use a time expression more than once.

a while ago

recently

this ...

last ...

the day before yesterday

yesterday

1. write a letter

I wrote a letter last night.

2. wash the dishes

3. talk to a friend on the telephone

4. eat in a restaurant

5. speak English outside of class

6. go to a movie

7. receive an e-mail

8. take a vacation

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering information questions about the sentences you wrote in part A.

A: *When was the last time you wrote a letter?*

B: *I wrote a letter last night.*

Using Time Expressions with Tense Changes

In stories and descriptions, we often use the simple past and the simple present to contrast situations in the past and present. We use time expressions to clarify the change of tenses.

Compare the paragraphs below. The paragraphs on the left are confusing because they do not use time expressions to show the change from the past to the present or the present to the past. The paragraphs on the right are clear because they use time expressions to clarify the tense change in each paragraph.

WITHOUT TIME EXPRESSIONS

Sally **walked** home in the rain. She **feels** sick and **doesn't want** to go to work.

I always **walk** my dog. It **was** cold, and he **didn't want** to go outside. So we **stayed** in.

WITH TIME EXPRESSIONS

Sally **walked** home in the rain yesterday. Now she **feels** sick and **doesn't want** to go to work.

I always **walk** my dog in the morning. This morning it **was** cold, and he **didn't want** to go outside. So we **stayed** in.

C5 Using Time Expressions with Tense Changes

Complete these sentences with one of the time expressions below. There is more than one correct answer for each sentence.

last night now recently these days
last week nowadays the day before yesterday this morning

1. My parents rarely leave home, but _____ *recently* _____ they decided to visit Washington, D.C.
2. The movie I saw last week scared me to death. _____ I'm afraid to stay home alone.
3. My dog and cat are good friends. _____ I found them playing together in my apartment.
4. My neighbors are very noisy. They often keep me up until late at night. _____ I finally called the police.
5. I was on my college swim team last year. However, _____ I don't have time for sports. I have too much homework.
6. I celebrated my birthday _____, and Jim didn't even send me a card.

D

Used To

指在過去一段時間重覆發生, but 現在沒有

When I was a child, I rode a bike to school.

I used to use a computer.
ride a bike to school.

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. He didn't use to visit his parents so often.
 - b. Did she use to like the class?
 - c. We used to swim every morning.
 - d. Where did you use to live?
1. Underline *used to* or *use to* in each sentence. Circle all the examples of *did* or *didn't*.
 2. When do we use the form *used to*? When do we use the form *use to*?

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	USED TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	used to	arrive	late.
You			
He			
She			
It			
We			
You			
They			

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	DID + NOT	USE TO	BASE FORM OF VERB
I	did not didn't	use to	arrive late.
You			
He			
She			
It			
We			
You			
They			

Yes/No Questions				
DID	SUBJECT	USE TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Did	you	use to	arrive	late?
	he			
	they			

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	DID	NO	SUBJECT	DID + NOT
Yes,	I	did.	No,	I	didn't.
	he				
	they				

read it!

Information Questions					
WH- WORD	DID	SUBJECT	USE TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Why		you		arrive	early?
When	did	she	use to	protest	against the government?
Where		they		live	in Chicago?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)			USED TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who			used to	live	across the street?
What				happen	on New Year's Eve?

- Use *used to* in affirmative statements.
 - Use *use to* in negative statements with *didn't*, in *Yes/No* questions, and in information questions with *did*.
 - The forms *used to* and *use to* have the same pronunciation: /'yustu/.
- ⚠ Do not use *did* in information questions when *who* or *what* is the subject. Use *used to* with these questions.
- Who used to take you to school? -
- *Who did used to take you to school? (INCORRECT)

D1 Listening for Form

 Listen to each sentence. Which form of *used to* does the speaker use? Check (✓) the correct column.

	USED TO	DIDN'T USE TO	DID ... USE TO
1.	✓		
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			

D2 Rewriting Statements and Questions with *Used To*

Rewrite these simple past sentences and questions with the correct form of *used to*.

1. They walked to the park every Sunday.

They used to walk to the park every Sunday.

2. Were you in the army?

Did you use to be

3. I didn't go to the movies very often.

I didn't use to go

4. He wasn't a good student in high school.

He didn't use to be

5. Did your family rent a beach house every summer?

6. We visited our parents on weekends.

D3 Completing Conversations with *Used To*

Complete these conversations with the words in parentheses and the correct form of *used to*. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

Conversation 1

A: Where did you use to live (you/live)?

B: In Chicago. We used to live (we/have) an apartment on Lake Shore Drive.

Conversation 2

A: Did Satomi use to date (Satomi/date) Hiro?

B: No, she didn't, but they used to be (they/be) good friends.

Conversation 3

A: I didn't use to like (I/not/like) Kevin.

B: Yeah. He didn't use to be (he/not/be) nice to me, but now we are good friends.

E

The Habitual Past with *Used To*

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. We used to walk five miles to school.
 - 1b. One morning the bus didn't come, and we walked five miles to school.
 - 2a. Mary used to swim. Now she ice skates.
 - 2b. Mary swam every day. She enjoyed it very much.
1. Look at 1a and 1b. Which one refers to a repeated action in the past?
 2. Look at 2a and 2b. Which suggests that Mary's present situation is different from the past? Which doesn't suggest anything about Mary's present situation?

Meaning and Use Notes

Comparing the Past and the Present

- 1A** *Used to* suggests that a habit or situation was true in the past, but is not true now. Use *used to* for repeated (or habitual) actions or states that started and finished in the past. Do not use it for actions or states that happened only once. Adverbs of frequency and other time expressions with *used to* emphasize the repeated actions or states.

We often used to visit my grandparents during summer vacation. We don't anymore.

Did you use to travel a lot for work?

She **used to be** unfriendly. She never smiled.

This city **didn't use to have** a subway system in the old days.

- 1B** You can use the simple present with time expressions to say how a present situation is different from the past.

I often **used to watch** TV after school. Now I don't have time to do that.

In the 1930s people **used to get** their news from newspapers or the radio. These days most people get their news from TV or the Internet.

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B

 Listen to each statement. Choose the sentence that best follows it.

1. a. Now I'm married and have a son.
b. I enjoyed having a lot of people in the house.
2. a. We added two rooms last year.
b. Now there isn't enough room.
3. a. Now we don't talk to each other.
b. Now we see each other every day.
4. a. We always ate in restaurants together.
b. Now we eat out twice a week.
5. a. Now they don't want to go.
 b. They always complained about their teachers.
6. a. I always did everything myself.
b. We cleaned together every Saturday.
7. a. He always cries when he sees one.
 b. Now he's studying to be a vet.
8. a. But we changed our minds.
b. But we decided to have six.

E2 Comparing the Past and the Present

► Notes 1A, 1B

Work with a partner. Look at these facts about the past. How is the present different? Write two sentences for each fact. In the first, rewrite the fact using the correct form of *used to*. In the second, use the simple present with a time expression and the word or phrase in parentheses.

1. Few people had cars. (many)
In the past few people used to have cars. Now many people have cars.
2. Women didn't work outside the home. (have jobs)
3. Most people didn't go to college. (many)
Women didn't use to work outside. Now many women work outside.
4. Supermarkets didn't stay open late. (24 hours)
5. People didn't move away from their families. (live far away)
6. Most people got married very young. (many/in their thirties)

E3 Remembering Your Past

► Note 1A

Work with a partner. Talk about your past habits and routines. Use *used to* and other simple past verbs.

A: *I used to play basketball after school with my friends. We always had a lot of fun together, but we were extremely competitive.*

B: *I used to travel . . .*

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. A: Did you go to school yesterday?
B: _____
a. Yes, I go today.
b. No, I was sick. | 4. A: Julie finished law school last year.
B: _____
a. Is she still in school?
b. Did she enjoy it? |
| 2. A: I went to the soccer game last night.
B: _____
a. Who won?
b. Is it fun? | 5. A: It rained here last night.
B: Really? _____
a. It didn't rain here.
b. It isn't raining here. |
| 3. A: When I was young, I used to climb trees.
B: _____
a. Did you climb trees?
b. Did you ever fall out of one? | 6. A: She didn't use to live alone.
B: _____
a. Did she like living with other people?
b. Did she like living alone? |

F2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I used to graduate ^{graduated} from high school in 1997. | 6. Who give you a present? |
| 2. We didn't needed any help. | 7. When left he? |
| 3. Ana taked the cake to Miguel. | 8. You didn't answer my question. |
| 4. Where did they went? | 9. The test were on Saturday. |
| 5. He failed his driving test three times! | 10. What did happened here? |

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an English-language newspaper or on the Internet for news stories written in the simple past. Find three examples of regular verbs and three examples of irregular verbs. Bring them to class. When is the simple past used? Does the article include any forms of *used to*? If so, why? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about a famous person from the past.

1. Choose a famous person from the 1960s or another time in history. Do research in the library or on the Internet to find information about the person. Make notes about what you want to say.
2. Write a first draft. Use the simple past, *used to*, and time expressions where appropriate.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix the errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

Jackie Robinson was a great sports hero. He was the first African American in major-league baseball in the United States. African Americans didn't use to play professional baseball with white players. . . .



The Past Continuous and Past Time Clauses

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Galveston's Killer Hurricane	70
B. FORM 1: The Past Continuous	72
You were living there.	
C. MEANING AND USE 1: The Past Continuous	76
Actions in Progress in the Past	
Stative Verbs and the Past Continuous	
Beyond the Sentence: Introducing Background Information with the Past Continuous	79
D. FORM 2: Past Time Clauses	80
After the play ended, everyone clapped.	
I was eating dinner when the house collapsed.	
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Past Time Clauses	83
Simultaneous Events	
Interrupted Events	
Events in Sequence	
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	86

A

Galveston's Killer Hurricane

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you have bad storms where you live? Do they cause a lot of damage? What do people in your city or town do to prepare for bad weather?

A2 Read

 Read this excerpt from a history textbook to find out about how much damage occurred during the worst storm in U.S. history.

 Galveston's Killer Hurricane

The worst weather disaster in the history of the United States was a hurricane that hit the city of Galveston on September 8, 1900.

5 Galveston is on an island near the Texas coast. At that time it was the richest city in Texas, and about 38,000 people were living there.

On the morning of Tuesday, 10 September 6, 1900, the head of the Galveston weather station, Isaac Cline, received a telegram about a storm. It was moving north over Cuba and coming toward Galveston. Cline didn't worry when he got 15 the news. Galveston often had bad storms. However, by the next afternoon Cline became concerned. The wind was getting stronger, the ocean waves were getting larger, and the tide was much higher than normal.

On the morning of September 8, Cline began to tell people to leave the island. However, few people listened. Most of them just went to friends' and relatives' 20 houses away from the water. By 4:00 that afternoon, the storm was much worse.



Galveston before the hurricane

The tide was getting higher and higher when a four-foot wave went through the town. A twenty-foot wave followed it.

Cline was at his house with a lot of other people. While the storm was going on, he was making careful notes of the water's height around his house. Suddenly, a huge wave hit the house and it collapsed. Everyone went into the water. For the next three hours they floated on the waves. "While we were drifting," he later wrote, "we had to protect ourselves from pieces of wood and other objects that were flying around."



Galveston after the hurricane

After the storm ended, the city was in ruins. More than 7,000 people were dead. The storm also destroyed more than 3,600 buildings. As a result, the people of Galveston built a seawall. It was 3 miles long, 17 feet high, and 16 feet thick.

Today the people of Galveston depend on weather satellites and other technology to give them hurricane warnings, but they still talk about the great hurricane of 1900.

collapse: to suddenly fall down

concerned: worried

disaster: an event that causes a lot of damage

drift: to be carried along by moving water

satellite: a man-made object that travels around the Earth and sends back information

tide: the regular rise and fall of the level of the ocean

A3 After You Read

Answer these questions in your notebook.

1. What happened on September 8, 1900? *a hurricane hit the city of Galveston*
2. Where is Galveston? *on an island near the Texas coast*
3. What did most of the people of Galveston do before the storm hit? *They were asleep*
4. Why did Isaac Cline's house collapse? *a huge wave hit the house*
5. What did the people of Galveston do to protect themselves from other storms? *built a seawall*

B

The Past Continuous

can add could - modal auxil-

Examining Form

Look back at the excerpt on page 70 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. An example of the past continuous is underlined. Find four more examples.
2. How many words are necessary to form the past continuous? What two forms of the verb *be* are used? What ending is added to the base form of the verb?

auxiliary helping verb

base verb - main vb

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	WAS/WERE	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
I	was	living	there.
You	were		
He She It	was		
We	were		
You			
They			

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	WAS/WERE + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
I	was not wasn't	living	there.
You	were not weren't		
He She It	was not wasn't		
We	were not weren't		
You			
They			

Yes/No Questions			
WAS/WERE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
Were	you	living	there?
Was	he		
Were	they		

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	WAS	NO	SUBJECT	WAS/WERE + NOT
Yes,	I	was.	No,	I	wasn't.
	he			he	
	they			they	

Information Questions

WH- WORD	WAS/WERE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING
Who	were	you	watching?
What	was	she	
When	were	they	traveling?
Where			
Why			
How			

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	WAS/WERE		BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING
Who	was		leaving?
What			happening?

- See Appendix 3 for the spelling of verbs ending in *-ing*.

⚠ Do not use a subject pronoun when *who* or *what* is the subject of an information question.
What was happening?

*What was it happening? (INCORRECT)

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences. Choose the verb forms you hear.

- a. are living

b. were living

c. was living
- a. wasn't raining

b. was raining

c. isn't raining
- a. were leaving

b. weren't leaving

c. are leaving
- a. aren't going

b. were going

c. weren't going
- a. are ... going

b. were ... going

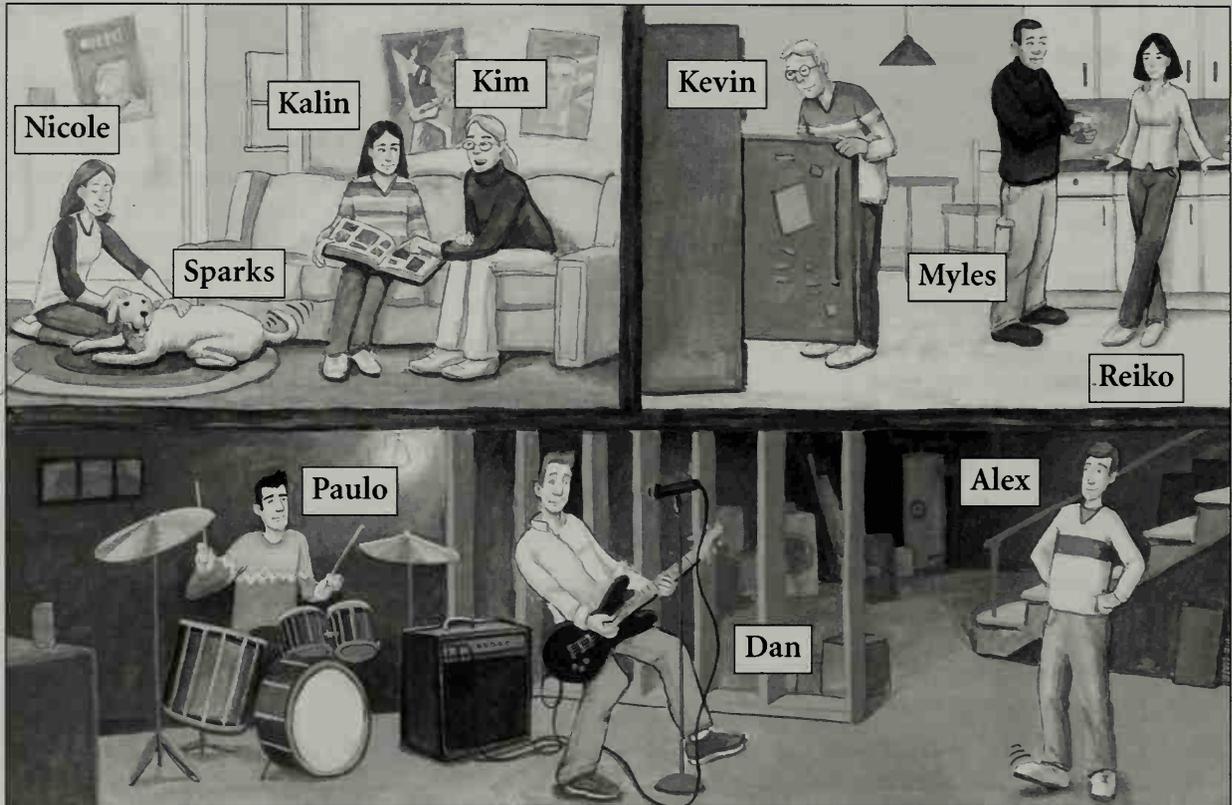
c. was ... going
- a. was ... crying

b. is ... crying

c. wasn't ... crying

B2 Forming Statements and Yes/No Questions in the Past Continuous

A. Look at the picture. Write sentences about what the people were doing at Kevin's house last night.



rug

What was Alex doing?

look for at

1. Paulo and Dan were playing music.
2. Alex was looking at the two guys
3. Myles and Reiko were talking to each other
4. Kevin was finding something in the fridge
5. Kalin and Kim were looking photos
6. Nicole and her dog, Sparks, were sitting on the floor

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering Yes/No questions about the people in the picture.

A: Was Paulo playing the guitar?
 B: No, he wasn't. He was playing the drums.

B3 Forming Information Questions in the Past Continuous

In your notebook, form information questions from these words and phrases. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. four o'clock/happening/what/was/yesterday afternoon/at

What was happening at four o'clock yesterday afternoon?

2. feeling/how/your/was/grandfather/last night

How was your grandfather feeling last night?

3. the/this morning/leading/meeting/who/was

Who was leading the meeting this morning?

4. was/what/Mr. Gonzalez/last semester/teaching

What was Mr. Gonzalez teaching last semester?

5. you/living/five years ago/were/where

Where were you living five years ago?

6. Dan and Ben/were/on Saturday/fighting/why

Why were Dan and Ben fighting on Saturday?

B4 Asking and Answering Information Questions in the Past Continuous

Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions with these time expressions and the past continuous.

1. two hours ago

A: What were you doing two hours ago?

B: I was making dinner.

2. at three o'clock yesterday afternoon

3. last night at midnight

4. at seven o'clock this morning

5. at six o'clock yesterday evening

6. ten minutes ago

B5 Building Past Continuous and Simple Past Sentences

Build as many logical sentences as you can in the past continuous or simple past. Use a word or phrase from each column. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

Past Continuous: *Carlos was sleeping.*

Simple Past: *Carlos had a cold.*

Carlos	was	sleeping
you	had	call
Ana and Rose	didn't	studying
	weren't	a cold
		early

C

The Past Continuous

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. This morning I walked the dog and then I took a shower.
- b. At seven o'clock this morning, I was walking the dog and my sister was taking a shower.

1. Which sentence shows two past activities in progress at the same time?
2. Which sentence shows two completed past activities?

Granny's = music goofy silly

Meaning and Use Notes

Activities in Progress in the Past

1A Use the past continuous to talk about activities that were in progress (happening) at a specific time in the past. This may be an exact moment in the past or a longer period of time in the past.

It **wasn't raining** at lunchtime. It **was snowing**.

You **were acting** strangely last night.

I **was studying** at Tokyo University in 2001.

1B The past continuous is often used to talk about several activities that were in progress at the same time.

At six o'clock she **was making** a phone call, and we **were eating** dinner.

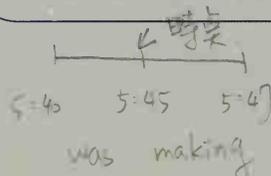
1C The past continuous expresses an ongoing past activity that may or may not be completed. In contrast, the simple past usually expresses a completed past activity.

Past Continuous

At 5:45 Greg **was making** dinner in the kitchen. (He was in the middle of making dinner.)

Simple Past

At 5:45 Greg was in the kitchen. He **made** dinner. Then he washed the dishes. (He completed dinner preparations.)



check p37

Stative Verbs and the Past Continuous

2A Many stative verbs are used in the simple past but not in the past continuous. Some of these verbs are *know, own, mean, seem, and understand*.

Simple Past

I **knew** all the answers.

*I was knowing all the answers. (INCORRECT)

They **owned** three cars in 1998.

*They were owning three cars in 1998. (INCORRECT)

2B Some stative verbs are used in the past continuous, but they are used as action verbs with a different meaning. Some of these verbs are *have, think, taste, and weigh*.

Simple Past

Did you **have** a car?

(Did you own a car?)

I **thought** it was a great idea.

(I believed it was a good idea.)

Past Continuous

We **were having** a good time at the party.

(We were experiencing a good time.)

I **was thinking** about Jenny recently.

(Jenny was in my thoughts.)

体验过程

正在想

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A-1C

Listen to each statement. Look at the ^{phrases} phrases in the chart. Is the speaker talking about an ongoing past activity or a completed past activity? Check (✓) the correct column.

		ONGOING	COMPLETED
1.	live in Japan		✓
2.	write a book	✓	
3.	paint the house	✓	
4.	fix the air conditioner		✓
5.	write a paper		✓
6.	take flying lessons	✓	

C2 Describing Activities in Progress at the Same Time

► Notes 1A-C

Think about a time when you arrived late for an event. In your notebook, write about what was happening when you arrived. Then read your description to the class.

I arrived at the soccer game late. My favorite team was winning. The crowd was standing and everyone was cheering. . . .

- A.** Complete these conversations with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Use the past continuous or the simple past where appropriate.

Conversation 1

Chris: Where were you during the summer of 1997?

Matt: I was traveling₁ (travel) around the United States.

Chris: How? By plane?

Matt: No, by car. I was owning₂ (own) a car then.

Conversation 2

Paul: Did₁ you know₂ (know) Takeshi before this year?

Eric: Not very well. I arrived₃ (arrive) at school in the middle of the year. Takeshi was taking₄ (take) several courses at that time, but we was not₅ (not/be) in the same classes.

Conversation 3

Josh: You missed₁ (miss) the turn! Now we're on the wrong road.

Amy: Oops. I'm sorry. I was not paying₂ (not/pay) attention. I was thinking₃ (think) about something else.

Conversation 4

Celia: I saw₁ (see) Susan at the library yesterday

Maria: What was₂ she doing₃ (do) there?

Celia: She was looking₄ (look) for information for her English project.

- B.** Practice the conversations in part A with a partner.

Unidentified
Flying
Object

Introducing Background Information with the Past Continuous

The past continuous and simple past often occur together in the same story. The past continuous is used at the beginning of a story to describe background activities that are happening at the same time as the main events of the story. The simple past is used for main events.

Yesterday was beautiful. The sun **was shining**, the birds **were singing**, and I **was walking** in a valley. Suddenly, a UFO landed on the ground. Three small green men appeared. They took my hand and said, "Come with us."

非持續發生の用 simple past

C4 Introducing Background Information with the Past Continuous

A. Work with a partner. Imagine that each sentence is the beginning of a story. Write two sentences in the past continuous to give background information.

- The beach ^{= beautiful} was gorgeous. The sun was shining on the water. The waves were moving quickly.
- The bank was full of customers. The teller was busy.
- The students were late to class. _____
- My boss was very angry. _____
- The cafeteria was crowded and noisy. _____
- The sky looked cloudy and dark. _____

B. Complete one of the story beginnings in part A. Use the past continuous to add more background information, and use the simple past for main events.

The beach was gorgeous. The sun was shining on the water. The waves were moving quickly. Suddenly, a swimmer yelled for help. A lifeguard dove into the water. . . .

D

Past Time Clauses

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. At that time, Galveston was the richest city in Texas.
- b. Cline didn't worry when he got the news.
- c. After the storm ended, the city was in ruins.

1. Underline the verbs. Which sentences have two verbs? *b.c*
2. Look at the sentences with two verbs. Each verb is part of a clause. There is a main clause and a past time clause. A past time clause begins with a word such as *before*, *when*, *while*, or *after*. Circle the past time clauses. *30*

1402/30

Sentences with Past Time Clauses				
	PAST TIME CLAUSE		MAIN CLAUSE	
	SUBJECT	VERB	SUBJECT	VERB
Before	the storm	hit,	everyone	was sleeping.
When	the house	collapsed,	I	was eating dinner.
While	I	was sleeping,	the phone	rang.
After	the play	ended,	everyone	clapped.

Position of Past Time Clauses	
PAST TIME CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
When the house collapsed,	I was eating dinner.
After the play ended,	everyone clapped.

MAIN CLAUSE	PAST TIME CLAUSE
I was eating dinner	when the house collapsed.
Everyone clapped	after the play ended.

Overview

- A clause is a group of words that has a subject and a verb.
- A main clause can stand alone as a complete sentence.
- A dependent clause cannot stand alone and must be used with a main clause.

Past Time Clauses

- Past time clauses are dependent clauses. They begin with words such as *before*, *when*, *while*, and *after*.
- The verbs in a past time clause and main clause can be in the simple past or in the past continuous.
- A past time clause can come before or after the main clause with no change in meaning. If the past time clause comes first, it is separated from the main clause by a comma.

↓
Before... , ...
... before ...

D1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences. Write the past time clauses you hear.

1. Some people left town before the storm began.
2. The weather forecaster warned us about the storm before it hit.
3. After we , the tornado hit the house.
4. When the storm began , we went into the basement.
5. The river overflowed when it started.
6. The sky was beautiful after the storm ended.

D2 Forming Sentences with Past Time Clauses

Match the clauses to make logical sentences. Pay attention to punctuation.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <u>f</u> 1. He went to bed | a. several people were still outside. |
| ___ 2. When the storm hit, | b. while I was waiting for the train. 37 |
| ___ 3. After we visited Chicago, 351 | c. he made a speech. |
| <u>h</u> 4. I made a phone call | d. when he was taking her picture. |
| ___ 5. Before Steve gave Alan the award, | e. we went to Cleveland. |
| g 6. She closed her eyes | f. before I came home. |

D3 Practicing Punctuation with Past Time Clauses

Read this paragraph. Underline the time clauses. Add commas where necessary.

A terrible storm hit last night while my friend
was staying at my house. All the lights went out when
lightning struck the house. While I was looking for
matches I tripped over a rug. I heard a knock on the
door. I went to the door and answered it. A strange
man was standing outside. He was wearing a hood.
The wind was blowing the trees back and forth while
the storm was raging. When I saw the stranger I
became nervous. Then, when he began to speak, I
recognized his voice. It was my friend's father.



D4 Changing the Position of Past Time Clauses

Change the order of the clauses in these sentences. Add or delete commas where necessary.

1. Alex saw Maria when he went to the laundromat.

When Alex went to the laundromat, he saw Maria.

2. While Reiko was swimming, she got a cramp in her leg.

Reiko got a cramp in her leg while she was swimming.

3. When my sister woke up this morning, she ate pizza for breakfast.

My sister ate pizza for breakfast when she woke up this morning.

4. It started to rain while I was driving to work.

While I was driving to work, it started to rain.

5. Eva became a ballet dancer after she finished high school.

E

Past Time Clauses

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them. *interrupt 打断*

- I was taking a nap when the mailman knocked on the door.
 - I put on suntan lotion before I went to the beach.
 - We were playing soccer while Josh was studying for an exam.
- Which sentence shows that two events were happening at exactly the same time? *C*
 - Which sentence shows that one event interrupted the other? *A*
 - Which sentence shows that one event happened after the other?

Meaning and Use Notes

Simultaneous Events

- 1 Sentences with past time clauses describe the order in which two past events occurred. When the verbs in both the time clause and the main clause are in the past continuous, the events were ^{/sɪmˈtɛnɪəs/} simultaneous (happening at exactly the same time). *When* or *while* introduces the time clause. *→ 同时发生的 adj*

Past Continuous

Past Continuous

When I was sleeping, the children were watching TV.

I was sleeping

while the children were watching TV.

Interrupted Events

- 2 When one verb is in the simple past and the other is in the past continuous, it shows that one event interrupted the other. The event in the past continuous started first and was interrupted by the simple past event. *When* or *while* begins the time clause, which uses the past continuous.

Past Continuous (First Event)

Simple Past (Second Event)

When I was sleeping,

the telephone rang.

While I was sleeping,

the telephone rang.

(Continued on page 84)

Events in Sequence

- 3 When the verbs in both the time clause and the main clause are in the simple past, one event happened after the other (in sequence). *Before, when, or after* introduces the time clause and indicates the order of events.

Simple Past (First Event)

I walked past my sister

When the phone rang,

After he gave me the diploma,

Simple Past (Second Event)

before I recognized her.

I answered it.

I shook his hand.

同时发生

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-3

 Listen to each conversation. Is the second speaker talking about simultaneous events, an interrupted event, or events in sequence? Check (✓) the correct column.

	SIMULTANEOUS <i>同时发生</i>	INTERRUPTED <i>中断</i>	IN SEQUENCE <i>顺序</i>
1.	<i>同时发生</i>	✓	
2.	✓		
3.			✓
4.		✓	
5.	✓		
6.			✓

同时发生 / 顺序

E2 Understanding Time Clauses

► Notes 2, 3

Work with a partner. Discuss why these sentences are not logical. Then change the time clause in each sentence to make it logical.

1. Before Carlos threw the ball, I caught it.

A: Sentence 1 isn't logical. You can't catch a ball before someone throws it.

B: It should be "After Carlos threw the ball, I caught it."

2. While Ben found his car keys, he drove away.

3. When the sun came up, it was very dark.

4. Everyone danced before the band started to play.

5. After we went swimming, they filled the pool with water.

E3 Writing About Events in Sequence

► Note 3

Read each situation. Then complete each sentence with a clause in the simple past.

1. Silvio and Maria bought a new house last month.

Before they bought the house, they saved a lot of money.

When they saw the house for the first time, they like it very much.

After they moved in, they felt more happy.

2. Megan went to a great party last night.

Before she went to the party, she bought the dress.

When she arrived at the party, _____

After she left the party, _____

3. Paul traveled to Europe last summer for his vacation.

Before _____

When _____

After _____

E4 Expressing Simultaneous, Interrupted, and Sequential Events

► Notes 1-3

Complete the time clauses. Use the simple past or the past continuous.

1. Donna and I made dinner together last night. While Donna was

chopping the vegetables, I was baking a cake for dessert.

2. We were watching the movie when the phone rang.

3. I'm sorry I didn't answer the phone this morning. It rang while _____

I was showering with fresh jeans.

4. Last night while I was watching TV, _____

5. At first Lauren wasn't a good student. After _____

_____, her grades improved.

6. Why did you leave the party so early? We had a great time! After you left,

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read each sentence and answer the questions that follow with *Yes*, *No*, or *It's not clear*. Then discuss your answers with a partner.

1. We ran out of the building when the fire alarm started to ring.

Yes a. Were they in the building before the fire alarm started to ring?

No b. After the fire alarm rang, did they stay in the building for a long time?

2. Lynn was sleeping while Holly was cleaning the house.

No a. Did Lynn help Holly clean the house?

Yes b. Did Lynn fall asleep before Holly started cleaning the house?

3. Lisa saw Jake this morning. He was walking down the street with his dog.

No a. Did Lisa walk down the street with Jake?

Yes b. Did Jake continue walking after Lisa saw him?

4. Gina was afraid. It was raining very hard, and the wind was blowing.

Yes a. Did the wind and the rain make Gina afraid? *because 就是直接*

Yes b. Was Gina afraid before the storm started?

5. Jake was working on the roof when he fell off.

No a. Did he hurt himself badly?

Yes b. Did he work after he fell?

6. When he left the house, he wasn't carrying his umbrella.

No a. Did he take his umbrella with him?

No b. Was it raining when he left the house?

7. The fire started after we left the building.

no a. Were we in danger?

not b. Did we start the fire?

8. She was unlocking the door when she heard a loud noise.

no a. Did she hear the noise before she unlocked the door?

no b. Did she hear the noise at the same time as she was unlocking the door?

9. Don was waiting in the car while Helen was arguing with the store manager.

no a. Did Don go into the store?

not door b. Did Don and Helen both argue with the manager?

10. Mike left before the end of the game.

no a. Did Mike see the end of the game?

yes b. Did the game end after Mike left?

F2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. I feel terrible. I ~~was breaking~~^{broke} my favorite necklace when I put it on this morning.

2. I'm so sorry about your mug. I was dropping it.

3. They were ~~owning~~^{owned} a house before they had children.

4. It ~~snowing~~^{was} when we went to school.

5. While we were shopping, they were cleaning the house.

6. After he was ~~throwing~~^{threw} the ball, it hit the window.

7. What did he say to you while you ~~watched~~^{were watching} the movie?

8. Where were you going when I was ~~seeing~~^{saw} you yesterday?

9. She was reading ~~after~~^{when} she fell asleep.

10. He hit his head when he had the car accident.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an article in an English-language newspaper or on the Internet for examples of the past continuous and past time clauses. Write down three examples of each and bring them to class. Why was the past continuous used? Why was the simple past used? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about a hurricane, flood, or other natural disaster.

1. Do research in the library or on the Internet about a natural disaster. Take notes. Use these questions to help you.
 - What, if anything, did people do to prepare for the disaster?
 - What did they do when the disaster struck?
 - What damage occurred during the disaster?
 - What happened after the disaster?
2. Write a first draft. Use the simple past, the past continuous, and past time clauses where appropriate.
3. Reread your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

A terrible earthquake hit my country last year. When it hit, people were working at their jobs and children were studying at school. It seemed like a normal day. . . .

The Present Perfect

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Tales of a World Traveler	90
B. FORM: The Present Perfect	92
She has traveled to Paris.	
Informally Speaking: Reduced Forms of <i>Have</i> and <i>Has</i>	95
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Continuing Time Up to Now	97
Continuing Time Up to Now	
<i>For</i> and <i>Since</i>	
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Indefinite Past Time	100
Indefinite Past Time	
Using <i>Ever</i> with Indefinite Past Time	
Vocabulary Notes: More Adverbs with the Present Perfect	104
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	106

A

Tales of a World Traveler

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you like to travel? What are some good and bad things about traveling? Name some countries you have visited. Where else do you want to go?

A2 Read

 Read this magazine article to find out about world traveler John Clouse.

Tales of a World Traveler

According to *Guinness World Records*[™], John Clouse has visited more places than anyone else in the world. He has been to 192 countries and almost all of the world's territories. In his travels, he has crossed the Atlantic Ocean at least 100 times and the Pacific Ocean 40 or 50 times. In addition to holding the *Guinness* world record for travel, Clouse is also the most-traveled member of the Travelers' Century Club. All of the members of this club have traveled to at least 100 countries.

All of this traveling has cost John Clouse a lot of money. So far he has spent about \$1.25 million. It has also taken a long time. Clouse started traveling 40 years ago.



Has John Clouse stopped traveling? No, he hasn't. He has continued his journeys. There are three places that he hasn't visited yet: the Paracel Islands in the South China Sea; Clipperton, a French island about 700 miles west of Acapulco, Mexico; and Bouvet Island, near Antarctica.

Some of Clouse's journeys have been difficult. For example, while trying to reach Danger Island in the Pacific, he almost had to turn back just a few yards from the shore because the waves were too high. The real problem was that he doesn't know how to

swim, so another man had to carry him on his back!

Clouse has never publicly stated his favorite country. He doesn't like to list favorites, but he has said that Kenya and Tanzania in Africa are both beautiful. What place has Clouse visited the most? Paris. He's been there 35 times. Does Clouse feel proud of his world record? Not at all. In fact, he realizes that it's all a bit ridiculous. "Wanderlust is a sickness that I got from my father. After all, if you've seen one atoll, you've seen them all," he says with a smile.

Adapted from *The Christian Science Monitor*

you have

atoll: a very small island made of coral
journey: a trip
ridiculous: very silly, foolish

tale: a story
territory: an area of land that belongs to a country
wanderlust: a strong desire to travel

A3 After You Read

A. Circle the places that John Clouse has *not* visited.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| Bouvet Island | Danger Island | the Paracel Islands |
| Clipperton | Kenya | Tanzania |

B. Match each number with the correct description.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| <u> e </u> 1. 100 | a. the number of times Clouse has visited Paris |
| ___ 2. 1.25 million | b. the number of countries Clouse has visited |
| ___ 3. 35 | c. the number of dollars Clouse has spent on travel |
| ___ 4. 192 | d. the number of times Clouse has crossed the Pacific Ocean |
| ___ 5. 40 or 50 | e. the smallest number of countries each person in the Travelers' Century Club has visited |

B

The Present Perfect

Examining Form

Look at the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. He has crossed the Atlantic many times. 2a. They flew to Paris last night.
 1b. He crossed the Atlantic in 1999. 2b. They have flown to Paris many times.
- Which two sentences are in the simple past? Which two sentences are in the present perfect? How many words are necessary to form the present perfect?
 - Underline the verb forms that follow *has* and *have*. These are past participles. Which form resembles the simple past? Which form is irregular?
 - Look back at the article on page 90. Find five examples of the present perfect.

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	PAST PARTICIPLE	
I	have	traveled flown	to Paris.
You			
He She It	has		
We	have		
You			
They			

Negative Statements

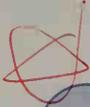
SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	NOT	PAST PARTICIPLE	
I	have	not	traveled flown	to Paris.
You				
He She It	has			
We	have			
You				
They				

CONTRACTIONS

I've	traveled	to Paris.
She's		
They've		

CONTRACTIONS

I	haven't	traveled	to Paris.
She	hasn't		
They	haven't		



Yes/No Questions

HAVE/HAS	SUBJECT	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Have	you	traveled flown	to Paris?
Has	it		
Have	they		

Short Answers

YES	SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS	NO	SUBJECT	HAVE/HAS + NOT
Yes,	I	have.	No,	I	haven't.
	he	has.		he	hasn't.
	they	have.		they	haven't.

Information Questions

WH- WORD	HAVE/HAS	SUBJECT	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Who	have	you	seen?	
What				
Why	has	she	been	in the hospital?
How long	have	they		

Are you eating?
 Were you eating?
 Have you eaten?
 I have eaten.

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	HAS		PAST PARTICIPLE	
Who	has		traveled	to Paris?
What			happened?	

- The past participle of a regular verb has the same form as the simple past (verb + *-d/-ed*). See Appendices 4 and 5 for the spelling and pronunciation of verbs ending in *-ed*.
- Irregular verbs have special past participle forms. See Appendix 6 for a list of irregular verbs and their past participles.
- ⚠ Do not confuse the contraction of *is* with the contraction of *has* in the present perfect.
 - He's **traveling** a lot = He is traveling a lot.
 - He's **traveled** a lot = He has traveled a lot.
- See Appendix 16 for more contractions with *have*.
- ⚠ Do not use a subject pronoun in information questions when the *wh-* word is the subject.
 - What** has happened?
 - *What has it happened? (INCORRECT)

B1 Listening for Form

 Listen to these sentences. Write the present perfect verb forms you hear. You will hear both contracted and full forms.

1. I have worked here for three years.
2. We have seen Yuji since August.
3. I'm sorry. Mr. O'Neill has left for the day.
4. Our class hasn't taken the exam yet.
5. It has rained every day this week!
6. Don't leave yet. You haven't eaten your breakfast.

B2 Working on Irregular Past Verb Forms

Complete the chart. See Appendix 6 if you need help.

	BASE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
1.	know	knew	known
2.	get	got	given
3.	take	took	taken
4.	buy	bought	bought
5.	leave	left	left
6.	cost	cost	cost
7.	show	showed	shown
8.	be	was	been
9.	go	went	gone
10.	eat	ate	aten
11.	make	made	made
12.	do	did	done
13.	see	saw	seen
14.	think	thought	thought
15.	grow	grew	grown
16.	spend	spent	spent

Informally Speaking

Reduced Forms of *Have* and *Has*

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How is the underlined form in the cartoon different from what you hear?



We often reduce *have* and *has* with names and other nouns in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM	WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR
Mark has changed.	"/marks/ changed."
The cities have grown.	"The /'sɪtɪzəv/ grown."

We also often reduce *have* and *has* with *wh-* words in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM	WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR
Why has he left?	"/waɪz/ he left?"
Where have you been?	"/'wɛrəv/ you been?"

B3 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen and complete these sentences with the standard form of the words you hear.

- John has been here for a long time.
- Kedra and Rick _____ the movie already.
- Paul _____ a new racing bicycle.
- The guests _____ home.
- The police _____ the thief.
- Where _____ she _____?
- Fresno _____ bigger since the 1930s.
- Why _____ it _____ so long?

policeman 警察
 policemen 警察
 policewoman 女警察
 policewomen 女警察
 officer(s) 警官

COP 警察 (非常不礼貌)

B4 Completing Conversations with the Present Perfect

- A. Complete these conversations with the words in parentheses and the present perfect. Use contractions where possible.

Conversation 1

Silvio: How long have₁ you lived₂ (live) here?

Victor: Five years. Have₃ you been₄ (be) here long?

Silvio: No, I haven't₅ we (not). I have₆ only been₇ (be) here for six months.

Conversation 2

Gina: Hi, Julie. I haven't₁ seen (not/see) you for a long time.

Julie: Hi, Gina. I think it has₂ been (be) almost three years since we last met. How is₃ your family going₄ (be)?

Gina: Oh, there has₅ (be) a lot of changes. My older brother, Chris, has₆ (get) married, and Tony and his wife, Marta, have₇ (have) two children.

- B. Practice the conversations in part A with a partner.

B5 Building Sentences

- A. Build eight logical sentences: four in the present perfect and four in the simple past. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

Present Perfect: *She has been a good friend.* Simple Past: *She went to a restaurant.*

she	have	been	for a long time
they	has	waited	to a restaurant
		learned	a good friend
		went	English

- B. Rewrite your sentences as negative statements.

I lived in Tennessee for 32 years.
 I have lived in State College for two years.
 1972 start 2004 today Finish
 2001 today

MEANING AND USE 1

C Continuing Time Up to Now

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Hiro has lived in New York since 1989.
- 2a. Rosa has been a teacher for ten years.
- 1b. Hiro lived in Chicago for three years.
- 2b. Rosa was a nurse for one year.

1. Which sentences show situations that began and ended in the past? Which show situations that began in the past and have continued up to the present time?
2. Which sentences use the present perfect? Which use the simple past?

Meaning and Use Notes

Continuing Time Up to Now

- 1 The present perfect connects the past with the present. Use the present perfect for actions or states that began in the past and have continued up to the present time. These actions or states may continue into the future.

He's worked here for five years. She's lived in the same town since 2001.
amount of time. *beginning time*

For and Since

Sentences expressing continuing time up to now often use *for* and *since*.

- 2A *For* + a length of time tells how long an action or state has continued up to the present time.

I've worked here for a long time. I've lived here for ten years.

- 2B *Since* + a point in time tells when an action or state began.

I've worked here since 2000. I've been here since Tuesday.

Since can also introduce a time clause. When it does, the verb in the time clause is usually in the simple past.

I've lived here since I was 20. I've worked here since I left home.

I've taught English for 18 years.
 since 1988
 since I was 21 years old.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 1

 Listen to each sentence. Is the speaker talking about a past situation that continues to the present, or a situation that began and ended in the past? Check (✓) the correct column.

	PAST SITUATION THAT CONTINUES TO THE PRESENT	SITUATION THAT BEGAN AND ENDED IN PAST
1.	✓	
2.	✓	
3.	✓	
4.		✓
5.	✓	
6.	✓	
7.		✓
8.	✓	

C2 Contrasting For and Since

► Note 2

A. Complete these sentences with *for* or *since*.

- Alex has climbed mountains since he was 15 years' old.
- They've been out of town since Saturday.
- My boss has been in a meeting for a long time.
- He has worked in Brazil since last September.
- That restaurant has been closed for a week now.
- I've known Matt since we were in high school.
- They've studied French for a few months.
- Lisa has lived in New York for ten years.
- Keiko has liked Takeshi since she met him.
- We've been here for half an hour.

no beverb
 You speaks as fluently as
 { she
 she does
 her

She has more friends than I.
 me.
 I do.

B. Use these words and phrases to write sentences. Use the present perfect with *for* or *since*.

1. Sue/live/Rome/1999

Sue has lived in Rome since 1999.

2. Betty/work/at Happy Systems/ten years

Betty has worked at Happy Systems for ten years.

3. Paul/study/French/two semesters

Paul has studied French for two semesters.

4. I/be married/to Kalin/last August

I have been married to Kalin since last August.

5. Liz and Sara/know/Celia/many years

Liz and Sara have known Celia for many years.

C3 Talking About How Long

► Notes 1, 2

A. Work with a partner. Look at the timeline. Use the phrases below and the present perfect to ask and answer questions about Gary's life. Use contractions where possible.

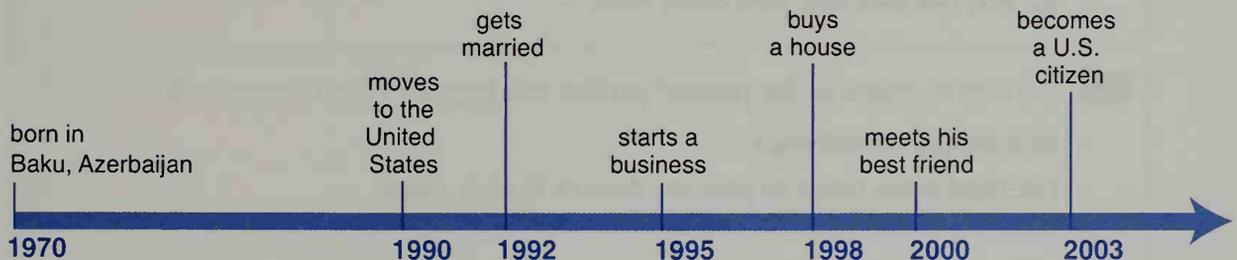
be a U.S. citizen
be married

have a business
know his best friend

live in the U.S.
own a house

A: *How long has he been a U.S. citizen?*

B: *He's been a U.S. citizen since 2003.* OR *He's been a U.S. citizen for . . . years.*



B. Make a list of questions about your partner's life. Use the present perfect with *for* and *since*. Take turns asking and answering each other's questions. Use contractions where possible.

A: *How long have you studied English?*

B: *I've studied English for five years.*

B: *How long have you lived in this city?*

A: *I've lived here since 2002.*

D Indefinite Past Time

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. I've flown in an airplane.
 1b. I flew to Rome last month.
- 2a. There have been many car accidents on this road.
 2b. There was an accident here yesterday.
- Which sentences talk about an indefinite (not exact) time in the past? Which form of the verb is used in these sentences?
 - Which sentences mention a definite (exact) time in the past? Which form of the verb is used in these sentences?

Meaning and Use Notes

Indefinite Past Time

- 1A** Use the present perfect to talk about actions or states that happened at an indefinite (not exact) time in the past.

A: Have you met Bob?

B: Yes, I've met him. He's really nice.

- 1B** Actions or states in the present perfect can happen once or repeatedly.

He's visited Hawaii once.

I've tried three times to pass my driver's license exam.

- 1C** Do not use the present perfect with time expressions that express a definite (exact) time in the past. When you mention the definite time an event happened, use the simple past.

I **went** to Europe in 1999.

*I've gone to Europe in 1999. (INCORRECT)

Using *Ever* with Indefinite Past Time

- 2 The adverb *ever* means “at any time.” Use *ever* in present perfect questions to ask if an action took place at any time in the past.

A: **Have you ever seen** a ghost?

B: Yes, I have. OR

No, I haven't.

! We usually do not use *ever* in present perfect affirmative statements.

I **have seen** a ghost.

* I have ever seen a ghost. (INCORRECT)

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1C

 Listen to each sentence. Does it refer to a definite time in the past or an indefinite time in the past? Check (✓) the correct column.

	DEFINITE TIME IN THE PAST	INDEFINITE TIME IN THE PAST
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

D2 Contrasting Definite and Indefinite Past Time

A. Each of these situations begins with a sentence about the indefinite past. Complete the second sentence with an example expressing the definite past.

1. I've met a lot of famous people. For example, last year I ^{met} spoke to
Madonna in an elevator at the Plaza Hotel.

2. I've met some interesting people since I moved here. For example, this year
I _____

3. My friend has done a lot of crazy things. Last month _____

4. My parents have helped me a lot. When I was younger, they _____

5. I had a difficult professor a while ago. For example, once _____

B. Now write sentences about an indefinite time in the past. Use the present perfect to introduce each situation.

1. My parents have traveled a lot. Last summer they went to California and Oregon, and they visited Florida and Arizona in October.

2. _____. He worked in a restaurant for one year, he sold cars for six months, and he worked as a bank teller for only one month!

3. _____. She danced in a Broadway musical last December, and she sang in another show in Chicago this year.

4. _____. This morning I cleaned the house, washed the clothes, and even worked in the garden!

5. _____. They lived in Venezuela for two years, they stayed in Mexico for six months, they lived in Seattle for one year, and now they live in Tucson, Arizona.

tuition
= naked
= nude
= no clothes
He crashed
wrecked
his car.
He had a
accident.

I have
very busy.

D3 Asking Questions About Indefinite Past Time

► Notes 1A, 2

Write two *Yes/No* questions for each of these situations. Use the present perfect.

1. Your friends have traveled a lot. You want to find out about their trips.

Have you ever been to Egypt? Have you seen the pyramids?

2. You are thinking about buying a used car. You meet a woman who is trying to sell her car.

3. You want to hire a babysitter. You are interviewing a teenager for the job.

4. You are looking for a new roommate. Someone comes to see your apartment.

5. Your friend, Lee, has moved to a new town. You want to find out about his experiences. *經驗 建議*

D4 Describing Progress

► Notes 1A, 1B

Paul has made a list of things to do before he moves to his new apartment. Look at the list and make statements about his progress so far.

He's called the moving company.

He hasn't vacuumed the apartment.



TO DO

- has ✓ called
- has ✓ Call the moving company
- has ✗ Vacuum apartment
- ✓ Disconnect telephone
- ✗ Pack all clothes
- has ✗ Throw away trash
- has ✗ Contact the post office
- ✓ Call mom and give her new address
- has ✗ Clean oven
- has ✗ Leave key with superintendent

You cannot use double / triple negatives.

She has not smoked. = She has never smoked <語意相同>

Vocabulary Notes

More Adverbs with the Present Perfect

Never means "not ever" or "not at any time." We can use *never* instead of *not* in negative statements. Do not use *never* with *not*. *Never* comes before the past participle.

She has **never** been to Greece.

Already means "at some time before now." Use *already* with questions and affirmative statements. It comes before the past participle or at the end of a sentence.

← already now

She has **already** left. Have they **already** eaten? What has he **already** done?

She has left **already**. Have they eaten **already**? What has he done **already**?

Yet means "up to now." Use *yet* with negative statements and *Yes/No* questions. It comes at the end of a sentence.

They haven't arrived **yet**. Have you met him **yet**?

Still also means "up to now." It has a similar meaning to *yet*, but with the present perfect is used only in negative statements. It comes before *have* or *has*.

She **still** hasn't called. (= She hasn't called yet.)

So far means "at any time up to now." Use *so far* in affirmative and negative statements and in questions. It comes at the beginning or end of a sentence.

So far he's spent \$500. How much money have you spent **so far**?

So far I haven't had a good time. Have you had a good time **so far**?

D5 Using Adverbs with the Present Perfect

A. Rewrite these sentences. Place the word or words in parentheses in an appropriate position in each sentence. Use contractions where possible.

Conversation 1

A: Have you asked Sara to help you (yet)?

Have you asked Sara to help you yet?

B: No, I haven't asked her (still).

No, I still haven't asked her.

Conversation 2

A: Have you played golf (ever)?

Have you ever played golf?

B: No, I've played golf (never).

No, I've never played golf.

Conversation 3

A: Has she bought the tickets (yet)?

_____ already _____
1

B: No. She's made the reservations (already), but I don't think that she has paid for the tickets (yet).

_____ _____
2

Conversation 4

A: How's the fund drive going? Have you raised any money (yet)?

_____ _____
1

B: Yes. We've raised \$2,000 (so far). We haven't finished (still).

_____ _____
2

Conversation 5

A: Has Rick left (yet)?

_____ _____
1

B: Yes, he has left (already).

_____ _____
2

Conversation 6

A: Have you made any friends at school (yet)?

_____ _____
1

B: No, I've been too busy (so far).

_____ _____
2

B. Practice the conversations in part A with a partner.

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: He visited Sweden four years ago.

B: _____

- a. Where is he staying?
- b. Did he have a good time?

2. A: Emily has worked for the school for a long time.

B: _____

- a. Is she going to retire soon?
- b. Why did she leave?

3. A: I've already cooked dinner.

B: _____

- a. Can I help you?
- b. What did you cook?

4. A: It has rained only once this month.

B: _____

- a. Does it usually rain more?
- b. Has it rained a lot?

5. A: We've been here for half an hour, and a waiter still hasn't come to our table.

B: _____

- a. I'm sorry. I'll try to find your waiter.
- b. How long have you been here?

6. A: I haven't been to Europe yet.

B: _____

- a. Do you want to go sometime?
- b. When did you go?

7. A: Have you ever flown a plane?

B: _____

- a. No, I didn't.
- b. No, not yet.

8. A: So far I've spent \$100 on course books.

B: _____

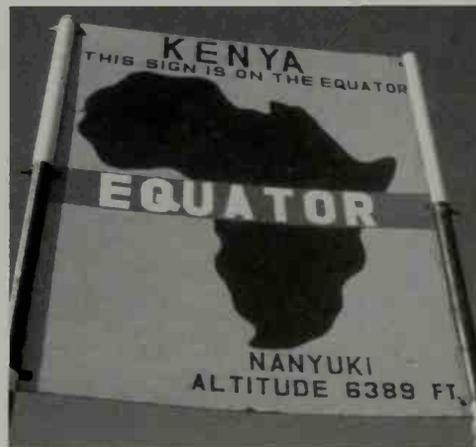
- a. Do you think you'll need to buy more?
- b. You're lucky you don't need any more.

Not finish yet

E2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them. Use the simple present, the simple past, and the present perfect.

Rita and Bob ~~have been~~^{are} the most-traveled people I know. They went almost everywhere. Rita ~~has been~~^{is} a photographer, and Bob has been a travel writer, so they often travel for work. They ~~been~~ to many countries, such as Nepal and India. They have also travel to Turkey, Greece, and Bulgaria. They ~~have see~~ some places yet, though. For example, they still haven't visited New Zealand. This year they've been already away from home a total of three months, and it has been only June. In January Rita has gone to Kenya while Bob has toured Indonesia. Then they both have traveled to Argentina and Norway. Right now they're at home. They ~~were~~ here for two weeks already. Two weeks at home is like a vacation for Rita and Bob.



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an English-language encyclopedia or on the Internet for information about someone's life. Choose a person who is still alive. What has he or she done or accomplished? Find three sentences in the present perfect and bring them to class. Why is the present perfect used instead of the simple past? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about someone you admire.

1. Write about someone who is still alive. Think about your subject and make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you.
 - Who do you admire?
 - What has the person done? For example, has he or she worked somewhere special or helped other people?
 - Where has the person lived and worked?
 - How has the person influenced you?
2. Write a first draft. Use the present perfect, simple past, and simple present where appropriate.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

I admire my Uncle Tomás. He is a doctor. He has worked with poor people since he graduated from college twenty years ago. . . .

The Future

PART

3

3

The Future

The future is a concept that has fascinated humanity for centuries. It is a time when the unknown meets the known, where dreams are often born. In the past, the future was often depicted as a distant, almost mythical land. However, with the advancement of science and technology, the future has become a more tangible and immediate reality.

One of the most significant aspects of the future is the role of technology. From the simple tools of the past to the sophisticated machines of today, technology has always been a driving force in human progress. In the future, we can expect even greater innovations, such as artificial intelligence, space exploration, and advanced medical treatments. These technologies will not only change the way we live but also the way we think and feel.

Another key element of the future is the environment. As the world's population grows and the demand for resources increases, the environment will become a central focus. We will need to find sustainable ways to produce energy, manage water, and protect our planet. The future will be a test of our ability to live in harmony with nature.

Finally, the future is also a time of social and cultural change. As societies evolve, new values and norms will emerge. We will need to find ways to bridge the gaps between different cultures and nations, creating a more unified and peaceful world. The future is not just a time of technological and environmental challenges, but also a time of human growth and development.

Future Time: *Be Going To, Will, and the Present Continuous*

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Election	112
B. FORM 1: The Future with <i>Be Going To</i> and the Present Continuous	114
THE FUTURE WITH <i>BE GOING TO</i> He is going to help later.	
THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS AS FUTURE She is helping later.	
Informally Speaking: Reduced Form of <i>Going To</i>	118
C. MEANING AND USE 1: <i>Be Going To</i> and the Present Continuous as Future	119
Intentions and Plans with <i>Be Going To</i> and the Present Continuous	
Predictions with <i>Be Going To</i>	
Vocabulary Notes: Future Time Expressions	122
D. FORM 2: The Future with <i>Will</i>	125
She will leave tomorrow.	
Informally Speaking: Reduced Form of <i>Will</i>	129
E. MEANING AND USE 2: <i>Will</i> vs. <i>Be Going To</i>	130
Predictions with <i>Will</i> and <i>Be Going To</i>	
Quick Decisions vs. Advance Plans	
Promises with <i>Will</i>	
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	134

A

The Election

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Are you interested in politics? Do you vote? Why or why not?

A2 Read

 Read this feature article from a local newspaper to find out about four people's opinions of candidates in an election for governor.

THE ELECTION

With the election for governor just a week away, our *Public View* reporter asked people at Westlake Mall the following question: Who are you going to vote for and why?



I'm voting for Greta Monroe. She's the best
5 candidate. She's honest, hardworking, and intelligent. Just think, we are going to have
our first woman

10 governor! I am sure that she'll do a great job. For one thing, she's fair. She wants to help poor people, but she isn't going to
raise taxes for the rest of us. She's also very interested in education, and that's
15 important to me.

Diane Marshall, 67
retired teacher



I'm not voting. I used to vote in every election and nothing
changed. I'm not going
20 to waste my time anymore. In fact, I am leaving
for Chicago

the day before the election, so I'm not even
going to be here. Besides, I'm sure
25 Overmeyer is going to win. He's not a politician; he's a businessman. He started his own company and now it's one of the state's largest employers. All the business people will vote for him. The others don't
30 have a chance.

Richard Chen, 26
accountant

mayor m...
35



I'm undecided. I'm not voting for Monroe, that's for sure. So I still have to decide between either

35 Overmeyer or Kelly.

Overmeyer has made a lot of promises, but will

he keep them? He says that he is going to help bring jobs to the state. But how is he going to

40 do that? And what kind of jobs will they be?

Are they going to be jobs for skilled workers at good salaries, or will they be minimum wage jobs for teenagers? And Kelly? Well, I'm not sure about him, either. He's done a good

45 job as mayor, but running a state is a lot more difficult than running a city.

Steve Corum, 38
unemployed mechanic



I'm new here and I don't know enough about the candidates

50 to make a decision.

People say that Kelly will probably raise taxes, Monroe won't

be able to do the job, and Overmeyer will

55 only help businesses. I've received a lot of information in the mail about all three. I'm going to sit down this weekend and read it.

I hope I can make a decision after that.

Marcy Willis, 28
chef

governor: the head of a state government

candidate: a person who people can vote for in an election

running: managing, directing

mayor: the head of a city government

skilled: trained

minimum wage: the lowest amount an employer can pay a worker for an hour's work

A3 After You Read

Look at the questions in the chart. Check (✓) the correct column.

	WHICH CANDIDATE . . .	MONROE	OVERMEYER	KELLY
1.	isn't going to raise taxes?	✓		
2.	is a woman?			
3.	runs a large company?			
4.	promises to bring jobs to the state?			
5.	is a mayor?			
6.	wants to raise taxes?			

B

The Future with *Be Going To* and the Present Continuous

Examining Form

Look back at the article on page 112 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. An example of *be going to* + verb is underlined. Find three more affirmative examples.
2. What form of *be going to* is used with *we*? with *he*? with *I*?
3. An example of the present continuous as future (*be* + verb + *-ing*) is circled. Find one more affirmative example.

I will travel ...
He will travel ...
 原型动词

THE FUTURE WITH *BE GOING TO*

Affirmative Statements				
SUBJECT	BE	GOING TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	am	going to <i>= /gonna/</i>	help	later.
You	are			
He She It	is			
We	are			
You				
They				

Negative Statements				
SUBJECT	BE	NOT	GOING TO	BASE FORM OF VERB
I	am	not	going to	help
You	are			
He She It	is			
We	are			
You				
They				

Yes/No Questions				
BE	SUBJECT	GOING TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Are	you	going to	help	later?
Is	she			
Are	they			

Short Answers				
YES	SUBJECT	BE	NO	SUBJECT + BE + NOT
Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm not.
	she	is.		she isn't.
	they	are.		they aren't.

Information Questions

WH- WORD	BE	SUBJECT	GOING TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	are	you	going to	call	later?
What	is	she		do	tomorrow?
When	are	they		study	at the library?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	BE		GOING TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	is		going to	win	the election?
What				happen	next?

(選挙) 選挙 = vote

- See Appendix 16 for contractions with *be*.

⚠ Do not use contractions with affirmative short answers.

Yes, I am. *Yes, I'm. (INCORRECT)

THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS AS FUTURE

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	BE	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
She	is	helping	later.

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	BE	NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
She	is	not	helping	later.

Yes/No Questions

BE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
Are	they	helping	later?

Information Questions

WH- WORD	BE	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB + -ING	
When	are	they	helping?	later?

- See Chapter 3 for more information on the present continuous.

B1 Listening for Form

A.  Listen to these sentences. Write the subjects and future verb forms you hear.

1. She's going to start school next year.
2. _____ home tonight. The airline canceled our flight.
3. Where _____ tonight?
4. Take your umbrella. _____.
5. _____ TV tonight?
6. They hate that hotel so _____ there again.
7. _____ on vacation tomorrow.
8. _____ to the office next week. I'm on vacation.
9. Study hard, or _____ the test.
10. I'm really excited. _____ on a business trip to Brazil next month.

B. Work with a partner. Look at each sentence again. Which future form is used: *be going to* or the present continuous as future?

B2 Working on Be Going To

Complete these sentences with the correct forms of *be going to* and the words in parentheses. Use contractions where possible.

1. Soo-jin is going to study (study) in the United States next year.
2. She and her classmates _____ (take) language exams in December.
3. She _____ (not/apply) to many schools – just a few in Boston.
4. She knows that it _____ (be) difficult to study abroad. ~ 国外 接待 方法
5. Her parents aren't worried, because she _____ (not/be) alone.
6. She _____ (stay) with relatives there.
7. She _____ (live) with her aunt and uncle.
8. Soo-jin and her relatives are very close so they _____ (enjoy) living together.

B3 Building Present Continuous Sentences

Build six logical sentences with the present continuous as future. Use a word or phrase from each column. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

I am taking a test tomorrow.

I	am	giving	a test	next summer
my friends	is	taking	to Europe	tomorrow
our teacher	are	going	to a restaurant	tonight

B4 Forming Questions with *Be Going To*

Complete each conversation with a *Yes/No* question or information question. Use *be going to* and the words and phrases in parentheses.

- A: Is he going to study tonight? (study/tonight)
B: Yes, he is.
- A: _____ (call/tomorrow)
B: No, they aren't.
- A: _____ (graduate/this semester)
B: No, I'm not.
- A: _____ (move/to Canada)
B: No, I'm not.
- A: _____ (he/study/tonight)
B: In the library.
- A: _____ (they/call)
B: Tonight.
- A: _____ (you/graduate)
B: Next semester.
- A: _____ (you/move)
B: To Japan.

Informally Speaking

Reduced Form of *Going To*

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?

Going to is often pronounced /gənə/ in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM

They are **going to** call.

He is **going to** spend all the money.

I am **going to** stay home.

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

"They're/gənə/call."

"He's/gənə/spend all the money."

"I'm/gənə/stay home."



B5 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen and write the standard form of the words you hear.

1. We are going to make dinner soon.
2. I _____ to the beach.
3. We _____ him in Seattle.
4. Our class _____ next Wednesday.
5. The store _____ in five minutes.
6. Mark _____ at Lincoln University.
7. The children _____ happy about this.
8. They _____ the test tomorrow.

C

Be Going To and the Present Continuous as Future**Examining Meaning and Use**

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- I'm going to buy my father a book for his birthday.
 - I think we're going to have a storm tonight.
 - We're taking a trip next month.
- Which two sentences talk about an intention (something you're thinking about doing) or a plan?
 - Which sentence makes a prediction (a guess about the future)?

Meaning and Use Notes**Intentions and Plans with *Be Going To* and the Present Continuous**

- 1A** Use *be going to* to talk about ^{意圖. 目的} intentions or future plans.
/In'tenʃən/

I'm **going to study** hard for the test.

I'm **going to visit** Greece this summer.

A: What is Josh **going to study** at college?

B: He's **going to study** chemistry.

- 1B** You can also use the present continuous to talk about intentions or future plans. A **future time expression** is usually used with the present continuous to show that the sentence refers to the future (and not something happening right now). The verbs go, come, do, and have, as well as verbs related to travel, are especially common with the present continuous as future.

When are you **coming** to see me?

I'm **visiting** Greece this summer.

^{- I'm going to visit} My flight is **arriving** in the afternoon. My father is **meeting** me at the airport.

A: What are you **doing** tomorrow?
^{going to arrive}

B: I'm **having** lunch with friends. Then we're **going** to a movie.

(Continued on page 120)

1C The **present continuous** often refers to **more definite** plans than *be going to*. With *be going to*, the speaker often has not decided on the details.

Present Continuous as Future (Details Definite)

I'm taking a 3:00 flight to Chicago. In Chicago, I'm changing planes and flying on to Miami.

Be Going To (Details Not Definite)

A: I'm going to buy a car.
 B: What kind are you going to get?
 A: I don't know yet.

Predictions with Be Going To

2 Use *be going to* for **predictions** (guesses about the future), especially when there is evidence that something is just about to happen. The present continuous is not used to make predictions.

Be careful! That glass is going to fall!

It's cloudy. I think it's going to rain tonight.

*It's cloudy. I think it's raining tonight. (INCORRECT)

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use ▶ Notes 1A, 1B, 2

Listen to each sentence. Is the speaker talking about an intention or plan, or making a prediction? Check (✓) the correct column.

	INTENTION/PLAN	PREDICTION
1.		✓
2.	✓	
3.	✓	
4.		✓
5.		✓
6.	✓	
7.		✓
8.	✓	

C2 Making Predictions with *Be Going To*

► Note 2

Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and make two predictions about what is going to happen in each situation. Use *be going to*.



I think she's going to take a trip.
I think she's going to travel to a cold place.



Vocabulary Notes

Future Time Expressions

The future time expressions below are commonly used in sentences about the future.

TODAY/TONIGHT/TOMORROW

today
tonight
tomorrow
the day after tomorrow
tomorrow morning/afternoon/night
They're arriving **tomorrow**.

THIS + TIME PERIOD

this afternoon
this Sunday
this week
this year
this spring
I'm leaving **this week**.

NEXT + TIME PERIOD

next Sunday
next week
next August
next month
next year
Next week I'm visiting Ana.

IN + QUANTITY OF TIME

in five minutes
in a few days
in a few weeks
in a few months
He's going to call **in a few hours**.

THE + TIME PERIOD + AFTER NEXT

the week after next
the weekend after next
the month after next
the year after next
We're having a test **the week after next**.

C3 Using Future Time Expressions

Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions with *when* and *be going to* or the present continuous as future. Use *be going to* for intentions and the present continuous as future for more definite plans. Use future time expressions in your answers.

1. you/study

A: *When are you going to study?*

B: *I'm going to study tonight.*

OR

A: *When are you studying?*

B: *I'm studying this afternoon.*

2. your best friend/visit you

3. you/finish your homework

4. your friends/have a party

5. you/check your e-mail

6. your history teacher/give a test

7. your family/take a vacation

8. you/clean your apartment

C4 Talking About Intentions and Plans

► Notes 1A-1C

A. Write sentences about what you intend or plan to do at the future times in parentheses. Use *be going to* for intentions and the present continuous as future for more definite plans.

1. (next weekend) Next weekend I'm going to visit my parents.
2. (the day after tomorrow) _____
3. (next spring) _____
4. (in six months) _____
5. (next year) _____
6. (in an hour) _____

B. Work with a partner. Ask your partner about his or her intentions or plans. Use future time expressions in your questions.

A: *What are you doing next weekend?*

B: *I'm visiting my parents.*

C5 Thinking About Intentions and Plans

► Notes 1A-1C

A. Think about these possible events. Check (✓) the events that you can plan.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1. learn to drive a car | _____ 7. look for a job |
| _____ 2. have bad weather | _____ 8. rob a bank |
| _____ 3. give a party | _____ 9. have an eye exam |
| _____ 4. go to college | _____ 10. get married |
| _____ 5. get sick | _____ 11. win the lottery |
| _____ 6. have a car accident | _____ 12. watch a movie |

B. Work with a partner. Talk about the things you plan to do. You can use the events you checked in part A or others. Use *be going to* for intentions or the present continuous as future for more definite plans. Use future time expressions.

A: *I'm going to learn to drive this summer. My brother is going to teach me.*

B: *I'm watching a movie with some friends tonight. My friend Silvia is renting a video, and everyone is coming to my house at 7:00.*

A. Fill in the chart below with your schedule for the next week.

	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY
8:00 A.M.					
9:00 A.M.					
10:00 A.M.					
11:00 A.M.					
12:00 P.M.					
1:00 P.M.					
2:00 P.M.					
3:00 P.M.					
4:00 P.M.					
5:00 P.M.					

B. Now work with three other students to find a time for a two-hour meeting, a lunch date, and a one-hour work-out at the gym. Use the present continuous as future and time expressions to talk about your future plans.

A: *When can we have the meeting?*

B: *I'm free next Tuesday at 9 A.M.*

C: *I'm not. I'm working all morning.*

D: *What are you doing next Thursday at one?*

C: *I'm not doing anything until three.*

D

The Future with *Will*

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. I will decide in a few weeks.
 - b. He will probably raise taxes.
 - c. They will vote for him.
 - d. Will Overmeyer keep his promises?
- Underline *will* + verb in each sentence. Circle the subjects.
 - Does the form of *will* change with different subjects?
 - Does *will* go before or after the subject in a question?

Affirmative Statements				
SUBJECT	WILL	BASE FORM OF VERB		
I	will	leave	tomorrow.	
You				
He				
She				
It				
We				
You				
They				

CONTRACTIONS				
I'll	leave	tomorrow.		
She'll				
They'll				

Negative Statements				
SUBJECT	WILL	NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	will	not	leave	tomorrow.
You				
He				
She				
It				
We				
You				
They				

CONTRACTIONS				
I	won't	leave	tomorrow.	
She				
They				

(Continued on page 126)

Yes/No Questions			
WILL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Will	you	leave	tomorrow?
	she		
	they		

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	WILL	NO	SUBJECT	WILL + NOT
Yes,	I	will.	No,	I	won't.
	she			she	
	they			they	

Information Questions				
WH- WORD	WILL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	will	he	see	at the wedding tomorrow?
What		they	do	later?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	WILL		BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	will		leave	first?
What			happen	next?

- Use the same form of *will* with every subject. See Appendix 16 for contractions with *will*.
- Do not use contractions with affirmative short answers.
Yes, I will. *Yes, I'll. (INCORRECT)

D1 Listening for Form

 Listen to each sentence. Which form is used to talk about the future: *be going to*, the present continuous, or *will*? Check (✓) the correct column.

	BE GOING TO	PRESENT CONTINUOUS	WILL
1.	✓		
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			

D2 Completing Conversations with Will

Complete these conversations with the words in parentheses and *will* or *won't*. Use contractions where possible. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

Conversation 1

Susan: I don't believe all these predictions. In the next ten years

_____ ¹ *we won't have* _____ (we/not/have) hydrogen-powered cars.

Bob: Oh, I think _____ ² _____ (we).

Conversation 2

Jenny: _____ ¹ _____ (we/be) friends in five years?

Keiko: Of course, _____ ² _____ (we/be) friends.

Conversation 3

Lauren: Take your jacket or _____ ¹ _____ (you/be) cold.

Dan: No, _____ ² _____ (I/not). It's not cold outside.

Conversation 4

Paul: _____ ¹ _____ (I/do) my homework in the morning. I promise, Mom.

Mom: No, _____ ² _____ (you/not). You're always too tired in the morning. Do it now.

Conversation 5

Carol: _____ ¹ _____ (I/never/learn) how to program this new VCR.

Betty: I have the same one. _____ ² _____ (I/show) you.

Conversation 6

Robin: Do you think _____ ¹ _____ (you/find) an apartment in San Francisco?

Kedra: That's a good question. _____ ² _____ (it/be) difficult.

Maybe _____ ³ _____ (I/try) Oakland, too.

D3 Asking Yes/No Questions with Will

A. Imagine that this is the first day of your new English class. You are feeling very nervous. Use these phrases to write *Yes/No* questions to ask your teacher. Use *will* in your questions.

1. (get homework every night) Will we get homework every night?
2. (have a final exam) _____
3. (get grades for class participation) _____
4. (use a textbook) _____
5. (have a lot of tests) _____
6. (use the language lab) _____

B. Work with a partner. Think of two more questions to ask your teacher.

Will we use the Internet in class?

C. Take turns asking and answering the questions in parts A and B.

A: *Will we get homework every night?*

B: *Yes, you will. It will help you a lot.*

D4 Building Sentences

Build six logical information questions with *will*. Use each *wh-* word at least once. Remember that *wh-* (subject) questions do not need an item from the third column. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

What will you talk about at the meeting?

what	will	dinner	talk about	from college
when		you	be	after class today
where		your boss	go	at the meeting
who			graduate	ready

Informally Speaking

Reduced Form of Will

Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?



Will is often contracted with nouns and *wh*- words in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM

Jake will be late.

The children will be here soon.

How will you get to Boston?

Where will you live?

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

“/ˈdʒeɪkəl/ be late.”

“The /ˈtʃɪldrənəl/ be here.”

“/ˈhaʊəl/ you get to Boston?”

“/ˈwɛrəl/ you live?”

D5 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen and write the standard form of the words you hear.

1. What will _____ you say to him tonight?
2. _____ Tony be home?
3. The _____ need paper and pencils for the test.
4. _____ help me carry these bags?
5. _____ help you with your homework.
6. After the test, the _____ grade our papers.
7. _____ get the job. He's so qualified.
8. The _____ be over at ten o'clock.

E

Will vs. Be Going To**Examining Meaning and Use**

Read the conversations and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. **Waiter:** Our special today is chicken salad.
 Customer: I think I'll have a tuna sandwich instead, please.
 - b. **Father:** I'm very angry with you.
 Daughter: I'm sorry. I'll never lie to you again.
 - c. **Wife:** What time are your parents arriving?
 Husband: They'll probably be here by six.
1. In which conversation is the second person making a prediction?
 2. In which conversation is the second person making a quick decision?
 3. In which conversation is the second person making a promise?

Meaning and Use Notes**Predictions with Will and Be Going To**

- 1A** Use *will* or *be going to* to make predictions (guesses about the future). You can also use *probably* and other adverbs with *will* and *be going to* to express certainty or uncertainty. 表示. 确定.

Will

Electric cars **will become** popular in the next ten years.

They'll probably **win** the championship.

Be Going To

Electric cars **are going to become** popular in the next ten years.

They're probably **going to win** the championship.

- 1B** With predictions, the meanings of *will* and *be going to* are not exactly the same. Use *be going to* when you are more certain that an event will happen because there is evidence. Do not use *will* in this situation. event / 事件

She's **going to have** a baby!

*She'll have a baby! (INCORRECT)

Quick Decisions vs. Advance Plans

- 2 In statements with *I, will* and *be going to* have different meanings. (Will) is often used to express (a quick decision) made at the time of speaking (such as an offer to help). Be going to, however, shows that you have thought about something in advance. Do not use *be going to* for quick decisions.

Will for Quick Decisions

A: I don't have a fork.

B: I'll ask the waiter to bring you one.

A: Someone is at the door.

B: I'll get it.

Be Going To for Advance Plans

A: Do we have plastic forks for the party?

B: No. I'm going to ask Lisa to bring some.

A: Have you decided to buy the car?

B: Yes. I'm going to get it tomorrow.

Promises with Will

- 3 In statements with *I, will* is often used to express a promise.

A: Chris, please clean your room.

B: I'll do it later, Mom. I promise.

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2, 3

 Listen to each sentence. Is the speaker making a promise, a prediction, or a quick decision? Check (✓) the correct column.

	PROMISE	PREDICTION	QUICK DECISION
1.		✓	
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			

E2 Contrasting *Be Going To* and *Will*

► Notes 1B, 2

Complete each conversation with the words in parentheses and the correct form of *be going to* or *will*. Use contractions where possible.

Conversation 1

A: Are you going (you/go) to Jake's party?

B: I can't. be (I/visit) my grandmother this weekend.

Conversation 2

A: Did you hear? she is going to have (Maria/have) a baby in February!

B: That's great news!

Conversation 3

A: Oh, there's the doorbell.

B: Don't worry. I will answer (I/answer) it.

Conversation 4

A: Maria, I have to ask you something important. _____ (you/marry) me?

B: Yes, of course, I will (I), Luis.

E3 Making Quick Decisions

► Note 2

Complete each conversation with an offer of help. Use *will* and a contraction.

Conversation 1

A: My cat is stuck in the tree again! I'll never get him down.

B: Don't worry! I'll get him down for you.

Conversation 2

A: I can't open the door. I'm carrying too many groceries.

B: _____

Conversation 3

A: Oh no! I don't have enough money to pay for dinner.

B: _____

Conversation 4

A: I'll never have time to clean this apartment before my mom comes over.

B: _____

Conversation 5

A: I lost my math notes and I need them to study for the quiz.

B: _____

E4 Making Promises

► Note 3

Read these situations. Write promises with *will* or *won't*.

check answers!

1. Tony got bad grades this semester. His parents are angry. What does he promise them?

I'll study much harder next semester.

2. Derek went away on vacation. He forgot to lock his house. Thieves came in and stole everything. What does he promise himself?

I will remember to lock the door

3. Pedro forgot his essay. What does he promise his professor?

4. Dr. Smith is about to give Sara an injection. What does he promise her?

5. Eve is on the telephone with the manager of the local telephone company. She hasn't paid her bill for three months. What does she promise?

E5 Making Predictions

► Note 1A

Work in small groups. Look at these topics. Make predictions using *be going to* and *will*. Then discuss your predictions with the rest of the class.

1. medicine

Medical care is going to become more expensive, but more people will have health insurance.

2. space travel

3. war and peace

4. cars and planes

5. education

6. wealth and poverty

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: _____

B: I'm getting up early, packing a lunch, and taking a bus to the beach.

a. What are you doing now?

b. What are you going to do tomorrow?

2. A: I don't need an umbrella. It's not raining.

B: _____

a. But it's raining this afternoon.

b. But it's going to rain this afternoon.

3. A: Tomorrow's election is going to be close.

B: _____

a. Yes, but I think O'Casey's winning.

b. Yes, but I think O'Casey will win.

4. A: Next Monday is Pat's birthday.

B: _____

a. Yes. We're going to have a party for her.

b. Yes. We'll have a party for her.

5. A: This box is very heavy. I can't carry it any longer.

B: _____

a. Don't worry. I'm going to carry it.

b. I'll carry it. You carry the lighter one.

quick decision

6. A: We're going on a Caribbean cruise. ^{巡航}

B: _____

- a. Wow! You're having a great time.
- b. Wow! You're going to have a great time.

7. A: Does Lisa know ^{hweɪə/} whether she's going to have a boy or a girl?

B: _____ ^{抑或. 兩者中的那一了}

- a. Yes, the doctor told her. She will have a boy.
- b. Yes, the doctor told her. She's going to have a boy.

I wonder whether he will come on time. ^{不知道他是否能準時來}

8. A: Do you think electric cars will become more popular in the future?

B: _____

- a. Yes, everyone will drive them.
- b. Yes, everyone is driving them.

F2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

- check*
- 1. Betty ^{is} going to college this fall.
 - 2. What she ~~is~~ going to study?
 - 3. She is going to study cooking because she wants to be a chef.
 - 4. Betty ^{is going to study} studying with some famous chefs next year.
 - 5. Someday maybe Betty is being a famous chef, too.
 - 6. Betty is also going to take some business classes.
 - 7. After these classes she certainly will know all about restaurant management.
 - 8. Maybe in a few years Betty ^{is going to own} owns a restaurant.
 - 9. What kind of food her restaurant will serve?
 - 10. I predict it is serving Chinese.



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an English-language newspaper or on the Internet for articles about the future plans of the government or of a famous person. Find five examples of *will*, *be going to*, and the present continuous as future. Bring the examples to class. Which examples show predictions? advance plans? intentions? Why is *will*, *be going to*, or the present continuous used in each example? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Follow these steps for making a group presentation about your plans to solve a problem in your school or community.

1. Work with two or three other students outside of class. Think of a problem in your school or community.
2. Discuss the problem as a group. Make notes about what the problem is, and how to fix it. Use these questions to help you.
 - What is the problem?
 - What are you or others going to do to fix the problem?
 - What results do you predict?
3. Use your notes to prepare your presentation. Be sure to use *be going to*, the present continuous as future, and *will* to talk about your plans and your predictions about the results.
4. Divide the presentation into three or four parts (one for each student in the group). Then present your plan to your classmates. At the end of the presentation, ask your classmates to ask questions and give their opinions about your plan.

A lot of families in our neighborhood are not following the city's recycling laws. We are going to organize a campaign. First, we will . . .



Future Time Clauses and *If* Clauses

clause 307
/ k l > z /

- A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: What Will Happen in the Future?** 138
- B. FORM: Future Time Clauses and *If* Clauses** 140
- FUTURE TIME CLAUSES
Before I go to the movies, **I'm going to do** my homework.
I'm going to do my homework **before I go** to the movies.
- IF* CLAUSES
If it rains tomorrow, (then) they'll **cancel** the picnic.
 They'll **cancel** the picnic **if it rains** tomorrow.
- C. MEANING AND USE 1: Using Future Time Clauses for Events in Sequence** 144
- Future Events in Sequence 順序
- D. MEANING AND USE 2: Expressing Future Possibility with *If* Clauses** 146
- Cause-and-Effect Relationships
 Expressing Advice, Warnings, Promises, and Predictions
 Possibility vs. Certainty
- E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use** 150

A

What Will Happen in the Future?

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you think about life in the future? What will be different in the future? Will the world be a better or worse place than it is today? Why?

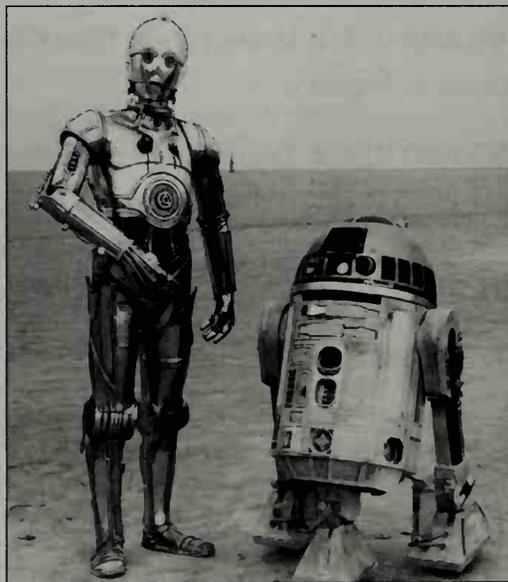
A2 Read

 Read this magazine article to find out if your predictions about the future match one expert's predictions.

What Will Happen in the Future?

In the year 2010 we will continue the exploration of the planet Mars. The first interplanetary astronauts won't be humans, however. They will
 5 be robots. Experts say these robots will be very different from the robots we usually see in movies. They won't have arms and legs. Instead, they will be like small armored vehicles. They
 10 will explore the surface of the planet and they will perform scientific experiments. If the robots find water, humans will travel to Mars and create a colony.

15 **In the year 2015** people will live in "smart" houses. These houses will



Robots of the future probably won't look like this.

use less energy and will be more environmentally friendly than the houses of today. If a room is empty, the lights and TV will go off. When the weather is cold, windows will shut automatically. They will open when the weather is hot. The windows will also change the energy of the sun into electricity. Some people say that smart houses are not going to be very popular because we will prefer our traditional houses. Others say that smart houses will change our way of life completely and everyone will love them.

In the year 2020 it will be possible for ordinary people to travel on supersonic planes such as the Concorde. Today this kind of travel is extremely expensive. However, in the future it is going to be much cheaper. After prices go down, it will be possible for everyone to travel from Tokyo to New York in just a few hours.

In the year 2025 we will build a space station on one of the moons of Jupiter. Some scientists believe that humans will travel into deep space soon after that.

armored: covered in metal as protection from damage or attack

colony: a community of people living together in a new place

extremely: very

ordinary: like everyone else, not unusual

supersonic: traveling faster than sound

A3 After You Read

Check (✓) the predictions that the writer makes in the article.

- 1. The first interplanetary astronauts will not be humans.
- 2. It is unlikely that robots will find water on Mars.
- 3. Humans will start a colony on Mars in the year 2010.
- 4. In 2015 smart houses will use energy from the sun.
- 5. People in smart houses will not need electricity.
- 6. In the year 2025 we will build a space station on one of the moons of Jupiter.

B

Future Time Clauses and *If* Clauses

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- I'll see him before I leave.
 - When they graduate, they're going to look for work.
 - We're going to have dessert after we finish dinner.
- Underline the main clause and circle the dependent clause in each sentence. What form of the verb is used in each main clause?
 - Look at each dependent clause. What is the first word? What form of the verb is used? These are future time clauses.
 - Look at this sentence. What is the first word of the dependent clause? This is an *if* clause.
If I go to the store, I'll buy the groceries.
 - Look back at the article on page 138. Find two future time clauses and one *if* clause.

FUTURE TIME CLAUSES

FUTURE TIME CLAUSE				MAIN CLAUSE
	SUBJECT	VERB		
Before	I	go	to the movies,	I'm going to do my homework.
When	she	gets	to work,	she'll make some phone calls.
After	we	finish	dinner,	we'll wash the dishes.

MAIN CLAUSE	FUTURE TIME CLAUSE			
		SUBJECT	VERB	
I'm going to do my homework	before	I	go	to the movies.
She'll make some phone calls	when	she	gets	to work.
We'll wash the dishes	after	we	finish	dinner.

Overview

- A clause is a group of words that has a subject and a verb.
- A main clause can stand alone as a complete sentence.
- A dependent clause cannot stand alone and must be used with a main clause.

Future Time Clauses

- Future time clauses are dependent time clauses. They begin with words such as *before*, *when*, *while*, and *after*.
- A future time clause can come before or after the main clause with no change in meaning. If the future time clause comes first, then it is separated from the main clause by a comma.
- Use *will* or *be going to* in the main clause.
- The verb in the future time clause is in the simple present even though it has a future meaning.

⚠ Do not use *be going to* or *will* in the future time clause.

After I **finish** my work, I'll watch TV.

* After I will finish my work, I'll watch TV. (INCORRECT)

IF CLAUSES

IF CLAUSE				MAIN CLAUSE	
IF	SUBJECT	VERB		(THEN)	
	you	exercise	every day,		you'll feel better.
If	it	rains	tomorrow,	(then)	they'll cancel the picnic.
	we	don't score	soon,		we're going to lose the game.

MAIN CLAUSE		IF CLAUSE			
		IF	SUBJECT	VERB	
You'll feel better			you	exercise	every day.
They'll cancel the picnic		if	it	rains	tomorrow.
We're going to lose the game			we	don't score	soon.

(Continued on page 142)

If Clauses

- If clauses are dependent clauses. They must be used with a main clause.
- An *if* clause can come before or after the main clause with no change in meaning. When the *if* clause comes first, it is separated from the main clause by a comma.
- When the *if* clause comes first, *then* can be added before the main clause with no change in meaning.
- Use *will* or *be going to* in the main clause.
- The verb in the *if* clause is in the simple present even though it has a future meaning.

⚠ Do not use *be going to* or *will* in the *if* clause.

If I **finish** my work, I'll watch TV.

* If I'll finish my work, I'll watch TV. (INCORRECT)

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences. Write the verb forms you hear.

1. When I see Elena, I 'll give her the message.
2. We _____ more time if the test _____ very difficult.
3. Marcus and Maria _____ to Budapest after they _____ Prague.
4. She _____ us when she _____ here.
5. You _____ him if you _____ to the party.
6. If Matt _____ a loan from the bank, he _____ a new car.

B2 Building Sentences

Build five logical sentences with future time clauses and *if* clauses. Use a clause from each column. Use the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

After Megan finishes class, she'll have lunch.

after Megan (finish) class	we (get) a lot of money
before she (leave) the house	she (have) lunch
if we (win) the prize	you (pass) the test
if you (study) hard	she (call) you
when we (get) to the movies	we (save) you a seat

parentheses
 1. 插入句
 2. 插入句
 3. 插入句
 4. 插入句

B3 Working on Future Time Clauses and *If* Clauses

A. Complete each sentence with a future time clause or a main clause. Use the words and phrases in parentheses and the correct punctuation.

1. When I get a job, I'll buy a car. (I/buy/a car)
2. _____ (after/she/graduate) she's going to move to L.A.
3. After we save some money _____ (we/look/for a house)
4. _____ (they/visit/the Eiffel Tower) before they leave Paris.

一個計劃 故用 be going to

B. Complete each sentence with an *if* clause or a main clause. Use the words and phrases in parentheses and the correct punctuation.

1. We'll take her out to dinner if she visits. (if/she/visit)
2. _____ (I/call) if I hear any news.
3. If I feel better _____ (I/go/to work)
4. _____ (if/you/not/study) you won't do well on the test.

B4 Completing Sentences with Future Time Clauses and *If* Clauses

Complete this e-mail with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Emily,

We're planning a surprise party for Dan's birthday. Here are the plans.

Lauren will bring₁ (bring) me their house key after Dan _____₂ (leave) for work on Friday. I _____₃ (decorate) before I _____₄ (go) to class. I ordered a cake from the bakery. Stefan _____₅ (get) it when he _____₆ (go) shopping on Friday afternoon. We need your help. If Dan _____₇ (come) home right after work, we _____₈ (not/be) ready. Will you ask him to drive you home after work? If you _____₉ (ask) him to take you home, he _____₁₀ (not/ be) suspicious. Then, when everyone _____₁₁ (be) here, I _____₁₂ (call) you on your cell phone.

Luisa

C

Using Future Time Clauses for Events in Sequence

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the task below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 答案或顺序. 效果
- We'll give you the information when we get the results.
 - Before you take the test, the teacher will review the homework.
 - He'll need help after he comes home from the hospital.

Look at each sentence. Underline the event that happens first. Which word or words in each sentence tell you the order of the events?

Meaning and Use Notes

Future Events in Sequence

- 1 Future time clauses show the time relationship between two events or situations in a sentence. When a time clause begins with *when* or *after*, the event in the time clause happens first. When a time clause begins with *before*, the event in the time clause happens second.

First Event

Second Event

When I get home,

I'll call you.

After they get married,

they're going to move to California.

I'm going to water the plants

before I go on vacation.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 1

 Listen to each sentence. Which event happens first and which happens second? Write 1 next to the first event and 2 next to the second.

- 1 I look for a job. 2 I graduate.
- ___ He gets here. ___ We make dinner.
- ___ We go to the park. ___ We go to the museum.
- ___ I call you. ___ They leave.
- ___ I clean the house. ___ I go shopping.

C2 Talking About Two Future Events

► Note 1

A. Complete these sentences with future time clauses or main clauses.

1. When I finish school _____, my family will be happy.
2. After I finish this English class, _____.
3. _____, I'll take a vacation.
4. I'll buy a new car _____.
5. _____, I'll speak English.
6. I'll be happy _____.

B. Work with a partner. In your notebook, write two main clauses and two future time clauses. Have your partner complete each one.

I'll call you _____.

When my friend visits me, _____.

C3 Describing Future Events in Sequence

► Note 1

Think about your day tomorrow. Write two sentences for each part of the day. Use future time clauses with *before*, *when*, and *after*.

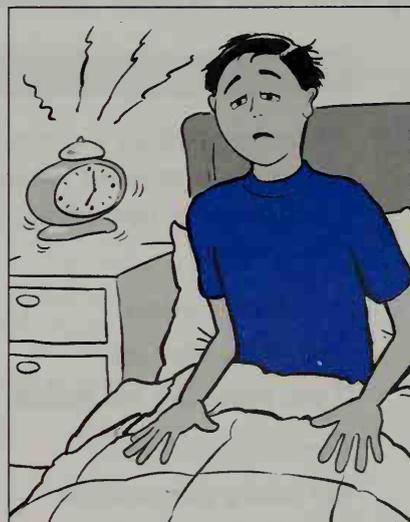
1. (tomorrow morning)

I'll get up when my alarm rings.

2. (tomorrow afternoon)

3. (tomorrow evening)

4. (tomorrow night)



D

Expressing Future Possibility with *If* Clauses

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. If you take some aspirin, you'll feel better.
 - 1b. I'll take you out to dinner if you help me with the housework.
 - 2a. If Ben leaves, call me.
 - 2b. When Ben leaves, call me.
1. Look at 1a and 1b. Underline the *if* clauses. Circle the main clauses. Which clause in each sentence describes a possible situation? Which clause in each sentence describes a possible result of that situation?
 2. Look at 1a and 1b again. Which sentence gives advice? Which sentence makes a promise?
 3. Look at 2a and 2b. In which sentence is it more certain that Ben will leave?

Meaning and Use Notes

Cause-and-Effect Relationships

- 1 Sentences with an *if* clause show a cause-and-effect relationship. The *if* clause introduces a possible situation (the cause). The main clause talks about the possible result (the effect) of that situation. The cause and effect can come in either order.

If Clause (Cause)

If she gets that job,

If you press the red button,

Main Clause (Effect)

Her salary will increase

The elevator will stop

Main Clause (Effect)

her salary will increase.

the elevator will stop.

If Clause (Cause)

if she gets that job.

if you press the red button.

n. /ɪnkrɪs/

v. /ɪnkrɪs/

Expressing Advice, Warnings, Promises, and Predictions

- 2 Sentences with an *if* clause and a main clause with *be going to* or *will* have several common uses:

Giving Advice: If you rest now, you'll feel better later.

Giving a Warning: If you don't tell the truth, you're going to be sorry.

Making a Promise: If you elect me, I won't raise taxes.

Making a Prediction: If he moves to the city, he won't be happy.

Possibility vs. Certainty

- 3 Use an *if* clause if you think something is possible but you are not sure it will happen. Use a **future time clause** with ***when*** if you are **certain something will happen**.

If Clause (Possible)

If it goes on sale, I'll buy it.

I'll visit the Taj Mahal **if I go to India**.

Future Time Clause (Certain)

When it goes on sale, I'll buy it.

I'll visit the Taj Mahal **when I go to India**.

maybe happen

must happen

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 3



Listen to each conversation. Does the second speaker think the situation is possible or certain? Check (✓) the correct column.

	SITUATION	POSSIBLE	CERTAIN
1.	She and Amy will see a movie.	✓	
2.	He will go to the store.		
3.	It will snow this weekend.		
4.	He will go to Mexico.		
5.	Mark will ask Celia to marry him.		
6.	Jake will rent the apartment.		

D2 Giving Warnings

► Notes 1, 2

Complete each warning with an *if* clause or a main clause.

1. If you don't stop at a red light, you'll get a ticket.
2. You'll burn your hand _____.
3. _____ if you don't pay your electric bill.
4. If you go swimming in cold weather, _____.
5. _____ if you don't eat breakfast.
6. _____ if you stay up all night.
7. You'll lose your job _____.
8. _____, you'll break your leg.

D3 Giving Advice

► Notes 1, 2

Write two pieces of advice for the person in each situation. Each piece of advice should include an *if* clause and a main clause.

1. Your friend is always late for school.
 - a. If you leave home on time, you won't be late for school.
 - b. _____
2. Your brother wants to go to a good university.
 - a. _____
 - b. _____
3. Your sister doesn't get along with a co-worker.
 - a. _____
 - b. _____
4. Your cousin wants to move to a new apartment, but he doesn't have much money.
 - a. _____
 - b. _____

D4 Making Promises

► Notes 1, 2

Work with a partner. Read these situations. Take turns making promises. Each promise should include an *if* clause and a main clause. Switch roles after each situation.

1. **Student A:** You are a student. You need help with your English homework.
Student B: You are the student's best friend.

A: If you help me with my English homework, I'll help you with your math.

B: I'll help you with your homework if you let me ride your motorcycle.

2. **Student A:** You are a teenager. You want to borrow the family car.
Student B: You are the teenager's parent.

3. **Student A:** You are a driver. You were speeding.
Student B: You are a police officer.

4. **Student A:** You are an employee. You are often late for work.
Student B: You are the employee's boss.

D5 Making Predictions

► Notes 1, 2

Look at the picture. Write predictions about what will happen. Include an *if* clause and a main clause in each prediction.

If the man trips over the telephone cord, he'll fall.



E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read each sentence and the statements that follow. Check (✓) the statement that has the same meaning. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- check answers!*
- After the children go to bed, we'll leave.
 - a. We'll leave, and then the children will go to bed.
 - b. The children will go to bed, and then we'll leave.
 - He'll come and get us when the program starts.
 - a. The program will start, and then he'll come and get us.
 - b. He'll come and get us, and then the program will start.
 - Before you graduate, you'll need another math course.
 - a. You can't graduate without another math course.
 - b. You'll graduate, and then you'll take another math course.
 - He'll leave before I leave.
 - a. I'll leave when he leaves.
 - b. He'll leave, and then I'll leave.
 - He'll be happy if he gets the job.
 - a. He'll get the job, and then he'll be happy.
 - b. It's possible that he'll get the job. If he does, he'll be happy.
 - We're going to buy a house when we get married.
 - a. We feel certain that we'll buy a house after we marry.
 - b. We don't feel certain that we'll get married and buy a house.

7. If the store is open, I'll buy some milk.
- ___ a. The store will be open, so I'll buy some milk.
- ___ b. Maybe the store will be open, and I'll buy some milk.
8. I'll help you when I finish making lunch.
- ___ a. I'll make lunch. Then I'll help you.
- ___ b. I'll help you. At the same time, I'll make lunch.
9. She'll cook dinner when her husband comes home.
- ___ a. Dinner will not be ready when he arrives.
- ___ b. Dinner will be ready when he arrives.
10. I'll see Ben if I go to the party.
- ___ a. I'm not certain that I'm going to the party.
- ___ b. Ben isn't certain that he's going to the party.

E2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them. There may be more than one error in some sentences.

1. When I ~~will~~ see Debbie, I'll give her the book.
2. If I won't feel better soon, I'll go to the doctor.
3. If I get an A on the final, then I'll get an A for the course.
4. I'm going to check the prices on-line before I'm going to buy a camera.
5. We won't have time to see a movie after we go shopping.
6. He's going to drive to Dallas if the weather ~~will~~ improve.
7. When I'll get my paycheck, I'll pay my bills.
8. They cancel the picnic if it will rain tomorrow.
9. When the phone is going to ring, I'll answer it.
10. She'll be rich if she wins the lottery.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of grammar in everyday life. Look for advertisements in an English-language newspaper or magazine, or on the Internet. Find five sentences with *if* clauses and bring them to class. What does each *if* clause express? Is it advice? a warning? a promise? a prediction? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Imagine you are running for election as mayor of your town or city. Follow these steps to write a campaign flyer.

1. Work with a partner. Think about the topic. Brainstorm the changes that you will make as mayor.
2. Make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you.
 - What problems does your city have?
 - How will you solve these problems if the people elect you?
 - What will happen when you solve these problems?
3. Write a first draft. Use future time clauses and *if* clauses to make predictions, promises, and warnings.
4. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with your partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
5. Rewrite your draft.
 - *When I become mayor, I will work hard to improve our city.*
 - *If you elect me, I will not raise taxes.*



Modals of Ability and

Modals

PART

4

Modals of Ability and Possibility

可能、可能、可能

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: A Real-Life Hero	156
B. FORM 1: Modals of Ability: <i>Can</i> and <i>Could</i>; <i>Be Able To</i>	158
CAN FOR PRESENT AND FUTURE ABILITY	
He can play the piano.	
COULD FOR PAST ABILITY	
He could read in kindergarten.	
BE ABLE TO FOR PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE ABILITY	
He was able to work yesterday.	
He is able to work today.	
He will be able to work tomorrow.	
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Past, Present, and Future Ability	162
Present Ability with <i>Can</i>	
Future Ability with <i>Be Able To</i> and <i>Can</i>	
Past Ability with <i>Could</i> and <i>Be Able To</i>	
Vocabulary Notes: <i>Know How To</i>	166
D. FORM 2: Modals of Future Possibility	167
They may leave next weekend.	
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Future Possibility	170
Expressing Future Possibility with <i>Could</i> , <i>Might</i> , and <i>May</i>	
Expressing Strong Certainty with <i>Will</i>	
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	174

A

A Real-Life Hero

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

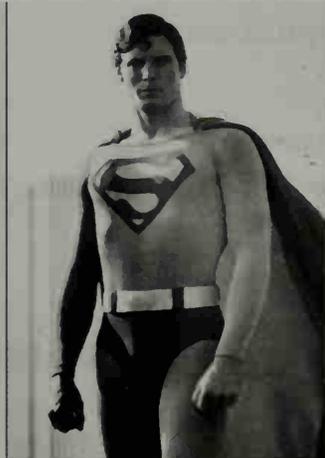
What is a hero? Can an ordinary person be a hero? Do you know any heroes?

A2 Read

 Read this magazine article to find out why a man who played a hero in the movies is a real-life hero today.

 feature story

A Real-Life Hero



Reeve as Superman

Everyone knows Superman. He's a comic book hero. He can do things that ordinary people can't do. And most people know Christopher Reeve. He's the actor who played Superman in four movies. As Superman, Reeve could fly. He could see through walls. He had the strength of one hundred men, and his enemies could not defeat him. These 10 movies were very popular, and for most people Christopher Reeve was Superman—until May 26, 1995.

On that day Reeve was in a horse-jumping competition. His horse couldn't jump over a hurdle, and Reeve fell. He injured his spinal cord very badly. Now he is paralyzed—he is not able to move any part of his body below his neck. He cannot write, walk, or even feed himself. A machine helps him breathe. He is able to talk, but his voice is often difficult to understand.

What kind of life does Reeve have after this terrible accident? Does he

25 spend his time feeling sorry for himself?
 No. In fact, he's still a very busy man. He
 still acts in films and directs them. Most
 importantly, he makes speeches and raises
 30 money for the study of spinal cord
 injuries. He has also started a research
 center.



Reeve today

Reeve has brought hope to other
 people who are paralyzed. He speaks to
 people all over the country with similar
 35 injuries. He tells them that they can still
 have useful lives, and he explains his
 idea of what makes a hero. According to
 Reeve, a hero is an ordinary person who
 can find the strength to continue even
 40 with serious problems. *普通行*

Christopher Reeve has made some
 progress with special exercise. He has
 recovered some feeling in his left leg and
 parts of his left arm. Although doctors
 45 think that he will always be paralyzed,
 Christopher Reeve still has hope for the
 future. Researchers may find a cure for
 spinal cord injuries. Reeve believes that he
 might even walk again. And who knows? For
 50 this real-life hero, nothing is impossible.

→ 1. 治愈
 V. 治愈
 N. 治愈

competition: a contest or an athletic event
cure: something that makes a sick person healthy
defeat: to beat someone in a fight or battle
enemy: a person who hates or wants to hurt somebody

hurdle: a fence or wall that horses jump over in a race
spinal cord: a system of nerves in the back that
 connects the brain to other parts of the body

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. Christopher Reeve was not famous before his accident.
2. Christopher Reeve is still a busy man.
3. Christopher Reeve gives hope to people with spinal cord injuries. *有帮助的*
4. The doctors think Christopher Reeve will walk again.
5. Christopher Reeve doesn't believe that ordinary people can be heroes.
6. Christopher Reeve feels positive about the future.

B

Modals of Ability: *Can* and *Could*; *Be Able To*

Examining Form

Look back at the article on page 156 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. Look at the underlined examples of *can* + verb and *could* + verb. What form of the verb follows *can* and *could*?
2. Find the negative forms of *can* + verb and *could* + verb in the first paragraph. What is unusual about the negative form of *can* + verb? What are the contracted negative forms of *can* and *could*?

CAN FOR PRESENT AND FUTURE ABILITY

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	can	play	the piano.
He		work	tomorrow.
They			

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	cannot can't	play	the piano.
He		work	tomorrow.
They			

Yes/No Questions			
MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Can	you	play	the piano?
	he	work	tomorrow?
	they		

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	MODAL	NO	SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT
Yes,	I	can.	No,	I	can't.
	he			he	
	they			they	

Information Questions

WH- WORD	MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
What	can	you	play?	
How long		he	work	tomorrow?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	MODAL		BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	can		work	tomorrow?
What			fly?	

- *Can* is a modal. Like all modals, it is followed by the base form of a verb and has the same form for all subjects.
- The negative form of *can* is *cannot*. Notice that *cannot* is written as one word.
- It is often difficult to hear the difference between *can* and *can't* because the final *t* in *can't* is not clearly pronounced. In sentences with *can* + verb, the vowel sound in *can* is very short and the stress is on the verb that follows *can*: /kən/ɡo. In sentences with *can't* + verb, the stress is on *can't* and the *a* is pronounced like the *a* in *ant*: /kæn/ɡo.

COULD FOR PAST ABILITY

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	could	read	in kindergarten.
He			
They			

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	could not couldn't	read	in kindergarten.
He			
They			

Yes/No Questions

MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Could	you	read	in kindergarten?

Short Answers

YES	SUBJECT	MODAL	NO	SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT
Yes,	I	could.	No	I	couldn't.

(Continued on page 160)

Information Questions

WH- WORD	MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
What	could	she	read	in kindergarten?

WH- WORD (SUBJECT)	MODAL		BASE FORM OF VERB	
Who	could		read	in kindergarten?

- *Could* is a modal. Like all modals, it is followed by the base form of a verb and has the same form for all subjects.

BE ABLE TO FOR PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE ABILITY

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	BE ABLE TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
He	was able to	work	yesterday.
	is able to		today.
	will be able to		tomorrow.

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	BE + NOT + ABLE TO	BASE FORM OF VERB	
He	was not able to	work	yesterday.
	is not able to		today.
	will not be able to		tomorrow.

- *Be able to* is not a modal, but it has the same meaning as *can* and *could*. The verb *be* in *be able to* changes form and agrees with the subject.
- See Appendix 16 for contractions with *be* and *will*.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to this paragraph. Write *can* or *can't*.

Michael is blind. He can't₁ see. He _____₂ do amazing things, however. He lives in Chicago, and he _____₃ walk around the city alone. Of course, he _____₄ read the street signs, so sometimes he asks for help. After he has been somewhere with a friend, he _____₅ go there again by himself. Michael is good at sports, too. He's the best player on his bowling team, even though he _____₆ see the bowling pins.

B2 Building Sentences with *Can* and *Can't*

Build three logical sentences with *can* and three logical sentences with *can't*. Use a word from each column. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

People can climb trees.

people	can	climb trees
fish	can't	bark
dogs		swim

People can climb trees.

Dogs can bark.

People can swim.

Fish can't bark.

Fish can't climb trees.

Dog can't climb trees.

B3 Forming Statements and Questions with *Can* and *Could*

In your notebook, write a statement and a question for each set of words and phrases. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. Emily/party/can/our/come/to

Emily can come to our party.

Can Emily come to our party?

2. them/airport/could/we/the/take/to

3. his/languages/can/parents/speak/several

4. sister/your/can/Mandarin/speak

5. problem/us/can/she/this/with/help

B4 Completing Conversations with *Be Able To*

Complete these conversations with the words in parentheses and the correct form of *be able to*. Use contractions where possible.

1. A: Were₁ you able to finish₂ (finish) the test yesterday?

B: No, _____₃ (not), but I _____₄ (do) 45 out of the 50 questions.

2. A: Did David help you clean the attic?

B: No, he _____₁ (not/come) on Saturday. But I think he

_____₂ (help) me this weekend.

3. A: _____₁ Susan _____₂ (practice) the piano at college last year?

B: Well, not in the dorm, but she _____₃ (play) at the Student Center.

4. A: _____₁ you _____₂ (call) me later?

B: No. I'm busy tonight, but I _____₃ (see) you tomorrow.

C

Past, Present, and Future Ability

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Carl can type 40 words a minute.
 - b. Last year Carl could type 20 words a minute.
 - c. When Carl's typing class ends, he will be able to type 60 words a minute.
1. Which sentence talks about an ability that Carl has at the present time?
 2. Which sentence talks about an ability Carl doesn't have yet?
 3. Which sentence talks about an ability Carl had in the past?

Meaning and Use Notes

Present Ability with *Can*

- 1A** *Can* is used to talk about an ability in the present.

The baby **can walk**, but she **can't talk** yet.

Strong winds **can cause** a lot of damage.

- 1B** *Be able to* also describes an ability in the present, but *can* is more commonly used.

Less Common

He **is able to** speak French and Arabic.

More Common

He **can speak** French and Arabic.

Future Ability with *Be Able To* and *Can*

- 2A** Use *will be able to* to talk about a skill or other ability that you don't have yet, but *will have in the future*. Do not use *can* to describe an ability that you will have only in the future.

After I complete this class, I'll **be able to type** 60 words a minute.

*After I complete this class, I can type 60 words a minute. (INCORRECT)

I **will be able to see** better after I get new glasses.

*I can see better after I get new glasses. (INCORRECT)

- 2B** Use *will be able to* or *can* to express ability that relates to decisions and arrangements for the future.

She { 'll be able to
can } meet you at the airport at 3:00.

I'm busy now, but I { 'll be able to
can } help you in ten minutes.

Past Ability with *Could* and *Be Able To*

- 3A** Use *could* or *was/were able to* to talk about an ability that existed for a long period of time in the past.

Long Period of Time

When I was young, I { was able to
could } eat dessert every night, and I didn't gain weight.

- 3B** In affirmative statements with action verbs, do not use *could* to talk about an ability related to a single event. Use only *was/were able to*.

Single Event with Action Verb (Affirmative)

Yesterday I was able to finish my homework quickly.

*Yesterday I could finish my homework quickly. (INCORRECT)

- 3C** In affirmative statements with certain stative verbs such as (see, hear, feel, taste, understand) and remember, use *could* or *was/were able to* to talk about ability related to a single event in the past.

Single Event with Stative Verb (Affirmative)

Last night the sky was clear and we { were able to
could } see for miles.

- 3D** In negative statements, use *couldn't* or *wasn't/weren't able to* for both ability during single events and ability over a long period of time.

Single Event (Negative)

Yesterday I { wasn't able to
couldn't } finish my homework quickly.

Long Period of Time

When I was younger, I { wasn't able to
couldn't } finish my homework quickly.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-3

 Listen to each speaker. Choose the correct response.

- a. OK, let's go today.

b. OK, we'll go tomorrow.
- a. No, they can't. It's raining.

b. Why not?
- a. Were they very high?

b. How disappointing!
- a. Well, at least she tries.

b. Of course she can. Her dad's a coach.
- a. So what did they do?

b. When did they learn?
- a. Is she able to walk now?

b. Will she be able to walk tomorrow?

C2 Talking About Future Abilities

► Note 2A

Complete the sentences with *will/won't + be able to*. Use your own ideas.

- Next year I'll be able to drive.
- In 20 years people _____
- In 50 years doctors _____
- By 2020 scientists _____
- In 10 years I _____
- In 100 years humans _____

C3 Distinguishing Between *Can* and *Be Able To*

► Notes 2A, 2B

In your notebook, rewrite these sentences with *can* where possible.

- The teacher will be able to help you with your homework this afternoon.
The teacher can help you with your homework this afternoon.
- Paul will be able to drive us to school tomorrow morning.
- Larry will be able to get a job when he learns how to use a computer.
- Will you be able to swim after you finish this swimming class?
- The doctor will be able to see you at three o'clock this afternoon.
- He will be able to walk again after the operation.

C4 Talking About Past Abilities

► Notes 3A–3D

- A. Work with a partner. Look at the topics below, and think about how people lived fifty years ago. Take turns making sentences with *could(n't)* and *was/were (not) able to*.

education food housing relationships
energy health leisure time transportation

A: *Fifty years ago many people weren't able to go to college.*

B: *Fifty years ago you could buy a house for ten thousand dollars.*

- B. Share your ideas with your classmates.

C5 Comparing Long Periods of Time and Single Events

► Notes 3A–3D

- A. In your notebook, rewrite these sentences with *could* or *couldn't* where possible. Do not change the meaning.

1. For many years, we were able to take long vacations.

For many years, we could take long vacations.

2. They were able to get tickets for the play this morning.

3. Before he hurt his knee, he was able to run five miles a day.

4. Even as a young child, she was able to swim well.

5. We weren't able to get to the concert on time last night.

6. Were you able to see the fireworks from your window the other night?

7. Matt wasn't able to find his keys this morning.

8. I was able to park the car in front of the restaurant this morning.

- B. Look back at the sentences in part A. Which sentences cannot be rewritten? Why?

Know How To

You can use *know how to* instead of *can* to talk about a skill (a particular ability that you develop through training or practice).

KNOW HOW TO

They **know how to** speak Portuguese.

She **doesn't know how to** drive a car.

CAN

They **can** speak Portuguese.

She **can't** drive a car.

We do not use *know how to* to talk about abilities that do not require training or practice. We use *can* instead.

CAN

Hurricanes **can** cause damage.

*Hurricanes **know how to** cause damage. (INCORRECT)

The doctor **can** see you now.

*The doctor **knows how to** see you now. (INCORRECT)

C6 Talking About Skills

- A. Ask your classmates questions to find out who has the skills on the list. Ask four questions with *can* and four questions with *know how to*.

1. do the tango
(or other dance)

Can you do the tango? OR
Do you know how to do the tango?

2. change a tire

3. use a computer

4. sew on a button

5. play the guitar
(or other instrument)

6. play baseball

7. speak French

8. drive a motorcycle



- B. Work in small groups. Talk about your classmates' abilities. Use *can* and *know how to*.

Carlos can do the tango, but Mei Ling can't. OR
Carlos knows how to do the tango, but Mei Ling doesn't.

D

Modals of Future Possibility

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. He might walk again.
 - b. He has the strength of one hundred men.
 - c. Researchers may find a cure.
1. Which sentences contain modals? Underline them. Which sentence contains a verb in the simple present?
 2. Change all the sentences to negative statements. How are the negative statements with modals different from the negative statement in the simple present?

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	might may could will	leave	tomorrow.
You			
He			
They			

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	might not may not won't	leave	tomorrow.
You			
He			
They			

与助动词同用, 不用 can 过去式等

Yes/No Questions
FUTURE FORM
Are you going to leave next weekend?
Will you leave next weekend?
Are you leaving next weekend?

Short Answers	
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
I may.	I may not.
I might.	I might not.
I could.	I may not. / I might not.

(Continued on page 168)

may ⇒ might
 动词 过去式

D2 Forming Affirmative and Negative Statements

A. Form affirmative statements from these words and phrases. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. fail/the/I/might/test

I might fail the test.

2. game/you/win/next/could/the/Saturday

3. might/Bob and Carol/married/get/year/next

4. rain/could/tomorrow/it

5. tonight/cook/Sara/dinner/will

6. on/we/go/may/Sunday/beach/the/to

7. will/Yuji/at six o'clock/come

8. have/Kim and Josh/a/party/might

9. Lynn/graduate/could/next semester

10. stay/may/home/Victor/next weekend

B. In your notebook, rewrite the sentences as negative statements. Which three sentences cannot be made negative? Why? Discuss your answers with a partner.

I might not fail the test.

E Future Possibility

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- Ana could leave tomorrow, or she could leave today.
- Ana will leave tomorrow. She's ready to go.
- Ana may leave tomorrow. She's ready to go, but it depends on the weather.
- Maybe Ana will leave tomorrow. I'm not certain.
- Ana might leave tomorrow. I'm not sure.

Which sentence is the most certain? Which sentences are less certain?

Meaning and Use Notes

Expressing Future Possibility with *Could*, *Might*, and *May*

Handwritten notes:
 certain / may
 uncertain / could / might

1A *Could*, *might* (not), and *may* (not) express possibility about the future. *Could* and *might* sometimes express more uncertainty than *may*.

I **could** get an A or a B in the course. It depends on my final paper.
 I **may** take history next semester. It seems like a good idea.

1B You can talk about future possibility and future ability together with *might/may* (not) + *be able to*. You cannot use *might/may* (not) + *can*.

It's already April, but I **might be able to go** skiing one more time.

If I learn to speak Portuguese, I **may be able to get** a job in Brazil. *EB*

*If I learn to speak Portuguese, I may can get a job in Brazil. (INCORRECT)

1C Do not confuse *may be* and *maybe*. *May be* is the modal *may* and the verb *be*. *Maybe* is an adverb. It comes at the beginning of a sentence, and it is written as one word. *Maybe* can be used with *will* to express future possibility.

May be (*Modal + Be*)

Maybe (*Adverb*)

We **may be** away next week. = **Maybe** we'll be away next week.

- 1D Use *will* in *Yes/No* questions about future possibility. You can use *might* but it will sound overly formal. Do not use *may*.

Will

Will he come home soon?

Might/May

Might he come home soon? (OVERLY FORMAL)

*May he come home soon? (INCORRECT)

Expressing Strong Certainty with *Will*

- 2 Use *will* when you are certain about something. If you are not certain, you can weaken *will* by adding the adverbs *probably*, *maybe*, and *perhaps*.

Certain

They'll **move** in the summer.

She'll **find** a new job.

Not Certain

They'll **probably move** in the summer.

Maybe she'll find a new job.

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2

 Listen to the conversation. Check (✓) the places that Mark and Dan are definitely going to see on their trip to Florida. Put a question mark (?) next to the places that they aren't sure about.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1. Disney World | <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Miami Beach |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 2. Epcot Center | <input type="checkbox"/> 5. the Everglades |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Cape Canaveral | <input type="checkbox"/> 6. Key West |



The Colony Hotel, Miami Beach

E2 Using Modals for Future Possibility

► Notes 1-2

Complete this conversation by choosing the appropriate word or phrase in parentheses.

A: So what's your daughter Lisa going to do this summer?

B: She's not sure, but she (could / ¹ll) probably work for an architect. What's your son going to do? (Will / May) ² he have the same job as last summer?

A: He isn't sure. He (might / 'll) ³ work in a movie theater again. But there aren't many jobs available, so he (couldn't / might not) ⁴ find one.

B: They (can / might) ⁵ be able to give him a job at my office. I'll speak to my boss. (Maybe / May be) ⁶ there will be an opening.

A: Oh, thank you! That (maybe / may be) ⁷ a better way for him to spend the summer. I (can / 'll) ⁸ probably be able to convince him to apply.

E3 Contrasting *May Be* and *Maybe*

► Notes 1C, 2

Rewrite each sentence in your notebook. If the sentence uses *maybe*, rewrite it with *may be*. If it uses *may be*, rewrite it with *maybe*. Make all other necessary changes.

1. Lee's family *may be* in town next week.

Maybe Lee's family will be in town next week.

2. *Maybe* the weather will be better on the weekend.

3. *Maybe* we'll be able to get tickets to the baseball game.

4. This *may be* an exciting game.

5. *Maybe* they won't be home this evening.

6. The final exam *may not be* very difficult.

7. He *may be* stuck in traffic.

8. *Maybe* they'll be able to help us clean the attic.

- A. Use your imagination to complete these conversations. Use a modal of future possibility and a verb.

Conversation 1

A: What are your roommates going to do tonight?

B: I don't know. They might go to the movies¹, but they
may stay home and watch the game on TV².

Conversation 2

A: Can you come to Europe with us this summer?

B: I don't have much money, but I _____¹.

Conversation 3

A: Tomorrow's Monday again! I don't want to go to school!

B: _____¹. Then we won't have to go
to school.

Conversation 4

A: What are we having for dinner tonight?

B: We have a couple of choices. We _____¹, or we
_____².

Conversation 5

A: Where will you go on your next vacation?

B: I'm not sure. _____².

- B. With a partner, write two more short conversations about these situations. Use *could*, *might (not)*, *may (not)*, *maybe*, *will*, *won't*, or *be able to*.

A student asks a teacher about finishing a paper late.

A reporter asks an athlete about the next Olympics.

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: At that time, she could speak Japanese like a native.

check
B: _____

a. Maybe she can teach me.

b. How did she learn it?

2. A: He won't be able to leave the hospital for a long time.

B: _____

a. Who's going to take care of him at home?

b. I'll try to visit him every day.

3. A: The whole house is clean.

B: _____

a. It's amazing that you were able to do it by yourself.

b. Who could help you?

4. A: We couldn't find a babysitter, so we stayed home.

B: _____

a. Well, you made the right decision.

b. I'm glad that you were able to.

5. A: We might go out to dinner tonight.

B: _____

a. OK. I was able to meet you there.

b. Where do you think you'll go?

6. A: Do you know how to swim?

B: _____

- a. Yes, but not very well.
- b. No, it's too cold today.

7. A: Were you able to go to the meeting last night?

B: _____

- a. Yes, I could.
- b. Yes, I was.

8. A: What will you be able to do after this English class?

B: _____

- a. I'll be able to speak English more fluently.
- b. I can speak English more fluently.

F2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

My friend Josh might ~~take~~ us to the beach this weekend. The beach isn't far from his house. Josh can to walk there. He is a great swimmer. He could swim when he was three years old! My roommate Nicole doesn't know to swim, so I will probably teach her this weekend. Nicole will able to swim by the end of the summer if she practices every day. May be we'll go sailing this weekend, too. Last Saturday Josh and I was able to go sailing because the weather was great. We could see dolphins near the boat. They were beautiful. Unfortunately, we couldn't touch them. If we're lucky, we can see some dolphins at the beach this weekend.



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an English-language newspaper or magazine, or on the Internet for articles dealing with a famous person's plans for the future. Find five examples of sentences containing modals of future possibility: *may*, *might*, or *will*. Can you find any examples of *maybe*? Bring your examples to class. How is each example used? Does it show possibility or certainty about a plan? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow these steps below to write a paragraph about your future after college.

1. Think about the topic. Make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you organize your ideas.
 - What things will you be able to do?
 - What things will you definitely do or not do?
 - What things will you possibly do or not do?
2. Write a first draft. Use modals of future ability and possibility where appropriate.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

After I finish college, I'll probably be able to get a good job. I'll probably look for a job in a bank, but I may not look for a job right away. I could take some more classes at night, but first I might take some time to relax. Maybe I'll go on a vacation. . . .

Modals and Phrases of Request, Permission, Desire, and Preference

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: How <i>Not</i> to Ask for a Raise	178
B. FORM: Modals of Request; Modals of Permission; <i>Would Like</i>, <i>Would Prefer</i>, and <i>Would Rather</i>	180
MODALS OF REQUEST	
Can / Could / Will / Would you close the window?	
MODALS OF PERMISSION	
You can / may borrow my car.	
WOULD LIKE, WOULD PREFER, AND WOULD RATHER	
I would rather leave.	
I would prefer / would like to leave.	
I would prefer / would like some tea.	
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Modals of Request	186
Making Requests	
Agreeing to and Refusing Requests	
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Modals of Permission	190
Asking for Permission	
Giving and Refusing Permission	
E. MEANING AND USE 3: <i>Would Like</i>, <i>Would Prefer</i>, and <i>Would Rather</i>	193
Stating Desires and Making Requests with <i>Would Like</i>	
Making Offers with <i>Would Like</i>	
Accepting and Refusing Offers with <i>Thank You</i>	
Stating Preferences with <i>Would Like</i> , <i>Would Prefer</i> , and <i>Would Rather</i>	
F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	197

A

How *Not* to Ask for a Raise

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Have you ever asked for a raise (an increase in pay)? How did you ask? What did your boss say? What are some good ways to ask for a raise?

A2 Read

 Read this book excerpt to find out about good and bad ways to ask for a raise.

How *Not* to Ask for a Raise

A Case Study

As the manager of her own company, Rachel Franz has been asked for raises by many employees. Sometimes she has agreed and sometimes she
5 hasn't. Franz's decision is often influenced by how an employee asks. Here is a typical request for a raise. Find the mistakes that the employee makes in this situation.



- 10 **Robert:** Ms. Franz, could I speak to you for a few minutes?
Ms. Franz: Can we talk another time? It looks like we have a big problem with our computer system and . . .
Robert: I would rather talk to you now, if possible. It will only take a few minutes.
Ms. Franz: Well, OK, come in.
- 15 **Robert:** I don't know if you know this, but I'm getting married next month.
Ms. Franz: No, I didn't know that, Robert. Congratulations!
Robert: Thank you. Of course, getting married is quite expensive. Would you consider giving me a raise?

成績 回顧討論
20 **Ms. Franz:** Well, Robert, your performance review is coming up in six months. I would like to wait until your review.

Robert: But six months is a long time. Could we discuss a raise sooner?

Ms. Franz: We usually don't give raises between reviews, Robert. Now please excuse me. I have to find out about this computer problem. Can you please ask Kristen to come into my office when you leave?

Analysis

25 Robert made several errors. First of all, it is best to make an appointment with your boss in advance. Second, try to speak to your boss when things are going well, not badly. Listen when your boss says that it isn't a good time to talk, and arrange to speak to him or her later. Third, give your boss a good reason to give you a raise. Explain that you have more responsibilities at work now, or that you are working
30 longer hours. Show your boss how important you are to the company, not how badly you need the money. Last, do your homework. Robert didn't know that the company doesn't give raises between reviews. Robert didn't get a raise, and he has probably hurt his chances of getting one in the future!

Adapted from *Executive Female*

consider: to think about

do your homework: to prepare for something by finding out important information

influence: to have an effect on someone's behavior
影响, 作用

performance review: a meeting in which a boss and an employee discuss the employee's work

responsibilities: things that you must do as part of your job
职责, 任务

A3 After You Read

The writer says that Robert made several errors. Check (✓) the four errors that Robert made, according to the Analysis in the book excerpt.

- 1. Robert didn't make an appointment with his boss in advance.
- 2. Robert didn't speak politely to his boss.
- 3. Robert chose a bad time to speak to his boss.
- 4. Robert walked into his boss's office without her permission.
- 5. Robert didn't have a good reason for his boss to give him a raise.
- 6. Robert didn't know the company rules about raises before he spoke to his boss.

B

Modals of Request; Modals of Permission; *Would Like, Would Prefer, and Would Rather*

Examining Form

Look back at the conversation in the book excerpt on page 178 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. Find questions with the modals *can*, *could*, and *would*. (An example is underlined.) What is the subject of each question? What form of the verb follows the subject?
2. Find the expressions *would rather* and *would like*. Which one is followed by the base form of the verb? Which one is followed by an infinitive (*to* + verb)?

MODALS OF REQUEST

Yes/No Questions			
MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Can	you	close	the window?
Could			
Will		give	me a raise?
Would			

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	MODAL	NO	SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT
Yes,	I	can.	No,	I	can't.
		will.			won't.

- Modals of request are usually used in questions with *you*.
- We usually use *can* and *will* in affirmative short answers. *Could* and *would* are less common.
- We usually avoid using *won't* in negative short answers because it sounds very impolite and angry.

MODALS OF PERMISSION

Affirmative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
You	can	borrow	my car.
	may		

Negative Statements			
SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
You	cannot can't	borrow	my car.
	may not		

Yes/No Questions			
MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Can	I we	borrow	your car?
Could			
May			

Short Answers					
YES	SUBJECT	MODAL	NO	SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT
		can.			can't.
Yes,	you	may.	No,	you	may not.

Information Questions				
WH- WORD	MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
What	can	I	call	you?
When	could	we	make	a reservation?
Where	may	I	put	my coat?

- Modals of permission are most often used in questions with *I* and *we* and in statements with *you*.
- Use *can* and *may* in statements and short answers. Do not use *could*.
- Use *can*, *could*, and *may* in *Yes/No* questions.
- There is no contracted form of *may not*.

(Continued on page 182)

WOULD LIKE, WOULD PREFER, AND WOULD RATHER

ad. 寧可, 寧願, 寧好

✓ 寧願, 寧好

Affirmative Statements		
SUBJECT	WOULD RATHER	BASE FORM OF VERB
I	would rather	leave.

Negative Statements		
SUBJECT	WOULD RATHER + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB
I	would rather not	leave.

SUBJECT	WOULD PREFER / WOULD LIKE	INFINITIVE OR NOUN PHRASE
I	would prefer	to leave.
	would like	some tea.

SUBJECT	WOULD PREFER + NOT	INFINITIVE
I	would prefer not	to leave.

Yes/No Questions			
WOULD	SUBJECT	RATHER	BASE FORM OF VERB
Would	you	rather	leave?

Short Answers					
YES,	SUBJECT	WOULD	NO,	SUBJECT	WOULD + NOT
Yes,	I	would.	No,	I	wouldn't.

WOULD	SUBJECT	PREFER / LIKE	INFINITIVE or NOUN PHRASE
Would	you	prefer	to leave?
		like	some tea?

YES,	SUBJECT	WOULD	NO,	SUBJECT	WOULD + NOT
Yes,	I	would.	No,	I	wouldn't.

Information Questions				
WH- WORD	WOULD	SUBJECT	RATHER	BASE FORM OF VERB
What	would	you	rather	eat?

WH- WORD	WOULD	SUBJECT	PREFER / LIKE	INFINITIVE
What	would	you	prefer	to eat?
			like	

may not 不可
contract v.
contraction.

would not
⇒ wouldn't

- *Would rather* is similar to a modal verb. It is followed by the base form of the verb.
- Unlike modals, *would like* and *would prefer* are followed by the infinitive (*to + verb*). They can also be followed by a noun phrase.
- *Would like* is not usually used in negative statements. Use *don't/doesn't want* instead.
I **don't want** to leave. I **don't want** tea.
- For contractions with *would*, combine the subject pronoun + 'd.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these conversations. Write the form of the modals you hear.

- A: Kevin, will₁ you start dinner? I'm going shopping.

B: Hmm . . . ₂ you get some chocolate ice cream?

A: I ₃ buy more ice cream. You know we're both on a diet.
- A: ₁ I speak with Mrs. Thompson, please?

B: No, I'm sorry. She's in a meeting. ₂ you call back in an hour?
- A: ₁ you ₂ a cup of coffee?

B: No, thanks. I ₃ a cup of tea.
- A: I ₁ to go to the beach with my friends this weekend, but I don't have any money. ₂ I borrow \$50?

B: No, you ₃. You already owe me \$100!

B2 Building Questions with Modals

Build eight logical questions. Use a word or phrase from each column.

Can I come with you?

can	I you	give	to leave now
could		come	with you
would		prefer	me a ride
		like	eat later
		rather	some coffee

kalam/ n. 專欄, 柱, 圓柱

Can you give me a ride?

Could you prefer some coffee?

Can I come with you?

Would you like to leave now?

Would you rather eat later?

Would you like some coffee?

B3 Completing Conversations

Complete these conversations using the words in parentheses. Use contractions where possible. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

1. **Guard:** Excuse me, sir. The sign says visitors may not take
1

(not/take/may/visitors) pictures inside the museum.

Visitor: Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't see it. _____
2

(leave/I/can/where) my camera?

2. **Salesclerk:** _____ (I/help/may) you?
1

Customer: Yes. I'm looking for a birthday gift for my boyfriend.

_____ (like/I/get/would/to) him
2

something special.

3. **Visitor:** _____ (I/park/can) here?
1

Guard: No, I'm sorry. _____ (can/visitors/park/not) in
2

this section.

4. **Husband:** _____ (you/will/answer) the phone, please?
1

My hands are wet.

Wife: Sorry, _____ (I/not/can). I'm busy. They can
2

leave a message on the answering machine.

5. **Father:** _____ (you/go/would/like/to) skiing with us this
1
weekend?

Daughter: No, thanks. _____ (rather/I/stay/would) home.
2

6. **Waitress:** _____ (order/like/you/would/to) now?
1

Customer: Yes, I'll have the broiled chicken.

Waitress: _____ (you/would/prefer) soup or salad as an appetizer?
2

B4 Working on Negative Sentences

Write the negative form of each sentence. Use contractions where possible. Remember to avoid the negative form of *would like*.

1. I would rather stay home tonight.

I'd rather not stay home tonight.

2. We would prefer to exercise in the morning.

3. I would like to call you later.

4. They would rather live in the suburbs.

5. He would prefer to buy a new computer.

6. He would like to finish his work now.

B5 Writing Short Conversations

In your notebook, write short conversations with information questions and answers using these words and phrases. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. where/would rather/live/in Hong Kong/in New York City

A: *Where would you rather live, in Hong Kong or in New York City?*

B: *I'd rather live in Hong Kong.*

2. who/would prefer/meet/a famous athlete/a famous writer

3. where/would like/eat dinner tonight/at home/in a restaurant

4. what/would rather/do tonight/watch TV/go out

5. how/would rather/ travel/by car/by plane

6. what/would like/buy/a laptop computer/a digital camera

7. what/would rather/eat/cookies/cake

8. where/would prefer/live/in a big city/in a small town

C

Modals of Request

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- Will you open the door?
- Would you open the door, please?
- Can you open the door, please?

Which request is the most polite? Which request is the least polite?

Meaning and Use Notes

Making Requests

- 1A** Use *can*, *could*, *will*, and *would* to make requests. *Can* and *will* are less formal than *could* and *would*. We usually use *can* and *will* in informal conversations with friends and family. We use *could* and *would* to make polite requests in formal situations when we speak to strangers or to people in authority.

Less Formal

To a Friend: **Can** you tell me the time?

Mother to Child: **Will** you be quiet?

More Formal

To a Stranger: **Could** you tell me the time?

To a Boss: **Would** you look at my report?

Add *please* to a request to make it more polite.

- 1B** Can you tell me the time, **please**? Would you **please** look over my report?

Agreeing to and Refusing Requests

- 2A** Use *will* and *can* to agree to requests. Do not use *would* or *could*. We generally use *can't* to refuse a request. *Won't* is used for strong refusals, and sounds impolite.

Agreeing to a Request

A: Will you help me for a minute?

B: **Yes, I will.**

A: **Could** you spell your name for me?

B: **Yes, I can.** It's C-L-A-R-K-E.

Refusing a Request

A: **Can** you help me decorate for the party?

B: Sorry. I **can't** right now. (polite)

A: Holly, will you clean up this room?

B: **No, I won't.** (impolite)

If will.
can.
I can't.

2B Instead of *can* or *will*, we often use expressions such as **OK, sure, or certainly** when agreeing to a request.

A: Will you help me for a minute?

B: **OK.**

A: Could you spell your name for me?

B: **Sure.** It's C-L-A-R-K-E.

2C We often say *I'm sorry* and give a reason in order to make our refusal more polite.

A: Can you help me decorate for the party?

B: **I'm sorry, but I can't right now. I have a doctor's appointment.**

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B

A.  Listen to each conversation. Is the request you hear informal or formal? Check (✓) the correct column.

	INFORMAL	FORMAL
1.	✓	
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

B.  Listen to the conversations again. Who are the speakers? Look at the choices, and write the correct letter for each conversation. Then discuss your answers with your classmates.

- b a. wife and husband
- b. mother and daughter
- c. two strangers
- d. two friends
- e. student and teacher
- f. employee and boss

A. Choose the best response to complete each telephone conversation.

1. **Student:** Could you connect me with Professor Hill's office?

Secretary: _____

a. No, I won't. He's busy.

(b.) I'm sorry. He's not in right now. Would you like to leave a message?

2. **Secretary:** Good morning, History Department.

Student: I'd like to register for History 201. Is it still open?

Secretary: _____

a. Yes. Give me your name.

b. Yes, it is. Could you give me your name, please?

3. **Jenny's friend:** Will you please tell Jenny that I called?

Jenny's sister: _____

a. No, I won't. I'm going out.

b. I won't be here when she gets home, but I'll leave her a note.

4. **Mark's friend:** Hi. Is Mark there?

Mark's brother: _____

a. Sure. Can you hold on a minute?

b. Certainly. Would you hold, please?

5. **Client:** Would you please ask Ms. Banes to call me this afternoon?

Secretary: _____

a. I'm sorry, but she's out of the office until next week.

b. Sorry, I can't.

6. **Student:** Could you send me some information about scholarships?

Secretary: _____

a. Certainly.

b. No, I can't. That's impossible right now.

B. Discuss your answers with a partner. Why did you choose each response? Why was the other response inappropriate?

C. Now practice the conversations with your partner.

C3 Making Formal and Informal Requests

► Notes 1A, 1B

A. Work with a partner. Complete the requests with *can*, *will*, *could*, or *would*. (More than one answer is possible for each situation.)

1. Neighbor A: Can you take in our mail while we're away?

Neighbor B: I'm sorry, but I can't. I'll be away then, too.

2. Young Woman: Excuse me, officer. _____ you please help me?

Police Officer: Of course. What's the problem?

3. Parent: _____ you help me for a minute?

Child: OK.

4. Customer: _____ you put that in a box, please?

Salesclerk: I'm sorry, ma'am. I don't have any boxes.

5. Employee: When you get a chance, _____ you please show me how to use this new computer program?

Manager: Certainly. How about right now?

B. Work with a different partner. Compare your answers. Be prepared to explain the modals you choose.

C4 Agreeing to and Refusing Requests

► Notes 1-2

Work with a partner. Read each situation. Then take turns making and responding to requests. Use *can*, *will*, *could*, or *would* in your requests. Use expressions such as *OK*, *sure*, *certainly*, and *I'm sorry* in your responses, and give reasons for refusals.

1. You are at a supermarket. You want the cashier to give you change for a dollar.

A: *Could you give me change for a dollar, please?*

B: *Certainly.*

OR

I'm sorry. The manager doesn't allow us to make change.

2. You are moving to a new apartment. You want your friend to help you move.

3. You would like your friend to lend you \$50 until next week.

4. You are on vacation. You want the hotel desk clerk to give you a larger room.

5. You missed class yesterday, and you want your classmate to lend you her notes.

6. You would like your mechanic to repair your car by the end of the week.

D

Modals of Permission

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

1a. Can I look at your book?

2a. May I borrow your book?

1b. Can you speak Russian?

2b. Can I borrow your book?

- Look at 1a and 1b. Which question asks for permission to do something? Which question asks about ability?
- Look at 2a and 2b. Which question is more formal?

Meaning and Use Notes

Asking for Permission

1A Use *can*, *could*, and *may* to ask for permission. *Can* and *could* are less formal than *may*. We usually use *may* in formal situations when we speak to strangers or to people in authority. You can use *please* to make your request more polite.

Less Formal

Child to Parent: Can I go outside and play now?

Friend to Friend: Could I borrow your pen for a minute?

More Formal

Business Call: A: May I speak to Ms. Jones, please?

B: Certainly. May I ask who's calling?

1B Because *may* is more formal, it is often used in announcements and signs or other printed materials. 通知, 告示, 标志, 告示

Announcement: Flight 26 has arrived. Passengers may proceed to Gate 2B for boarding.

Sign: Visitors may not park in numbered spaces.

Giving and Refusing Permission

2A Use *may/may not* or *can/can't* to give or refuse permission. Do not use *could*.

Giving Permission

A: **Could** I hand in my homework tomorrow?

B: **Yes, you may.** Just put it on my desk.

Refusing Permission

A: **Could** I hand in my homework tomorrow?

B: **No, you can't.** It's due today.

2B Instead of answering with *can* or *may*, we often use expressions such as *sure*, *go (right) ahead*, or *certainly* when giving permission. 在評. 認可.

A: Can I use the computer now?

B: **Sure.** I'm finished with it.

A: Could I turn on the radio?

B: **Go right ahead.**

2C We often say *I'm sorry* and give a reason to make a refusal sound more polite.

A: Could I hand in my homework tomorrow?

B: **I'm sorry, but you can't. It's due today.**

到期的
正當的

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B

 Listen to these conversations. In each, the first speaker is asking for permission. Who is the second speaker? Look at the choices and write the correct letter for each conversation.

1. d a. a boss
2. _____ b. a stranger
3. _____ c. a mother
4. _____ d. a friend
5. _____ e. a police officer
6. _____ f. a salesclerk
7. _____ g. a brother
8. _____ h. a teacher

D2 Asking For Permission

► Notes 1A

Look at the pictures. Make sentences to ask permission. Use informal and formal modals as appropriate.



May I look at your map?



D3 Asking For and Giving or Refusing Permission

► Notes 1-2

Work with a partner. Take turns asking for and giving or refusing permission in these situations. Use *can*, *may*, or *could* in your questions. Use expressions such as *sure*, *go (right) ahead*, *certainly*, and *I'm sorry* in your responses.

1. You need to use your classmate's pencil.
A: *Can I use your pencil for a minute?*
B: *Sure. Here you are.*
2. You want to rent an apartment. The landlord shows it to you at night. You want to see it again in the daytime.
3. You want to borrow your friend's car this afternoon.
4. You are hungry, and your roommate has some leftover pizza in the refrigerator.
5. You are buying gas. You want to pay by check.

E

Would Like, Would Prefer, and Would Rather**Examining Meaning and Use**

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

1a. I want the check now.

2a. Do you like ice cream?

1b. I'd like the check, please.

2b. Would you like ice cream?

- Compare 1a and 1b. Which sounds more polite?
- Compare 2a and 2b. Which is an offer? Which asks about likes or dislikes?

Meaning and Use Notes**Stating Desires and Making Requests with *Would Like***

- 1A** *Would like* has **the same meaning** as *want*. It is often used to talk about desires.

Stating a Desire with Would Like

I'd like to go to China next year. (= **I want to** go to China next year.) = **I want to** (x) I'd like to (polite)

- 1B** *Would like* is also used to make requests. In making requests, *would like* is more polite than *want*. Add *please* to make the request even more polite.

Making a Request with Would Like

I'd like the check, please. *I want the check. (not polite)

Making Offers with *Would Like*

- 2** Use *would like* in a question to make a polite offer.

A: **Would you like** some coffee?

B: Yes, please. With milk and sugar.

- !** Be careful not to confuse *would like* and *like*.

Would Like (to Make an Offer)

A: **Would you like** some coffee?

B: Yes, please. With milk and sugar.

Like (to Ask About Likes and Dislikes)

A: Do you **like** coffee?

B: Yes, I do. I drink it every morning.

(Continued on page 194)

Accepting and Refusing Offers with Thank You

- 3 Use *thank you* to accept and refuse offers. We often give a reason to make our refusal more polite.

Accepting an Offer

A: Would you like a seat?

B: Yes, **thank you**.

Refusing an Offer

A: Would you like a seat?

B: No, **thanks**. I'm getting off at the next stop.

Stating Preferences with Would Like, Would Prefer, and Would Rather

- 4A Use *would like*, *would prefer*, or *would rather* to ask about and state preferences.

A: **Would you**

like to
prefer to
rather

 (walk home) or (take the bus)?

B: I'd like to walk.

C: I'd rather take the bus. It's too far to walk.

- 4B Use *would rather* with *than* to compare two actions.

I'd rather walk **than** take the bus.

I'd rather play basketball **than** (play) football.

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1, 2, 4A, 4B

 Listen to each statement. Is the speaker making a request, making an offer, or stating a preference? Check (✓) the correct column.

	REQUEST	OFFER	PREFERENCE
1.	✓		
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			

E2 Making Offers and Stating Preferences

► Notes 2, 3, 4A

Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and take turns making offers, asking about preferences, and responding appropriately. Use *would like*, *would prefer*, or *would rather*.



A: *Would you like some help?*

B: *Yes, thank you. OR*

No, thanks. I can carry them myself.



E3 Asking About and Stating Preferences

► Notes 4A, 4B

Work with a partner. Read each situation. Take turns asking and answering questions with *would prefer*, *would rather*, and *would like*.

1. You and your friend are making plans for the evening. You could see a movie, or you could go to a concert.

A: *Would you rather see a movie or go to a concert?*

B: *I'd rather see a movie.*

OR

A: *Would you prefer to see a movie or go to a concert?*

B: *I'd prefer to go to a concert.*

2. You and your roommate are trying to decide what to eat for dinner: chicken or fish.
3. You need to finish a project by tomorrow. Your boss asks if you want to stay late today or come in early tomorrow.
4. You are making arrangements to travel from Paris to Rome. The travel agent asks you if you want to fly or go by train.
5. You want your roommate to help with the housework. You give him a choice: do the dishes or vacuum.

E4 Discussing Preferences

► Notes 4A-4C

Work with a small group. Look at these winter vacation ideas and choose where you would like to go. Then discuss your preferences by explaining what you would like to do. Use *would prefer*, *would rather*, and *would like*.

1. Mountain resort watch ski competitions, go downhill skiing, go cross-country skiing, hike, watch birds, visit nearby towns
2. Caribbean cruise swim, play volleyball, play tennis, sunbathe, go scuba diving, visit islands, eat fancy buffet dinners
3. Trip to Europe shop, visit art museums, try foreign foods, speak foreign languages, visit cities, see famous buildings, take photographs

I'd prefer to go on a Caribbean cruise because I'd rather be in the tropics than in the mountains. Once I get there, I'd rather play tennis than volleyball. I'd also like to go scuba diving, but I prefer not to eat fancy buffet dinners. I'm on a diet!

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A: Could you help me?
B: I'm sorry. ____
a. I didn't have the time.
b. I'm busy right now. | 4. A: Do you like to dance?
B: ____
a. Not really.
b. Yes. I'd love to. |
| 2. A: Could I borrow your car later?
B: No, I'm sorry, but ____.
a. you can't
b. you couldn't | 5. A: Could you give me a ride to work?
B: Sure, ____.
a. no problem
b. no way |
| 3. A: Would you help me choose a present for my wife?
B: ____
a. Yes, I may
b. Certainly. | 6. A: Would you rather go to the party or stay home?
B: ____
a. Yes, I would.
b. I'd rather stay home tonight. |

F2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I would rather ^{have} an apple.
^ | 5. Where you prefer to go this weekend? |
| 2. You could not borrow my van next week. _{借車行去} | 6. I'd rather not to go now. |
| 3. May we leave now? | 7. She'd like learn to drive. |
| 4. You mayn't leave until the exam is over. | 8. What would you rather do tonight? |

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Watch an English-language television program or movie. Listen for examples of people making requests, asking for permission, expressing their desires, or stating their preferences. Write down three examples and bring them to class. Which examples are more formal and polite? Which are less formal and less polite? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Follow these steps to present a role-play to your class.

1. In pairs, write a dialogue for one of the situations below. Use modals of request, permission, desire, and preference where appropriate.
 - an employee asking for a raise
 - a shy man asking a woman out for a first date
 - a teenager asking parents for permission to have a party
2. Act out the dialogue for your classmates.

Lee: Uh, excuse me, Mrs. Smith, could I ask you something?

Mrs. Smith: Yes, Lee. What would you like to discuss?



Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice, Necessity, and Prohibition

1, pro^(x) b I fan / 禁止, 禁令

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Rules	200
B. FORM: Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice, Necessity, and Prohibition	202
MODALS OF ADVICE, NECESSITY, AND PROHIBITION	
You could / might / should / must buy a gift.	
You must not buy a gift.	
PHRASAL MODALS OF ADVICE AND NECESSITY	
You have to / have got to call him.	
I ought to call him.	
Informally Speaking: Reduced Forms of <i>Ought To</i> , <i>Has To</i> , <i>Have To</i> , and <i>Have Got To</i>	207
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice	208
Weak and Strong Advice	
Suggestions with <i>Could</i> and <i>Might</i>	
Advice with <i>Should</i> and <i>Ought To</i>	
Warnings with <i>Had Better</i>	
Strong Advice with <i>Have To</i> , <i>Have Got To</i> , and <i>Must</i>	
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Modals of Necessity and Prohibition	214
Necessity	
Lack of Necessity and Prohibition	
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	218

A

The Rules

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you think it is important to get married? Why or why not? How do men and women meet and marry in your culture?

A2 Read

Read the on-line book review about dating on the following page. Would you buy the book?

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- 1. *The Rules* is written for women.
- 2. According to *The Rules*, a woman should call a man on the phone.
- 3. According to *The Rules*, a man should buy a woman a romantic gift for her birthday.
- 4. According to the writer of the book review, women should play games to make men fall in love with them.
- 5. The writer of the book review agrees with the advice in *The Rules*.

BUNDLES OF BOOKS

[Home](#)
[Search](#)
[Contact](#)

Book Review



Are these two playing by *The Rules*?

dating a man if he doesn't buy her a romantic gift for special occasions such as Valentine's Day or her birthday.

Ellen Fein and Sherrie Schneider, the authors, say that all women who want to get married have to follow these rules. However, I believe that women should not follow the advice in this book—women who do will end up alone or married to the wrong man.

In my opinion, any woman who follows this advice had better buy a copy of the book for her boyfriend. If she doesn't, how will he know the rules? Women don't have to play games to make men fall in love with them. I believe that a man and a woman ought to know each other very well before they get married. How can two people get to know each other when one of them is following a set of artificial rules?

Reviewed by Janice Harper

The Rules

Ellen Fein and Sherrie Schneider

An unexpected best-seller, this is a self-help book for women who want to find their ideal man. The basic idea of *The Rules* is that women must play hard to get. For example, *The Rules* states that a woman must not call a man on the phone, ask him to dance, or begin a conversation. She must refuse a date for Saturday if the invitation comes after Wednesday. Further, the authors say that a woman should stop

artificial: not natural

get to know: to spend time with someone and learn about him or her

play games: to behave dishonestly in order to get what you want

play hard to get: to try to attract someone by pretending that you aren't interested in him or her

Valentine's Day: a day (February 14) when people send cards to the people they love

B

Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice, Necessity, and Prohibition

Examining Form

Look back at the review on page 201 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. An example of the modal *must* is underlined. Find another example. What form of the verb follows *must*?
2. Find an example of the modal *should*. What form of the verb follows it?
3. Find an example of each of these phrasal modals: *have to*, *ought to*, and *had better*. What form of the verb follows each of them?
4. Find the negative forms of *must*, *should*, and *have to*. How is the negative form of *have to* different from the negative forms of *should* and *must*?

MODALS OF ADVICE, NECESSITY, AND PROHIBITION

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
You	could might should must	buy	a gift.
He			
They			

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
You	should not shouldn't must not	buy	a gift.
He			
They			

Yes/No Questions

MODAL	SUBJECT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Should	I	buy	a gift?

Short Answers

YES	SUBJECT	MODAL	NO	SUBJECT	MODAL + NOT
Yes,	you	should.	No,	you	shouldn't.

Information Questions

WH- WORD	MODAL	SUBJECT	VERB	
Where	should	we	go	for dinner?

shall 应该

- Could, might, should, and must are used to give advice. Should and must are also used to express necessity. Must not is used to express prohibition.
- Like all modals, *could, might, should, and must* are followed by the base form of the verb and have the same form for all subjects.
- The contracted form *mustn't* is not usually used in American English. *must not* *may not* *shouldn't*
- Do not use couldn't in negative statements of advice.
- *Could, might, and must* are not usually used in questions of advice.
- We usually use have to (see below) instead of must in questions of necessity. *must = have to.*

PHRASAL MODALS OF ADVICE AND NECESSITY

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	PHRASAL MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	<u>have to</u> <u>have got to</u> → 比 have to 更强烈	call	him.
She	has to has got to		
They	have to have got to		

CONTRACTIONS			
I've	got to	call	him.
She's			

I have
She has

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	DO/DOES + NOT	PHRASAL MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	<u>do not</u> <u>don't</u>	have to	call	him.
She	does not doesn't			
They	do not don't			

CONTRACTIONS				
I	don't	have to	call	him.
She	doesn't			

Affirmative Statements

SUBJECT	PHRASAL MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	<u>ought to</u> <u>had better</u>	call	him.
She			
They			

CONTRACTIONS			
I'd better	call	him.	

I had
had better

Negative Statements

SUBJECT	PHRASAL MODAL + NOT	BASE FORM OF VERB	
I	<u>had better not</u>	call	him.
She			
They			

CONTRACTIONS			
I'd better not	call	him.	

(Continued on page 204)

Yes/No Questions

DO/DOES	SUBJECT	PHRASAL MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB	
Do	I	have to	call	him?
Does	she			
Do	they			

Short Answers

YES	SUBJECT	DO/DOES	NO	SUBJECT	DO/DOES + NOT
Yes,	you	do.	No,	you	don't.
	she	does.		she	doesn't.
	they	do.		they	don't.

Information Questions

WH- WORD	DO/DOES	SUBJECT	PHRASAL MODAL	BASE FORM OF VERB
Who	do	I	have to	pay?
What				
When	does	she		
Why				

- *Have to, have got to, ought to, and had better* are used to give advice. *Have to* and *have got to* are also used to express necessity.
- Unlike other phrasal modals, *have to* and *have got to* have different forms for the third-person singular.
- *Had better* looks like a past form, but isn't. It is used to talk about the present and the future.

You'd better call him now. We'd better leave tomorrow.

- In spoken English, we usually use contracted forms of *had better* and *have got to*. The contracted form of *had* for all persons is 'd. *Have to* does not have a contracted form.
You'd better call him. You've got to call him *You've to call him. (INCORRECT)
- We do not usually use *have got to* or *ought to* in negative statements or in questions.
- We do not usually use *had better* in questions.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences. Circle the modal forms you hear.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. should | 5. a. have to |
| b. shouldn't | b. don't have to |
| 2. a. has to | 6. a. should |
| b. doesn't have to | b. shouldn't |
| 3. a. We'd better | 7. a. You've got to |
| b. We'd better not | b. You have to |
| 4. a. must | 8. a. have got to |
| b. must not | b. have to |

B2 Working on Questions

A. Rewrite these statements as *Yes/No* questions.

1. He should buy a new car. Should he buy a new car?
2. We have to eat at 12. _____
3. They should bring a gift. _____
4. She has to go to class today. _____
5. You have to get a new passport. _____
6. He should see a doctor. _____

B. Write an information question about each underlined word or phrase.

1. Susan should give us the money. Who should give us the money?
2. He has to write a paper for his history class. _____
3. You have to stay in the hospital for two days. _____
4. We should go to the gym on Monday. _____
5. They have to take this form to the Registration Office. _____
6. You should talk to the professor after the class. _____

B3 Writing Contracted Forms

Rewrite these sentences with contractions where possible. If you cannot use a contraction in a sentence, write *No contraction possible*.

1. You had better tell her the truth. You'd better tell her the truth.
2. You have to look for a better job. _____
3. She ought to see a doctor. _____
4. He has got to study more. _____
5. You should not wear jeans to work. _____
6. She has to spend more time with the kids. _____
7. You had better not argue with him. _____
8. You have got to take a trip to the Caribbean! _____
9. He should not waste any more time. _____
10. You do not have to call. _____

B4 Writing Negative Statements

Rewrite these affirmative statements as negative statements. Use contractions where possible.

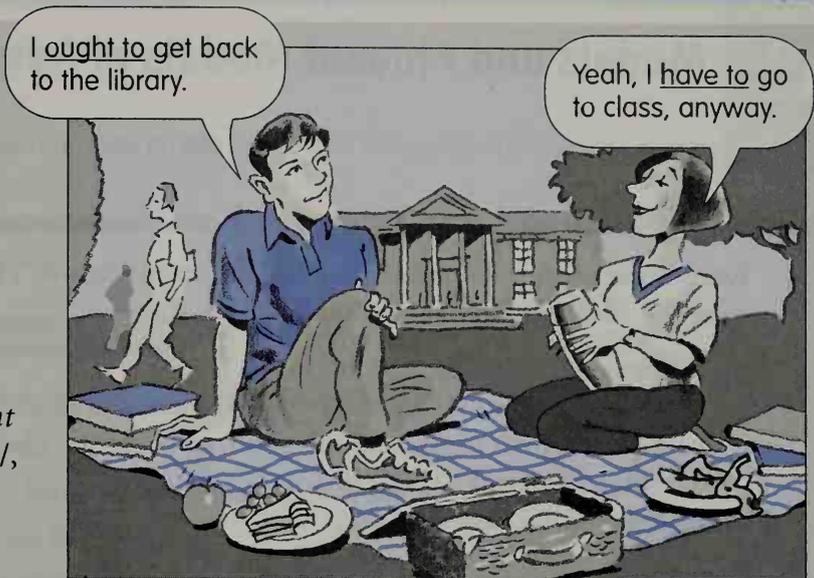
1. You should ask him to dance. You shouldn't ask him to dance.
2. Jake has to do his homework now. _____
3. Visitors must park here. _____
4. You had better tell your roommate the news. _____
5. Employees have to attend the sales meeting. _____
6. They should buy their son a car this year. _____
7. You must get on that train. _____
8. You should ask for a raise. _____
9. He had better wait until tomorrow. _____
10. You have to be home early. _____

Informally Speaking

Reduced Forms of Ought To, Has To, Have To, and Have Got To

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?

In informal conversation, *ought to* is often pronounced as /'ɔ:tə/, *has to* as /'hæstə/, *have to* as /'hæftə/, and *have got to* as /hæv'gʌtə/ or /'gʌtə/.



STANDARD FORM

I **ought to** go.

She **has to** do the work.

We **have to** see him now.

You've **got to** finish today.

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

"I /'ɔ:tə/ go."

"She /'hæstə/ do the work."

"We /'hæftə/ see him now."

"You've /'gʌtə/ finish today." or "You /'gʌtə/ finish today."

B5 Understanding Informal Speech

 Matt and Linda are getting married today. Listen to their conversations. Write the standard form of the words you hear.

Conversation 1: At Matt's house

Matt: It's 9:00. We ought to₁ leave now.

Friend: The wedding is at 10:00. We don't _____₂ leave until 9:30.

Matt: But we _____₃ be there before the guests arrive.

Conversation 2: Later, at the church

Linda: Where's Matt? He _____₁ come soon! We're getting married in 15 minutes!

Sister: Maybe I _____₂ call him at home.

Father: Don't worry. He'll be here. We _____₃ stay calm and wait.

C

Modals and Phrasal Modals of Advice

Examining Meaning and Use

Read these sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- You ought to take that job.
 - You could take that job now, or you could wait awhile.
 - You had better take that job soon, or someone else will.
 - You have to take that job. You need a job!
 - You should take that job.
- Which two sentences offer advice and have the same meaning?
 - Which sentence expresses the strongest advice?
 - Which sentence makes two suggestions?
 - Which sentence expresses a warning?

Meaning and Use Notes

Weak and Strong Advice

- 1 Use *could*, *might*, *should (not)*, *ought to*, *had better (not)*, *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* to give advice, suggestions, and warnings.

Weak
↑
↓
Strong

- could, might
- should (not), ought to
- had better (not)
- have to, have got to, must

It's Mary's birthday tomorrow.

You **could buy** her flowers.

You **should ask** her what she wants.

You'd **better buy** something before it's too late.

You **have to buy** her that new book.

Suggestions with *Could* and *Might*

- 2 Both *could* and *might* are used to make casual suggestions, especially when there is more than one choice.

If you want to get to know him, you **might** invite him for coffee after class, or you **could** call him.

You **could** meet for lunch or dinner.

Advice with *Should* and *Ought To*

- 3A Use *should (not)* and *ought to* to give advice. *Should (not)* is more common than *ought to*.

You **should get** married in June, when the weather is warm.

You **ought to look** for a new job.

- 3B You can also use *should (not)* and *ought to* in general statements to express a personal opinion about something.

People **shouldn't** drive when they're tired.

The President **ought to** do more for the environment.

- 3C Use words such as *I think*, *maybe*, and *perhaps* to soften your advice or opinion.

I think the President **ought to do** more for the environment.

Maybe you **should get** married in June.

Warnings with *Had Better*

- 4 *Had better (not)* is stronger than *should (not)* or *ought to*. It is used to give advice with a warning about possible bad consequences. As with *should (not)* or *ought to*, you can use expressions such as *I think*, *maybe*, and *perhaps* to soften the meaning.

You'd **better study** for the test. If you don't, you'll fail.

You'd **better not make** so many personal phone calls at work, or you'll lose your job.

I think you'd **better see** the doctor, or your cold will get worse.

(Continued on page 210)

Strong Advice with *Have To*, *Have Got To*, and *Must*

5A *Have to*, *have got to*, and *must* are used to give strong advice. They often suggest that the situation is serious or urgent.

Your cough sounds terrible. You $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have to} \\ \text{'ve got to} \\ \text{must} \end{array} \right\}$ see a doctor immediately.

5B Another type of strong advice with *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* is more casual. It shows that the speaker has a strong opinion about something, even though the situation is not serious.

You $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have to} \\ \text{'ve got to} \\ \text{must} \end{array} \right\}$ try that new restaurant. I ate there yesterday and the food is great!

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-5



Listen to two people give advice. Who gives stronger advice: Speaker A or Speaker B? Check (✓) the correct column.

	SPEAKER A	SPEAKER B
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

C2 Making Suggestions

► Note 2

Write two suggestions for each question or statement. Use *could* in one suggestion and *might* in the other.

1. **Friend:** My grades in French are really bad. What should I do?

You: You could study harder.

You might get a tutor to help you.

2. **Friend:** I need to earn some extra money this summer. How can I find a job?

You: _____

3. **Sister:** Let's go somewhere special for Mom's birthday. Where could we go?

You: _____

4. **Friend:** I'm so bored. There's nothing to do around here.

You: _____

C3 Giving Your Opinion

► Notes 3A-3C

A. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions using these words and phrases. Use *should* in your questions. Use *should* or *ought to* in your answers. You can soften your advice with *I think*, *maybe*, or *perhaps*.

1. men/give women romantic birthday gifts

A: Should men give women romantic birthday gifts?

B: Yes, they should. I think men ought to give women romantic gifts all year.

2. women with small children/work

3. men/do housework

4. women/invite men to go out

5. married woman/keep her family name/take her husband's last name

B. Work on your own. Make up two more opinion questions with *should*. Then ask your classmates their opinions.

C4 Giving Advice

► Notes 3A,
3C, 5A

A. Work with a partner. Give two pieces of advice to the person(s) in each situation. Use *you should* in one and *you ought to* in the other. You can soften your advice with *maybe*, *perhaps*, or *I think*.

1. Sasha has an old car. The car is making a strange noise.

You ought to buy a new car. Maybe you should fix your car.

2. Today is Monday. Emily has to work today, but she woke up with a sore throat.

3. Dan isn't doing very well in his math class.

4. Mr. and Mrs. Chen love their apartment, but it's a little expensive.

B. The situations have become worse. Give two pieces of strong advice for each situation. Use *you have to*, *you've got to*, or *you must*.

1. Now Sasha's car has broken down.

You must not fix this car. You've got to buy a new car.

2. It's Monday night. Emily has a high fever. She feels very sick.

3. Now Dan is failing math. If he fails, he won't graduate.

4. The Chens' landlord has increased the rent and they can't afford it.

C. Work by yourself. Write down three situations of your own. Then ask your partner to give advice.

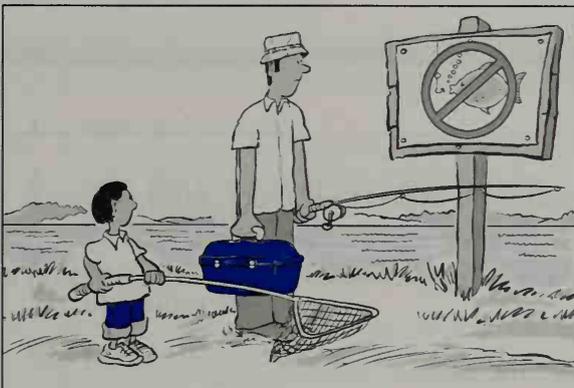
Look at the pictures and write a warning for each one. Use *had better* or *had better not*.



1. He had better stop the car.



4. _____



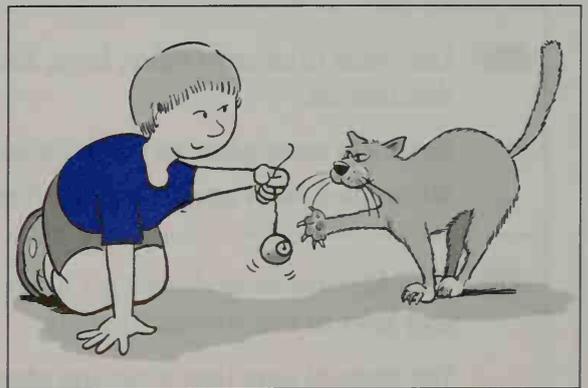
2. _____



5. _____



3. _____



6. _____

D

Modals of Necessity and Prohibition

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Students must show an ID to enter the building.
 - 1b. You have to show an ID to enter the building.
 - 2a. Students must not bring food into the library.
 - 2b. You shouldn't bring food into the library.
1. Which sentence in each pair is formal, and sounds like a rule or a law?
 2. Which sentence in each pair sounds more conversational?

Meaning and Use Notes

Necessity

- 1A** *Should, ought to, have to, have got to, and must* express necessity. *Must* expresses the strongest necessity and is used in formal or more serious situations. We often use *should, ought to, have to, and have got to* in conversation to avoid sounding too formal.

Students **should study** their notes before the exam.

I **have to hurry**. I'm going to be late!

We've **got to send** out the invitations today. The party is next week.

You **must take** the final exam if you want to pass the course.

- 1B** Use *must* to express rules, laws, and requirements, especially in written documents.

Bicyclists **must obey** all traffic lights in the city.

All couples **must apply** for a marriage license in person.

- 1C** *Should, have to, and have got to* are often used instead of *must* to talk about rules and laws in less formal English.

The manual says that bicyclists **should obey** all traffic lights in the city.

I found out that we **have to apply** for a marriage license in person.

Lack of Necessity vs. Prohibition

- 2 *Don't/doesn't have to* and *must not* have very different meanings. *Don't/doesn't have to* means that something is not necessary—there is a choice of whether to do it or not. *Must not* means that something is prohibited (not allowed). There is no choice involved.

Don't/Doesn't Have To (*Not Necessary*)

Your children **don't have to take** these vitamins. If they eat a healthy diet, they'll be fine.

Must Not (*Prohibited*)

Your children **must not take** these vitamins. They are for adults only.

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2



Listen to these conversations between an employee at the Department of Motor Vehicles and people who call with questions. What does the employee say about each of the topics in the chart? Check (✓) the correct column.

		NECESSARY	NOT NECESSARY	PROHIBITED
1.	take an eye test	✓		
2.	take the eye test at the Department of Motor Vehicles			
3.	need a California license to drive in California			
4.	pay with a credit card			
5.	go to driving school			
6.	drive alone without a learner's permit			

A. Read these public signs. Then explain the signs by completing the statements with *must*, *don't have to*, or *must not*.

1. SWIMMING POOL FOR APARTMENT RESIDENTS ONLY

This means that you have to be a resident of the apartment building to swim in the pool.

2. NO PETS ALLOWED

This means that you _____ bring your pet into the building.

3. CHILDREN UNDER 12 FREE

This means that children under 12 years old _____ pay to go in.

4. NO APPOINTMENT NECESSARY

This means that you _____ make an appointment.

5. NO EXIT

This means that you _____ go out this door.

6. ID REQUIRED

This means that you _____ show identification.

7. HOSPITAL ZONE — NO HORNS

This means that you _____ blow your car horn in this area.

8. SHIRT AND SHOES, PLEASE

This means that you _____ wear a shirt to go into this place, but you _____ wear a tie.

B. Work with a partner. Discuss the signs in part A. Where do you think you might find each one?

D3 Writing About Rules and Laws

► Notes 1B, 1C, 2

A. Look at each sign and write a sentence to explain its meaning. Use *must* and *must not*.



1. You must not smoke here. 3. _____ 5. _____



2. _____ 4. _____ 6. _____

B. Work with a partner. What other signs have you seen? Write down the words or draw the images and show them to your classmates. Explain each sign using *have to*, *have got to*, or *must not*.

You have to turn right.

D4 Stating Necessity, Lack of Necessity, and Prohibition

► Notes 1A, 2

Work with a partner. Think about your English class. Write sentences about what is necessary, what is not necessary, and what is not allowed. Use *have got to*, *have to*, *don't have to*, *must*, and *must not*.

1. We have to speak English in class.
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Emergency Room. How can I help you?

B: My daughter fell down the stairs and she's unconscious! Should I bring her in?

A: _____ wait for an ambulance.

- a. You'd better
- b. You could

2. A: Do you like my new dress?

B: _____.

- a. Not really. You shouldn't wear that color.
- b. Yes, you don't have to wear that color.

3. A: I'd like to pick up my car. Is it ready?

B: Yes, but you _____ come right away. We're closing in a few minutes.

- a. might
- b. should

4. A: I don't have my glasses. What does that sign say?

B: It says, "Visitors _____ check in at the front desk."

- a. must
- b. ought to

5. A: Can we put posters on the wall in our dorm room?

B: Yes, but you _____ make holes in the walls. It's against the rules.

- a. don't have to
- b. shouldn't

6. A: My boss will fire me if I come late again.

B: _____

- a. Then you'd better be on time from now on.
- b. Then maybe you must not be late.

7. A: What do you want for dinner?

B: I don't care. _____

- a. You should make hot dogs.
- b. We could have spaghetti.

8. A: Look at all those people at the exit. We'll never get out.

B: We _____ use that exit. There's another one in the back.

- a. don't have to
- b. must not

E2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

There are many wedding traditions in the United States. One of them is that the bride ought^{to} wear “something old, something new, something borrowed, something blue, and a sixpence in her shoe.” The old, new, borrowed, and blue parts are easy enough. However, a sixpence is an old English coin. It is impossible to find these days, so most people feel that the bride doesn't has to use a sixpence—any coin will do. Another tradition is that the groom must not to see the bride before the wedding. People think that it is bad luck. In addition, many people think that first-time brides ought wear white and second-time brides could not. However, second and third marriages are so common these days that many brides feel they must not follow this rule. One final tradition is that when people get married, they've to save a piece of their wedding cake for good luck.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in an advice column in a newspaper or magazine or on the Internet for examples of sentences with modals of advice. Bring at least four examples to class. Why is each modal used? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Imagine you are the director of a small company. Follow the steps below to write a memo explaining the office rules to new employees.

1. Think about all the things a new employee needs to know. Make notes about what you want to say. Use these categories to help you.
 - office hours
 - lateness
 - appropriate clothing
 - lunch breaks
 - vacation policy
 - sick leave
 - personal phone calls
 - Internet use
2. Write a first draft. Use modals and phrasal modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition.
3. Read your work and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to help you decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

To: All New Employees

From: Bob Chang

Welcome to Architectural Design Solutions. Please read this memo carefully. Before you start work here, you have to . . .



Tag Questions and Other Additions

PART

5

Tag Questions

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Women's Language and Men's Language	224
B. FORM: Tag Questions	226
TAG QUESTIONS WITH <i>BE</i> , <i>HAVE</i> , OR MODAL	
I'm right, aren't I?	
We have finished, haven't we?	
They should come, shouldn't they?	
TAG QUESTIONS WITH <i>DO</i>	
You live nearby, don't you?	
SUBJECT PRONOUNS IN TAG QUESTIONS	
John seems shy, doesn't he ?	
Informally Speaking: Reduced Statements with Tag Questions	230
C. MEANING AND USE: Tag Questions	231
Tag Questions vs. <i>Yes/No</i> Questions	
Intonation Patterns and Certainty	
Negative Words in Affirmative Statements	
Vocabulary Notes: Other Ways of Answering Tag Questions	235
Beyond the Sentence: Beginning Conversations Using Statements with Tag Questions	236
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	237

A

Women's Language and Men's Language

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you have more female friends or male friends? Are your conversations with female friends different from your conversations with male friends? How?

A2 Read

Read this magazine article to find out about the different ways in which men and women talk to their friends.

Women's Language and Men's Language

FOR MANY YEARS RESEARCHERS HAVE studied how men and women use language. They have been trying to find out if there are differences related to gender. Deborah Tannen, a professor at Georgetown University, is the author of several books on this subject. According to Tannen, men and women relate to their friends very differently and this difference shows in their use of language.

Read these two conversations between friends. Can you guess which conversation is between two men and which one is between two women?

Conversation 1

15 **A:** Hi. It's a great day for tennis, isn't it?

B: Yeah. I can't wait to get on the tennis court and forget about work. I'm so tired of my job.

20 **A:** I know what you mean. I'm really tired of my job, too.

B: You aren't going to quit, are you?

A: Well, actually, I've been offered another job. The pay is a lot better.

B: That's great! Let's go play some tennis.

Conversation 2

25 **A:** Hi there. How are you doing?

B: Not great. I had a bad day at work.

A: Have a seat and tell me about it. We can play tennis later.

30 **B:** Thanks. Well, you see, I keep making mistakes. Today I lost some very important papers, and my boss got angry with me. I'm so tired of this job. I try so hard, but it's never good enough.

35 **A:** How is the job search going? You're still looking for another job, aren't you?

B: Yeah. In fact, I have an interview next week with that company I told you about.

40 **A:** That's great! So tell me about last night. You didn't go to that awful restaurant again, did you?

Did you guess that Conversation 1 was between two men and Conversation 2 was between two women? The conversations show very different communication styles.

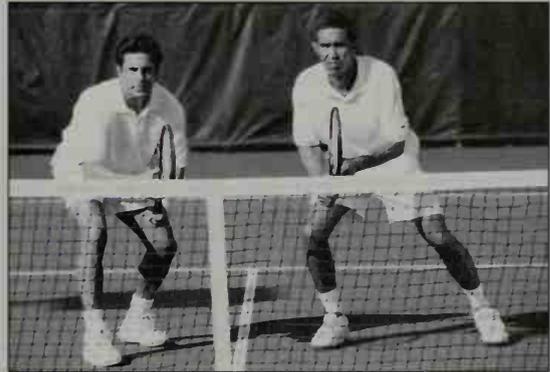
45 According to Tannen, the differences in the ways that men and women relate to friends begin in childhood. Little girls usually spend a lot of time talking and sharing their feelings. A girl's best friend
50 is the person who knows all her secrets. Talk is the "glue" that holds the female



Female friendships focus on talk.

friendship together. However, this is not true for boys. A boy's best friend is a person that he does everything with.

55 Although a boy will defend his friend in a fight, he often doesn't know his best friend's secrets or private feelings. Tannen says that women often tell their friends the intimate details of their lives, but men
60 rarely do this. Male friendships focus on activities; female friendships focus on talk.



Male friendships focus on activities.

defend: fight to protect someone or something
gender: being male or female

intimate: private, personal
relate: to interact or have a relationship with

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. Women's friendships are the same as men's friendships.
- 2. Differences in the way men and women relate to friends begin in childhood.
- 3. Women don't usually tell each other how they feel.
- 4. Men tell their friends everything about their lives.
- 5. For men, doing things together is more important than talking.

Tag Questions

Examining Form

Look back at the magazine article on page 224 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. An example of a tag question is underlined. Find three more.
2. Look at the statement that comes before each tag question. What kind of tag question follows an affirmative statement? What kind of tag question follows a negative statement?

TAG QUESTIONS WITH *BE*, *HAVE*, OR MODAL

AFFIRMATIVE STATEMENT	NEGATIVE TAG	
STATEMENT WITH <i>BE</i> , <i>HAVE</i> , OR MODAL	<i>BE</i> , <i>HAVE</i> , or MODAL + <i>NOT</i>	SUBJECT
I'm right,	aren't	I?
He was tired,	wasn't	he?
It was raining,	wasn't	it?
We have finished,	haven't	we?
They should come,	shouldn't	they?

SHORT ANSWERS	
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Yes, he was.	No, he wasn't.
Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.
Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Yes, they should.	No, they shouldn't.

NEGATIVE STATEMENT	AFFIRMATIVE TAG	
STATEMENT WITH <i>BE</i> , <i>HAVE</i> , OR MODAL	<i>BE</i> , <i>HAVE</i> , or MODAL	SUBJECT
I'm not right,	am	I?
He wasn't tired,	was	he?
It wasn't raining,	was	it?
We haven't finished,	have	we?
They shouldn't come,	should	they?

SHORT ANSWERS	
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Yes, he was.	No, he wasn't.
Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.
Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Yes, they should.	No, they shouldn't.

Overview

- A tag question (or tag) is an addition to a sentence. It is a short *Yes/No* question that is added to the end of a statement. It is separated from the statement by a comma.
- Use a negative tag after an affirmative statement. A negative tag is usually contracted.
- Use an affirmative tag after a negative statement. An affirmative tag is never contracted.

Tag Questions with *Be*, *Have*, and Modals

- After statements where *be* is a main verb, use the correct form of *be* in the tag.

He **was** tired, **wasn't** he? He **wasn't** tired, **was** he?
 They're here, **aren't** they? They **aren't** here, **are** they?
- Note that affirmative statements with *I am* are followed by the negative tag *aren't I?*
 I'm right, **aren't I?**
- After statements with verb tenses formed with *be*, *have*, or a modal + a main verb, use the correct form of *be*, *have*, or the modal in the tag. Do not repeat the main verb.

It **was** raining, **wasn't** it? It **wasn't** raining, **was** it?
 We **have** finished, **haven't** we? We **haven't** finished, **have** we?
 They **should** come, **shouldn't** they? They **shouldn't** come, **should** they?
- We form answers to tag questions in the same way that we form answers to *Yes/No* questions.

A: You're not tired, are you? A: We haven't finished, have we?
 B: **Yes, I am.** OR **No, I'm not.** B: **Yes, you have.** OR **No, you haven't.**

TAG QUESTIONS WITH *DO*

AFFIRMATIVE STATEMENT	NEGATIVE TAG	
	<i>DO + NOT</i>	SUBJECT
I play badly,	don't	I?
It costs a lot,	doesn't	it?
You live nearby,	don't	you?
They sang well,	didn't	they?

SHORT ANSWERS	
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Yes, you do.	No, you don't.
Yes, it does.	No, it doesn't.
Yes, we do.	No, we don't.
Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

(Continued on page 228)

NEGATIVE STATEMENT	AFFIRMATIVE TAG	
SIMPLE PRESENT or SIMPLE PAST STATEMENT	DO	SUBJECT
I don't play badly,	do	I?
It doesn't cost a lot,	does	it?
They didn't sing well,	did	they?

SHORT ANSWERS	
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Yes, you do.	No, you don't.
Yes, it does.	No, it doesn't.
Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

- After simple present and simple past statements with all verbs except *be*, use the correct form of *do* in the tag.

You **live** nearby, **don't** you? It **doesn't** cost a lot, **does** it?
 They **sang** well, **didn't** they? They **didn't** sing well, **did** they?

- Answer tag questions with *do* in the same way you answer *Yes/No* questions with *do*.

A: It costs a lot, doesn't it? A: They didn't sing well, did they?
 B: **Yes, it does.** OR **No, it doesn't.** B: **Yes, they did.** OR **No, they didn't.**

SUBJECT PRONOUNS IN TAG QUESTIONS

STATEMENT	TAG
He seems shy,	doesn't he ?
John seems shy,	doesn't he ?
This is fun,	isn't it ?
That's true,	isn't it ?
These are Ana's,	aren't they ?
Those are mine,	aren't they ?
There's more hot water,	isn't there ?

- When a personal pronoun is used in the statement, it is always repeated in the tag.
- When a noun is used in the statement, use the appropriate pronoun in the tag.
Gina is nice, **isn't she**? **His car** is really old, **isn't it**?
- When *this* or *that* is used in the statement, substitute *it* in the tag.
- When *these* or *those* is used in the statement, substitute *they* in the tag.
- When *there* is used in the statement, repeat *there* in the tag.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each conversation. Choose the tag question you hear.

1. a. aren't you? 3. a. does he? 5. a. are there?
 b. are you? b. doesn't he? b. is there?
2. a. did you? 4. a. can you? 6. a. am I?
 b. didn't you? b. can't you? b. aren't I?

B2 Working on Tag Questions

Complete these conversations with tags. Then practice them with a partner.

1. A: There's no one home, is there ?
 B: No, there's not.
2. A: I'm going to drive downtown.
 B: You couldn't give me a ride,
 _____?
3. A: He didn't tell you the answers,
 _____?
 B: No, he didn't.
4. A: Ben, I want to discuss your test.
 B: I did okay, _____?
5. A: The traffic was terrible. I'm not
 late, _____?
 B: No, you're not.
6. A: Rita came in late last night,
 _____?
 B: I'm not sure. Ask Beth.

B3 Asking and Answering Tag Questions

A. Work with a partner. Add a tag to each statement.

1. You aren't hungry, are you ?
2. You're studying English, _____?
3. You like this class, _____?
4. You've flown, _____?
5. You have a dog, _____?
6. You don't live alone, _____?

B. Take turns asking and answering the questions in part A.

A: *You aren't hungry, are you?*

B: *No, I'm not.* OR *Yes, I am.*

Reduced Statements with Tag Questions

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?



In informal conversation, we often leave out subject pronouns and forms of *be* in statements with tag questions.

STANDARD FORM

It's hot in here, isn't it?

She's not a good speaker, is she?

You're leaving at six, aren't you?

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

"Hot in here, isn't it?"

"Not a good speaker, is she?"

"Leaving at six, aren't you?"

B4 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen to these reduced statements with tag questions. What subject pronoun + form of *be* does the speaker leave out at the beginning of each statement? Choose the correct answer.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. It's | 4. a. They aren't |
| b. They're | b. They're |
| 2. a. She's | 5. a. You're |
| b. She was | b. You aren't |
| 3. a. They're | 6. a. It's |
| b. It's | b. It has been |

C Tag Questions

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Is dinner at six? 2a. It's a nice day, isn't it?
1b. Dinner is at six, isn't it? 2b. You couldn't give me that pen, could you?

- Look at 1a and 1b. Which sentence shows that the speaker has a previous idea about the time of dinner? Which sentence shows that the speaker has no previous idea about the time of dinner?
- Look at 2a and 2b. In which sentence is the speaker making a request? In which sentence is the speaker expecting agreement?

Meaning and Use Notes

Tag Questions vs. Yes/No Questions

- 1 Tag questions are different from *Yes/No* questions. Use a tag question when you have a previous (earlier) idea or opinion about something and want to confirm it. Use a *Yes/No* question when you have no previous idea or opinion. Tag questions are more common in spoken English than in written English.

Tag Question

You're a student, **aren't** you?
(I think you're a student.)

Yes/No Question

Are you a student?
(I have no idea.)

Intonation Patterns and Certainty

- 2A Use tag questions with falling intonation if you are very certain of your previous idea or opinion. Use tag questions with rising intonation if you are less certain.

Falling Intonation

He makes a lot of money, **doesn't** he? 
(I'm sure he makes a lot of money.)

Rising Intonation

He makes a lot of money, **doesn't** he? 
(I think he makes a lot of money, but I'm not sure.)

(Continued on page 232)

- 2B** We often use tag questions with rising intonation to express doubt or surprise. We also use them to make polite requests with modals, especially when we're not sure that the listener will agree to our request.

Expressing Doubt or Surprise

That box won't fit in the trunk, **will it?**

Making a Polite Request

You couldn't lend me five dollars, **could you?**

- 2C** We often use tag questions with falling intonation to confirm information we are already sure of, or to ask for agreement.

Confirming Information

We've met before, **haven't we?**

Asking for Agreement

We haven't had rain for a long time, **have we?**

Negative Words in Affirmative Statements

- 3** An affirmative statement that uses a negative adverb of frequency (such as *rarely*, *hardly*, *seldom*, and *never*) or a word with *no* (such as *nobody*, *nowhere*, and *nothing*) has a negative meaning. It requires an affirmative tag.

You never go to class, **do** you?

There's nobody here, **is** there?

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-3

- A.  Listen to these statements with tag questions. Draw arrows to show falling or rising intonation.

1. We spent too much money, **didn't we?**
2. That's a very expensive restaurant, **isn't it?**
3. You didn't walk here, **did you?**
4. He has Ms. Walker for history, **doesn't he?**
5. You couldn't watch my children for an hour, **could you?**
6. You've never met the Smiths, **have you?**

- B.  Listen again. Is the speaker certain or uncertain? Check (✓) the correct column.

	CERTAIN	UNCERTAIN
1.	✓	
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

C2 Practicing the Intonation of Tag Questions

► Note 2A

- A. Read each conversation. Think about the meaning and decide if the tag question expresses certainty or uncertainty. Draw an arrow over each tag question to show falling (certain) or rising (uncertain) intonation.

1. A: Sam got an A in calculus.

B: He's really smart, isn't he? 

2. A: I'm sorry, but Mark left.

B: He's coming back, isn't he?

3. A: I've got some bad news. Your car needs a new engine.

B: Oh, no! It's going to be really expensive, isn't it?

4. A: Look how cloudy it is outside!

B: It's going to rain, isn't it?

5. A: Thanks for inviting us to dinner.

B: You're welcome. You eat meat, don't you?

6. A: Can you believe it? My boss asked me to take work home over the holiday.

B: You didn't agree, did you?

- B. Work with a partner. Practice the conversations in part A. Use the correct intonation.

C3 Expressing Doubt

► Note 2B

Work with a partner. Take turns expressing doubt about these incorrect facts. Use negative statements with affirmative tags and rising intonation. Reply with the correct fact, using the information in parentheses.

1. Columbus sailed to America in 1489. (1492)
A: Columbus didn't sail to America in 1489, did he?
B: No, he didn't. He sailed to America in 1492.
2. Africa is the largest continent. (Asia)
3. Saturn is the farthest planet from the sun. (Pluto)
4. Toronto is the capital of Canada. (Ottawa)
5. There are 31 days in November. (30)
6. They use pesos in Japan. (yen)
7. Albert Einstein invented the telegraph. (Samuel Morse)
8. A yard is equal to 24 inches. (36)

C4 Making Polite Requests

► Note 2B

Read each situation. Then make a polite request. Use a negative statement with an affirmative tag and rising intonation.

1. You are a waiter. You can't work tomorrow, and you hope your friend can take your place. You ask your friend.
You couldn't take my place tomorrow, could you?
2. You have a doctor's appointment, and you need a ride to the clinic. You ask your roommate.
3. You need someone to take care of your son after school today. You ask your neighbor.
4. You need help tonight with your paper for English class. You ask your sister.
5. You're going on vacation. You need someone to feed your cats next week. You ask your neighbor.
6. You want to go away for the weekend, but you don't have a car. Maybe your father can lend you his car. You ask him.

Other Ways of Answering Tag Questions

Using short answers is not the only way to respond to tag questions. We can also use other expressions to show agreement or disagreement. In negative responses, we often correct the speaker's statement.

A: The movie starts at six, doesn't it?

B: That's right. OR No, it starts at seven.

A: You don't like your new roommate, do you?

B: Not really. OR Actually, I think she's great!

C5 Using and Answering Tag Questions

A. Work with a partner. Use the questions as a guide to help you confirm what you know about each other. Take turns using and answering tag questions. Use appropriate intonation in your tag questions and a variety of expressions and short answers in your responses.

1. How does your partner get to school?

A: *You drive to school, don't you?*

B: *That's right. OR No, I don't. Actually, I usually walk.*

2. Where does your partner live?

3. Where is your partner from?

4. How long has your partner studied English?

5. What other languages does your partner speak?

6. Does your partner work?

7. Does your partner like classical music?

8. Does your partner have brothers and sisters?

9. Does your partner play tennis?

10. Does your partner like to swim?

B. Think of two more pieces of information to confirm with your partner. Then ask your partner to confirm the information using statements with tag questions.

A: *Pizza is your favorite food, isn't it?*

B: *Not really. Actually, I prefer Mexican food.*

Beginning Conversations Using Statements with Tag Questions

Using statements with tag questions is a good way to begin a conversation with someone that you do not know. We often do this by using a statement with a tag question to comment on a shared experience. Using a statement with a tag question is an effective way to begin a conversation because the listener is expected to respond.

At a Train Station

A: These trains never come on time, do they?

B: No, they don't. And I'm always late for work.

In a Cafeteria

A: The cafeteria is very crowded today, isn't it?

B: Yes, it is. This line is really long.

C6 Beginning Conversations

A. Work with a partner. How would you begin a conversation in each situation?

1. You're leaving the classroom after the first day of class. The teacher has told you that you have to read 50 pages for the next class.

She gives a lot of homework, doesn't she?

2. You're standing at a bus stop on a beautiful spring day, waiting for a bus.

3. You're in a very long line at the supermarket. The cashier is very slow.

4. You're at a party. There is a live band playing music. The band is very good.

5. You're on an airplane eating dinner. The food isn't very good.

6. You're at a conference. There are a lot of people there.

B. Now think of two more situations. Write them down and ask your partner to think of a statement with a tag question to begin each conversation.

D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Someone stole my bike.

B: _____

a. You didn't call the police, did you?

b. You called the police, didn't you?

2. A: _____

B: It sure is. Dan's parties are always fun.

a. It's a great party, isn't it?

b. It isn't a very good party, is it?

3. A: You always study hard, don't you?

B: _____

a. Yes, I did.

b. No, not always.

4. A: You couldn't lend me your car, could you?

B: _____

a. Of course I couldn't.

b. Sure. When do you need it?

5. A: It's a beautiful day, isn't it?

B: _____

a. Yes. We're having great weather.

b. I'm not sure.

6. A: We didn't pay the phone bill, did we?

B: _____

a. Oh, no! You're right, we didn't.

b. Why not?

D2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. Tom has been here before, ^{hasn't} ~~is~~ he?
2. I shouldn't tell the teacher, could I?
3. There are many French speakers in Canada, aren't they?
4. I'm not going to see you again, are I?
5. He never visits his parents on Saturday, doesn't he?
6. Frank didn't get married, did Frank?
7. Barbara isn't traveling alone, will she?
8. Your sneakers don't fit, don't they?

▶ Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Watch an English-language movie or television show, or listen to a radio interview. Listen for examples of statements with tag questions. Write them down and bring them to class. Try to explain why each example was used.

Speaking

Work with a partner. Create a conversation for the situation below. Use at least three different statements with tag questions. Act out your conversation for another pair of students.

Two people meet at a party. They think they have met before but aren't sure where. They ask questions about places where they think they have seen each other.

A: *Haven't I met you before? You used to work at the library, didn't you?*

B: *No, I never worked at the library. . . . I know! You were at Cindy's wedding last year, weren't you?*

A: *That's right. Now I remember. You were the best man, weren't you?*

Additions with Conjunctions

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Equal Rights for Apes?	240
B. FORM 1: Additions with <i>And . . . Too</i>, <i>And . . . Either</i>, and <i>But</i>	242
Bob is angry, and Amy is too.	
Bob isn't angry, and Amy isn't either.	
Bob is angry, but Amy isn't.	
C. FORM 2: Additions with <i>And So</i> and <i>And Neither</i>	247
I could go, and so could you.	
We haven't eaten, and neither has he.	
D. MEANING AND USE: Expressing Similarities and Differences	250
Expressing Similarities	
Expressing Differences	
Informally Speaking: Pronouns in Short Responses	252
Beyond the Sentence: Combining Ideas	255
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	256

A Equal Rights for Apes?

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you believe that animals can feel happy or sad? Do you believe that they can think? Why or why not?

A2 Read

 Read this letter to a newspaper editor to find out the writer's views on the rights of apes.

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

“Equal Rights for Apes?”

I read your recent article “Equal Rights for Apes?” in Friday’s paper. I’m upset, and I’m sure others are too. Humans and animals share many similarities and
 5 deserve the same respect. Humans shouldn’t live in fear of their lives, and animals shouldn’t either. Your article contains several inaccuracies that I would like to correct.

10 One of the main reasons that people believe that animals and humans are different is that humans have language, but animals don’t. However, scientific studies have shown that apes can learn to
 15 use language. A gorilla named Koko learned to communicate with sign language, and so did a chimpanzee named



Koko

Washoe. In fact, on an intelligence test Koko scored 91.7 (a slightly below-average score for a human being).

People also say that humans can appreciate beauty, but animals can't. I don't agree, and neither do many scientists. Apes appreciate beauty in 25 ways that seem very "human." Scientists, for example, have seen chimpanzees in the wild sit and watch sunsets.

Some people say that humans are different from animals because we have 30 feelings, but they don't. This is not true. A gorilla at a Chicago zoo showed that she had feelings when a three-year-old boy fell into the ape exhibit. Binti, an eight-year-old female gorilla, saved his life. She 35 picked him up and held him in her arms for a few moments to calm him down, and then she carried him to safety.

Clearly, apes are not so different from human beings. If they don't deserve the 40 right to be free and live in peace, maybe humans don't either.

Charles Walker
Holly Grove, IL



Apes have feelings too.

apes: animals such as gorillas and chimpanzees

exhibit: the place where animals live in a zoo

inaccuracies: mistakes or errors

rights: things that you are morally or legally allowed to do or have

sign language: a way to communicate by using your hands instead of your voice

the wild: a natural environment; nature

A3 After You Read

Read these statements. Check (✓) the ones you think the writer would agree with.

- 1. Apes and humans are not very different.
- 2. Apes can't use language to communicate with others.
- 3. Some apes are as intelligent as some humans.
- 4. Some apes like to look at sunsets.
- 5. Apes don't have feelings.
- 6. Animals deserve the right to live in peace.

B

And . . . Too, And . . . Either, and But**Examining Form**

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- a. Derek is busy, but Eve isn't. (= Derek is busy. Eve isn't busy.)
 b. Derek is busy, and Eve is too. (= Derek is busy. Eve is busy.)
 c. Derek isn't busy, and Eve isn't either. (= Derek isn't busy. Eve isn't busy.)
 d. Eve isn't busy, but Derek is. (= Eve isn't busy. Derek is busy.)
- Which sentence is a combination of two affirmative sentences? What two words connect the second clause to the first clause?
 - Which sentence is a combination of two negative sentences? What two words connect the second clause to the first clause?
 - Which sentences are a combination of an affirmative sentence and a negative sentence (in either order)? What word connects the second clause to the first clause in both sentences?
 - Look back at the underlined examples in the article on page 240. Circle the connecting words. Do they connect two affirmative clauses, two negative clauses, or an affirmative and a negative clause?

<i>And . . . Too</i>					
AFFIRMATIVE			AFFIRMATIVE		
SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE	AND	SUBJECT	BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO	TOO
Bob	is angry,	and	Amy	is	too.
He	was running,		they	were	
We	have eaten,		he	has	
I	could go,		you	could	
You	like sports,		he	does	
We	sang well,		they	did	

And . . . Either					
NEGATIVE		AND	NEGATIVE		EITHER
SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE + NOT		SUBJECT	BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO + NOT	
Bob	isn't angry,	and	Amy	isn't	either.
He	wasn't running,		they	weren't	
We	haven't eaten,		he	hasn't	
I	couldn't go,		you	couldn't	
You	don't like sports,		he	doesn't	
We	didn't sing well,		they	didn't	

But				
SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE	BUT	SUBJECT	BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO + NOT
Bob	is angry,		but	Amy
He	was running,	they		weren't.
We	have eaten,	he		hasn't.

SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE + NOT	BUT	SUBJECT	BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO
I	couldn't go,		but	you
You	don't like sports,	he		does.
We	didn't sing well,	they		did.

- Use the conjunctions *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, and *but* to combine two sentences with similar verb phrases but different subjects. In the combined sentence, the second clause (the addition) is a shortened form of the second sentence.

Bob is angry. Amy is angry. → Bob is angry, **and** Amy is **too**.

- Use *and . . . too* to combine two affirmative sentences. Use *and . . . either* to combine two negative sentences. Use *but* to combine an affirmative and a negative sentence (in either order).
- To combine two sentences where *be* is the main verb, use a form of *be* in the addition and omit the rest of the verb phrase.
- To combine two sentences with verb tenses formed with *be*, *have*, or a modal, use a form of *be* or *have* or the modal in the addition and omit the rest of the verb phrase.
- To combine two sentences in the simple present or the simple past, use the correct form of *do* in the addition and omit the rest of the verb phrase.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each sentence. Does the speaker use *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, or *but*? Check (✓) the form you hear.

	<i>AND . . . TOO</i>	<i>AND . . . EITHER</i>	<i>BUT</i>
1.			✓
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			
10.			

B2 Understanding Additions

Look at the underlined addition in each sentence. Which words are missing? Omit the conjunction and rewrite the addition as a complete sentence.

1. She had fun at the party, but he didn't.

He didn't have fun at the party.

2. Koji is hungry, and I am too.

3. I watch a lot of television, but he doesn't.

4. The students needed to leave early, and the teachers did too.

5. Our telephone wasn't working, and theirs wasn't either.

6. We couldn't speak French, and they couldn't either.

7. Pedro enjoys jazz, but Holly doesn't.

8. I liked the concert, and she did too.

9. My aunt has visited Iowa, but my uncle hasn't.

10. Kim isn't going to work this summer, and Josh isn't either.

B3 Working on Form

Complete each sentence with the correct form of *be*, *have*, a modal, or *do*.

1. I didn't do the homework last night, and Alex didn't either.
2. Our neighbors have a swimming pool, and we _____ too.
3. Rita lives in an apartment, but Ben _____. He owns a house.
4. Miguel is worried about the test, and Sara _____ too.
5. My friend couldn't go to the party last night, and I _____ either.
6. Steve wasn't at home when I called, but his wife _____. I left her a message.
7. My roommate has been to Thailand, but I _____. I'd like to go one day.
8. I wasn't listening to the teacher, and my partner _____ either. What did she say?
9. I got to work late, and Rick _____ too.
10. Larry will come tonight, but Eva _____.
11. You shouldn't drink so much coffee, and I _____ either.
12. Lee and Chang have learned Chinese, but their sister _____.

B4 Combining Sentences

Combine each pair of sentences. Use *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, or *but*.

1. Koji fell asleep during the movie. Yuji didn't fall asleep during the movie.

Koji fell asleep during the movie, but Yuji didn't.

2. I don't like getting up early. Jane doesn't like getting up early.

3. Dan has a car. Rita has a car.

4. She was feeling sick. He wasn't feeling sick.

5. I didn't play sports in high school. Carlos didn't play sports in high school.

6. He's going to the conference. She's not going to the conference.

7. Ana doesn't eat meat. I don't eat meat.

8. Soo-jin has studied chemistry. Won-joon has studied chemistry.

B5 Completing Sentences

Work in small groups. Complete these statements about yourself and the other members of your group. Use additions with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, or *but*.

1. I have a sister, and Reiko does too.

2. I'm wearing _____, and _____.

3. I never eat _____, and _____.

4. Five years ago I was _____, but _____.

5. I'm going to _____ this weekend, and _____.

6. I haven't _____ yet, and _____.

C

Additions with *And So* and *And Neither*

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. Humans are intelligent, and so are apes.
 - 1b. Humans are intelligent, and apes are too.
 - 2a. Humans aren't always happy, and neither are apes.
 - 2b. Humans aren't always happy, and apes aren't either.
1. Compare 1a and 1b. Underline the subject and circle the verb in each addition. How is the word order different in these additions?
 2. Compare 2a and 2b. Underline the subject and circle the verb in each addition. How is the word order different?
 3. Does *and so* connect two affirmative or two negative sentences? Does *and neither* connect two affirmative or two negative sentences?

<i>And So</i>				
AFFIRMATIVE			AFFIRMATIVE	
SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE	<i>AND SO</i>	<i>BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO</i>	SUBJECT
Bob	is angry,	<i>and so</i>	is	Amy.
He	was running,		were	they.
We	have eaten,		has	he.
I	could go,		could	you.
You	like sports,		does	he.
We	sang well,		did	they.

(Continued on page 248)

And Neither				
NEGATIVE		NEGATIVE		
SUBJECT	VERB PHRASE + NOT	AND NEITHER	BE, HAVE, MODAL, or DO	SUBJECT
Bob	isn't angry,	and neither	is	Amy.
He	wasn't running,		were	they.
We	haven't eaten,		has	he.
I	couldn't go,		could	you.
You	don't like sports,		does	he.
We	didn't sing well,		did	they.

- The conjunctions *and so* and *and neither* are used to combine two sentences with similar verb phrases but different subjects. They form additions with *be*, *have*, a modal, or *do*, but the additions have a different word order than additions with *and . . . too* and *and . . . either*.
- Use *and so* to combine two affirmative sentences. Notice the word order after *and so*. *Be*, *have*, a modal, or *do* comes before the subject.
- Use *and neither* to combine two negative sentences. Since *neither* has a negative meaning, the verb form that follows it is affirmative. Notice the word order after *neither*. *Be*, *have*, a modal, or *do* comes before the subject.

⚠ Do not use *not* in additions with *neither*. *Neither* expresses the negative meaning.

C1 Listening for Form

 Listen to these sentences. Write the additions with *and so* or *and neither*.

1. Los Angeles is a big city, and so is Chicago.
2. He didn't need a hotel room, _____
3. February doesn't have 31 days, _____
4. Teresa should go home, _____
5. Carol can't ski, _____
6. They've left, _____

C2 Combining Sentences

Combine each pair of sentences. Use *and so* and *and neither*.

1. I'm going away to college next year. My friend Paul is going away to college next year.

I'm going away to college next year, and so is my friend Paul.

2. Science isn't an easy subject for me. Math isn't an easy subject for me.

3. Children will enjoy that movie. Adults will enjoy that movie.

4. My sisters don't live at home anymore. My brother doesn't live at home anymore.

5. The stores here close early. The restaurants here close early.

6. We didn't know the answer. The teacher didn't know the answer.

C3 Completing Sentences

- A. Work with a partner and complete these sentences. For sentences 1–4, use *and so* or *and neither* in the addition. For sentences 5–8, use an appropriate first clause.

1. I don't have a pet, *and neither does my neighbor*.

2. Spaghetti is an Italian food, _____.

3. People deserve to be happy, _____.

4. Coffee isn't good for you, _____.

5. _____, and so does my best friend.

6. _____, and neither did my parents.

7. _____, and neither have I.

8. _____, and so should I.

- B. In your notebook, write the first clause of two more sentences. Then exchange notebooks with your partner and complete each other's sentences.

D

Expressing Similarities and Differences

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- Carl lives in Florida, and Lee does too.
- Carl doesn't live in Florida, and Lee doesn't either.
- Carl lives in Florida, and so does Lee.
- Carl doesn't live in Florida and neither does Lee.

Which sentences have the same meaning? Does each sentence express a similarity between the two subjects or a difference?

Meaning and Use Notes

Expressing Similarities

- 1A** Use additions with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, *and so*, and *and neither* to show that the information about the subject of the addition is the same as the information about the subject of the first clause.

We live in Seattle, **and they do too.** I don't like pizza, **and she doesn't either.**
 Lisa has a pet, **and so does Susan.** He didn't get sick, **and neither did she.**

- 1B** *And . . . too* and *and so* have the same meaning. *And . . . either* and *and neither* have the same meaning.

I have a car, **and she does too.** = I have a car, **and so does she.**
 He didn't come, **and she didn't either.** = He didn't come, **and neither did she.**

- 1C** *Too*, *so*, *not either*, and *neither* can be used in conversation to form a response that shows agreement with the speaker. (Such responses are also called rejoinders.) *And* is usually omitted. Use *too* or *so* to agree with an affirmative statement. Use *not either* or *neither* to agree with a negative statement.

Agreeing with an Affirmative Statement

A: I thought the test was really hard.

B: **I did too.** / **So did I.**

Agreeing with a Negative Statement

A: I couldn't do the math homework.

B: **I couldn't either.** / **Neither could I.**

Expressing Differences

- 2 Use additions with *but* to show that the information about the subject of the addition is different from the information about the subject of the first clause.

I can ice skate, **but** she can't.

Their class has a computer, **but** our class doesn't.

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1B, 2

 Listen to each sentence. Do the two clauses contain the same information about the subjects or different information? Check (✓) the correct column.

	SAME INFORMATION	DIFFERENT INFORMATION
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

D2 Expressing Similarities and Differences

► Note 1C

A. Complete these statements about yourself.

- I don't like cooking.
- I really like _____.
- I often _____ with my friends.
- I don't usually _____ on the weekend.
- When I was a child, I used to _____.
- When I was a child, I never _____.

B. Work with a partner. Take turns making the statements in part A and giving short responses to express your similarities and differences.

A: *I don't like cooking.*

B: *Really? I do.* OR *Neither do I.*

Pronouns in Short Responses

Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?



In informal speech, we often use object pronouns (*me, him, her, us, them*) instead of subject pronouns (*I, he, she, we, they*) in responses with *too*. Informal responses with *either* and *neither* can only begin with *me*.

STANDARD FORM

- I am too. / I do too.
- She is too. / She does too.
- He is too. / He does too.
- We are too. / We do too.
- They are too. / They do too.
- I'm not either. / I don't either.
- Neither am I. / Neither do I.

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

- "Me too."
- "Her too."
- "Him too."
- "Us too."
- "Them too."
- "Me either."
- "Me neither."

D3 Understanding Informal Speech

Listen and choose the standard form of the responses you hear.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. a. I didn't either. | 4. a. We are too. | 7. a. She did too. |
| b. I did too. | b. So do we. | b. She didn't either. |
| 2. a. We are too. | 5. a. They are too. | 8. a. I am too. |
| b. We do too. | b. They aren't either. | b. Neither am I. |
| 3. a. So do I. | 6. a. Neither can I. | 9. a. She does too. |
| b. Neither do I. | b. So can I. | b. She is too. |

D4 Adding Information to Sentences

► Notes 1A,
1B, 2

- A.** Work with a partner. Take turns choosing categories. Your partner will read a statement to you. Add to the statement, using the noun in parentheses. Use additions with *and . . . too*, *and so*, *and . . . either*, *and neither*, or *but*.

A: *Geography.*

B: *Egypt has a canal.*

A: *Egypt has a canal, and Panama does too.*

OR

Egypt has a canal, and so does Panama.

Geography

1. Egypt has a canal. (Panama)
2. Turkey isn't in Europe. (France)
3. Guam is an island. (Puerto Rico)
4. Austria isn't near the sea. (Switzerland)

Food

1. Prunes are dried fruit. (raisins)
2. Strawberries are red. (bananas)
3. Fish isn't fattening. (ice cream)
4. Potatoes don't have seeds. (carrots)

Animals

1. Chickens don't swim. (turkeys)
2. Dogs can't communicate with sign language. (apes)
3. Snails have shells. (turtles)
4. Elephants live in Africa. (lions)

- B.** Work alone. Write two more statements for each category. Then work with your partner. Take turns reading your statements and making additions using *and . . . too*, *and so*, *and . . . either*, *and neither*, or *but*.

A: *Canada has glaciers.*

B: *Canada has glaciers, and so does Iceland.*

D5 Comparing and Contrasting Information► Notes 1A,
1B, 2

Work in small groups. Look at the college scholarship applications. Imagine that your group will give a scholarship to one of the two students. Make sentences comparing and contrasting the students. Use additions with *and . . . too*, *and so*, and *. . . either*, *and neither*, or *but*. Then make your decision.

*Jenny Chang has good grades, and Pedro Gonzalez does too.
Jenny Chang did volunteer work, but Pedro Gonzalez didn't.*

College Scholarship Application Form

Name: Jenny Chang
Major: Don't know yet

High School Grades (Average):

English: A Math: B Spanish: A
History: A Science: B

SCHOOL ACTIVITIES

Was student a member of clubs?

Yes; Spanish Club, sophomore, junior, and senior
years

Did student participate in sports?

No

Did student participate in student government?

Yes; president of senior class

Did student work on school newspaper?

No

Did student receive awards?

Yes; Most Outstanding English Student

ACTIVITIES OUTSIDE SCHOOL

Did student do volunteer work?

Yes; volunteer language tutor (Spanish, Cantonese)
at community center

Did student work?

Yes; worked in a camp for children during the
summer (3 years)

College Scholarship Application Form

Name: Pedro Gonzalez
Major: Biology, interested in medical research

High School Grades (Average):

English: A Math: A German: B
History: B Science: A

SCHOOL ACTIVITIES

Was student a member of clubs?

Yes; Science Club, junior and senior years

Did student participate in sports?

No

Did student participate in student government?

No

Did student work on school newspaper?

No

Did student receive awards?

Yes; first prize in school science fair senior year

ACTIVITIES OUTSIDE SCHOOL

Did student do volunteer work?

No

Did student work?

Yes; worked at a science laboratory (1 year)

Combining Ideas

When you compare people or things, it is important to combine your ideas by using additions with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, *and so*, *and neither*, and *but*. If you do not combine ideas, your writing will be very repetitive. Compare these two paragraphs. Notice how combining ideas makes the second paragraph sound less repetitive.

Repetitive

My best friend and I have many similarities. I have a sister. Carol has a sister. I like vanilla ice cream. Carol likes vanilla ice cream. I'm not good at math. Carol isn't good at math. There is one big difference. Carol lives in the United States. I don't live in the United States. I live in Costa Rica.

Not Repetitive

My best friend and I have many similarities. I have a sister, **and so does** Carol. I like vanilla ice cream, **and** Carol does, **too**. I'm not good at math, **and neither** is Carol. There is one big difference. Carol lives in the United States, **but** I don't. I live in Costa Rica.

D6 Avoiding Repetition

Read this paragraph. Underline the parts that are repetitive. Then rewrite the paragraph combining sentences where possible.

The United States and the United Kingdom have many similarities and differences. One of the similarities is language. People in the United States speak English. People in the United Kingdom speak English. Some people say that Americans don't speak very clearly. Some people say that the British speak very clearly. American and British food is also similar in some ways. Americans like to eat meat and potatoes. The British like to eat meat and potatoes. The two countries also have similar holidays. Christmas is a very important holiday in both countries. Most Americans don't work on Christmas. Most British people don't work on Christmas. One big difference is the political system. The United Kingdom has a queen. The United States doesn't have a king or a queen. In the United States voters elect a president. In the United Kingdom voters don't elect a president. They elect a prime minister.

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: You have to take the test, but I don't.

B: _____

- a. That's not fair.
- b. Good. Let's study together.

2. A: She's never late.

B: _____

- a. So am I.
- b. Neither am I.

3. A: I'm going to get a new computer next month.

B: _____

- a. So am I.
- b. Neither am I.

4. A: We have to leave before noon.

B: _____

- a. I do too.
- b. I don't either.

5. A: She'll be able to speak English very well next year.

B: _____ I practice all the time.

- a. Me neither.
- b. So will I.

6. A: They seldom get to class on time.

B: Well, _____

a. you don't either.

b. you do too.

7. A: I haven't seen him in years.

B: _____ I wonder what he's doing these days.

a. I have too.

b. I haven't either.

8. A: I usually go to bed before twelve.

B: _____

a. Me too.

b. Me neither.

E2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. I want to go to Hawaii, and so ~~he does~~. ^{does he}
2. They don't have enough money, but we do too.
3. The books cost a lot of money, and the paper was too.
4. She hasn't finished cleaning her room, and I have either.
5. Susan is angry, but I'm not.
6. We are going to go by plane, and so they are.
7. He is doing well in class, but she is.
8. The coffee was hot, and so was the tea.
9. He never gets a raise, and I do too.
10. Megan doesn't wear makeup, and neither doesn't Donna.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Listen to a conversation between two or three people in an English-language film or on a television program. Listen for examples of statements followed by short responses such as *I do too*, *Me too*, *Me either*, and *Neither do I*. Write down each statement and response. Bring your examples to class and discuss them with your classmates.

Writing

Follow these steps to write a letter to the editor about the writer's views in the letter on page 240.

1. Think about the topic. Divide a piece of paper into two columns. In one column, make notes about the writer's opinions. In the second column, make notes about your opinions.
2. Write a first draft. Use *and . . . too*, *and so*, *and . . . either*, *and neither*, and *but* to compare and contrast your ideas with the writer's ideas.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to help you decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.

Dear Editor,

I am responding to Charles Walker's letter in yesterday's newspaper. Mr. Walker thinks animals should have the right to live in peace, and so do I. We agree about this. However, Mr. Walker doesn't think apes are very different from humans, but I do. . . .

PART

6

**Nouns,
Quantity
Expressions,
and Articles**

Nouns and Quantity Expressions

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Mood Foods 262

B. FORM: Nouns and Quantity Expressions 264

COUNT AND NONCOUNT NOUNS
 An **egg** has 70 calories.
 Four **eggs** have 280 calories.
Juice is sweet.

GENERAL QUANTITY EXPRESSIONS
 There are **many / several / a few / few** apples in the bag.
 We have a **great deal of / a little / little** food.
 There are a **lot of / some / no** apples on the tree.

SPECIFIC QUANTITY EXPRESSIONS
 There is a **carton of eggs** in the refrigerator.

Informally Speaking: Reducing *Of* in Informal Speech 269

C. MEANING AND USE 1: General Quantity Expressions 270

Expressing Large and Small Amounts
Many vs. *Much*
A Few/A Little vs. *Few/Little*
 Expressing None
 Emphasizing Amounts

D. MEANING AND USE 2: Specific Quantity Expressions 276

Expressing Specific Amounts

E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use 279

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

What is your favorite food? Why do you like it? How do you feel after you eat it? Are there any foods that make you feel sleepy? Are there any foods that give you energy or help you stay awake?

A2 Read

Read the magazine article on the following page to find out how certain foods can affect the way you feel.

A3 After You Read

Answer these questions according to the information in the magazine article. Use the choices below.

^{keen} cayenne pepper cheese eggs honey
 chamomile tea coffee ginkgo biloba mint

1. Which two give you long-lasting energy? cheese, eggs
2. Which two calm your nerves? _____
3. Which one helps you stay awake but doesn't make you nervous? _____
4. Which one helps you wake up, but also makes you nervous? _____
5. Which one may help you concentrate? _____
6. Which one helps the body absorb calcium? _____

Pizza is delicious.
 披萨很好吃

I don't like the pizza at Domino's.

I don't like Pizza



MOOD FOODS



We all know that the food we eat can affect the way we look physically. But did you know that food can also have an impact on the way you feel?

The Situation	The Food	The Result
1. You have little energy in the morning.	Don't eat pancakes or toast. Have some cheese or an egg instead.	Eggs and cheese have a great deal of protein, which builds muscles and gives you long-lasting energy to start your day. Pancakes are high in carbohydrates, which can give you a lot of energy, but only for a short time.
2. You are preparing for an important meeting or for a final exam. You have to stay up late.	Don't have a cup of coffee. Mix one teaspoon of cayenne pepper with a quart of tomato juice. Then drink it.	The caffeine in coffee will keep you awake, but it will also make you nervous. Cayenne pepper gives you energy, but won't make you nervous. The tomato juice just covers up its hot taste.
3. You have looked at a report for three hours, and you can't concentrate anymore.	Take some ginkgo biloba, eat a few prunes, or drink a cup of ginger tea.	Many nutrition experts say that prunes, ginkgo biloba, and ginger may improve memory and concentration.
4. It's exam time, and you're really nervous.	Drink chamomile or peppermint tea. If you don't like tea, have a few pieces of mint candy.	Both chamomile and mint calm your nerves. (Some people also say that mint helps your digestion.)
5. You can't sleep, and your interview is only hours away.	Drink a cup of warm milk mixed with one teaspoon of honey.	Milk contains calcium and tryptophan, both of which have a calming effect. Honey may help the body absorb calcium.

Adapted from *Seventeen* magazine

absorb: to take something in (e.g., a sponge absorbs water)

concentrate: to focus your thoughts on something

digestion: the body's ability to break down food

gingko biloba: an herbal preparation that comes from the leaves of the gingko tree

impact: effect, influence

nutrition: food science

B

Nouns and Quantity Expressions

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. There is milk in this drink.
 1b. There is a lot of milk in this drink.
 2a. There is one calorie in this drink.
 2b. There are a lot of calories in this drink.

1. Look at the underlined nouns. Which are count nouns? Which is a noncount noun?
 2. Look back at the magazine article on page 263. Find the nouns below and write the quantity expressions that are used with them. (Some appear more than once.)

_____ energy _____ prunes _____ protein _____ people

COUNT AND NONCOUNT NOUNS

Count Nouns			
A, AN, THE, NUMBER, or Ø	COUNT NOUN	VERB	
An The One	egg	has	70 calories.
The Four	eggs	have	280 calories.
Ø	Eggs	have	a lot of protein.

Noncount Nouns			
THE or Ø	NONCOUNT NOUN	VERB	
The	juice	is	in the refrigerator.
Ø	Juice		sweet.

Count Nouns

- Count nouns can be counted. They have both singular and plural forms.
one **egg** four **eggs**
- A, an, the, a number (one, two, . . .), or Ø (no article) can come before count nouns.
- The plural of a count noun is usually formed by adding -s or -es to the singular form. See Appendix 1 for the spelling of nouns ending in -s or -es.
- Some count nouns have irregular plural forms. See Appendix 8 for a list of common irregular plural nouns. 不規則

Noncount Nouns

- Noncount nouns cannot be counted. They do not have plural forms.
- The or Ø (no article) can come before noncount nouns. A, an, or a number cannot come before them.

9/28
ZF

子
P>65
P>66

GENERAL QUANTITY EXPRESSIONS

Plural Count Nouns			
	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	COUNT NOUN	
There are	many several a few few	apples	in the bag.
There aren't	many	eggs	in the basket.

Noncount Nouns		
	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	NONCOUNT NOUN
We have	a great deal of a little little	food.
We don't have	much	milk.

Plural Count Nouns or Noncount Nouns			
	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	COUNT NOUN	
There are	a lot of some no	apples	on the tree.
There aren't	any	grapes	in the bowl.

Questions with How Many and How Much		
HOW MANY	COUNT NOUN	
How many	sandwiches	should I buy?
HOW MUCH	NONCOUNT NOUN	
How much	sugar	do you want?

	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	NONCOUNT NOUN	
There is	a lot of some no	food	in the bag.
There isn't	any	milk	in the cup.

(Continued on page 266)

receipt / visit a 706

General Quantity Expressions with Count Nouns

- Use *many*, *several*, *a few*, and *few* before count nouns.

General Quantity Expressions with Noncount Nouns

- Use *a great deal of*, *much*, *a little*, and *little* only before noncount nouns.
- *Much* is not usually used in affirmative statements. Use *a lot of* instead.

This recipe has **a lot of sugar** in it.

* This recipe has **much sugar** in it. (INCORRECT)

This recipe doesn't have ^{much sugar in it} a lot of

General Quantity Expressions with Count or Noncount Nouns

- *A lot of*, *lots of*, *plenty of*, *some*, *any*, and *no* can be used before both plural count nouns and noncount nouns.
- Use *any* before plural count nouns or noncount nouns in negative statements and questions.

Questions with *How Many* and *How Much*

- Use *how many* with plural count nouns to ask about quantity.
- Use *how much* with noncount nouns to ask about quantity.

NC
CW

SPECIFIC QUANTITY EXPRESSIONS

Plural Count Nouns or Noncount Nouns			
	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	COUNT NOUN	
There is	a carton of	eggs	in the refrigerator.
There are	two cartons of		
	QUANTITY EXPRESSION	NONCOUNT NOUN	
There is	a cup of	sugar	in the recipe.
There are	three teaspoons of		

How much does it cost?
It is?
are they?
請問價錢?
是嗎?
他們嗎?

- Many specific quantity expressions end in *of*. They can go before plural count nouns and noncount nouns.

I like coffee.

I'd like a cup of coffee.

She likes two cups of coffee.
drank

I need three coffees. 三杯咖啡
但之後不正確

This is a two-person bicycle.

B1 Listening for Form

- A.  Listen to each sentence. Are the nouns you hear count or noncount? Check (✓) the correct column.

	COUNT	NONCOUNT
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

news
 interviews
 information
 → people, one-person
 childrens → child
 milk
 sandwich
 coffee

- B.  Complete these conversations with the quantity expressions you hear.

Conversation 1

A: Do you have any news about those jobs you applied for?

B: Yes. I've had several₁ interviews. I'm sure I'll get an offer, but I need
 _____₂ information about the companies before I decide.

Conversation 2

A: Were there _____₁ people in the park?

B: There were _____₂ children! I forgot that summer vacation started last week.

Conversation 3

A: Would you like _____₁ milk with your sandwich?

B: No, thanks. I'd rather have _____₂ coffee.

Conversation 4

A: _____₁ food should I buy?

B: There are _____₂ people coming. You should buy _____₃ food.

B2 Working on Form

Choose the correct general quantity expression to complete each sentence.

- Desserts usually have _____ sugar.
 - lots of
 - many
- _____ salt often makes food taste better.
 - A few
 - A little
- Does ice cream have _____ calories?
 - many
 - much
- On hot days you should drink _____ water.
 - plenty of
 - many
- One reason junk food isn't good for you is that it has _____ vitamins.
 - little
 - few
- John ate _____ pancakes for breakfast.
 - a great deal of
 - a lot of

COUNT	NON-COUNT
many	a little
few	plenty of
a lot of	much

Some } + NC
 a lot of } + CN
 lots of }

B3 Asking Questions with *How Many . . . ?* and *How Much . . . ?*

Work with a partner. Use *How many* and *How much* to ask questions about the list of ingredients in this recipe for chocolate cake.

How many cups of sugar are in the recipe? OR How much sugar is in the recipe?

Chocolate Cake

Ingredients

- 1½ cups of sugar
- 5 eggs
- 1½ teaspoons of vanilla extract
- 1 teaspoon of almond extract
- 2 cups of sour cream
- 1½ teaspoons of baking powder
- ¼ teaspoon of salt
- 4 tablespoons of powdered cocoa
- 2 cups of chocolate chips
- ¾ cup of milk
- 1 stick (8 tablespoons) of butter
- ¾ cup of flour

Informally Speaking

Reducing *Of* in Informal Speech

 Look at the cartoon and listen to the conversation. How are the underlined forms in the cartoon different from what you hear?



The word *of* in quantity expressions is often reduced in informal speech.

STANDARD FORM

You need **plenty of** time.

There are **a lot of** cars here.

He has **lots of** money.

WHAT YOU MIGHT HEAR

“You need /'plɛniə/ time.”

“There are /ə'laʊ/ cars here.”

“He has /'lɒtsə/ money.”

B4 Understanding Informal Speech

 Listen and write the standard form of the words you hear.

1. _____ Lots of _____ people enjoy playing golf.
2. _____ my friends are coming over tonight.
3. If you're going to Las Vegas, take _____ money.
4. This dishwasher uses a great _____ hot water.
5. Are you hungry? There's _____ food left over from the party.
6. There are _____ lakes in Minnesota.
7. He took _____ classes last year.
8. We won't be late. We have _____ time.

C

General Quantity Expressions

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Ben has many friends.
 - 1b. Eva has few friends.
 - 1c. Josh has lots of friends.
 - 1d. Tony has a lot of friends.
 - 2a. There's little time left. I don't think we can get there by 8:30.
 - 2b. There's a little time left. We can get there by 8:30 easily.
1. Look at 1a–1d. Underline the quantity expressions. Who has a large number of friends? Who has a small number of friends?
 2. Look at 2a and 2b. Underline the quantity expressions. In which sentence is there not enough time?

Meaning and Use Notes

Expressing Large and Small Amounts

- 1 General quantity expressions are used to refer to larger and smaller amounts. They don't refer to exact amounts. Many, much, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, and a great deal of all have the same meaning, but lots of and plenty of are more informal and are more commonly used in spoken English.

Larger Amount



Smaller Amount

- many, much, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great deal of
- some/several
- a few/a little
- few/little

There are **many** calories in potato chips.

Milk has **lots of** calcium. 鈣

There is **some** juice in the refrigerator. 冷蔵庫

There are **a few** people here.

We have **little** money, so we rarely go on vacation.

Many vs. Much

- 2A Use *many* in affirmative and negative statements and questions. Use *much* in negative statements and questions.

Many

I have **many** friends.

I **don't** have **many** friends.

Do you have **many** friends?

Much

—

We **don't** get **much** rain here.

Do you get **much** rain here?

- 2B *Much* is not usually used alone in affirmative statements. Use (a lot of) instead.

We get **a lot of** rain here.

A Few/A Little vs. Few/Little

- 3A Use *a few/a little* or *few/little* to talk about smaller amounts. However, notice the difference in meaning:

Few vs. A Few

We have **few** sandwiches left. We'll have to make more.

(We have a small number of sandwiches, but not enough.)

We have **a few** sandwiches left. Would you like one?

(We have a small number of sandwiches, but it's enough.)

Little vs. A Little

I can't pay my rent this month. I have **little** money in the bank.

(I have a small amount of money, and it isn't enough.)

I can pay my rent this month. I have **a little** money in the bank.

(I have a small amount of money, but it's enough.)

- 3B Not . . . many and not . . . much are more common in speech than few and little.

We **don't** have **many** sandwiches left. We'll have to make more.

I can't pay my rent this month. I **don't** have **much** money in the bank.

Expressing None

- 4 Use *no* or *not any* to express *none*. No is used in affirmative statements, but it has a negative meaning. Not any is used to form a negative statement. *Not* usually contracts with the verb.

{ There is **no** sugar
There **isn't any** sugar }

in this dessert.

{ There are **no** eggs
There **aren't any** eggs }

in this recipe.

(Continued on page 272)

Emphasizing Amounts

- 5A** You can use so and too before many and much to emphasize a larger amount. Too usually has a negative meaning.

Plural Count Nouns with Many

There are **so many** choices on this menu.
Isn't it wonderful?

There are **too many** choices on this menu.
I can't decide what to eat.

Noncount Nouns with Much

She's made **so much** money this year.
She's very happy about it.

She's made **too much** money this year.
She'll have to pay a lot in taxes.

- 5B** Use only before a few or a little to emphasize an even smaller amount. Use quite with a few (but not with a little) to emphasize a larger amount.

Plural Count Nouns with A Few

Only a few houses are available.
(There are a **small number** of houses.)

Quite a few houses are available.
(There are a **large number** of houses.)

Noncount Nouns with A Little

A: Would you like some milk in
your coffee?

B: **Only a little**, please.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1-5



Listen to this conversation. Listen carefully for the nouns in the chart. Is the speaker talking about a large quantity of each noun, a small quantity, or none at all? Check (✓) the correct column.

		LARGE QUANTITY	SMALL QUANTITY	NONE
1.	work	✓		
2.	milk			
3.	cars			
4.	homework			
5.	food			
6.	books			
7.	caffeine			
8.	tests			
9.	money			
10.	friends			

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation.

1. A: I have a little money.

B: _____

a. So do I. Let's go out to dinner.

b. Then we'd better not go out to dinner. Let's have spaghetti at home.

2. A: Can you help me with my homework?

B: Sorry. I _____ time right now.

a. have much

b. don't have much

3. A: The kids do a lot of housework these days.

B: _____

a. That's great! They're finally old enough to help you.

b. That's not good. You should ask them to help you more.

4. A: So far we have no information.

B: _____

a. I don't, either.

b. I do, too.

5. A: There are too many people here.

B: _____

a. I agree. Why don't we leave?

b. I know. It's wonderful, isn't it?

6. A: Can we still get tickets to the concert?

B: I'm not sure. There are _____ a few tickets left.

a. only

b. quite

不是太多,但是足够了! enough

C3 Talking About Small Quantities

► Note 3

Work with a partner. Consider the meaning of each sentence and complete it with *a few*, *few*, *a little*, or *little*.

1. The students thought the exam was very difficult. They complained that _____ *few* _____ people got high grades.
2. Amy has to visit a friend in the hospital. She can probably go on Monday because she has _____ time in the afternoon.
3. Not everyone was able to sit down because there were _____ chairs.
4. Pedro is trying to teach Gina to play guitar. Gina doesn't practice, so she's making _____ progress. She needs to practice a lot more.
5. Luckily, the school library has _____ books on the history of India, so I'll be able to finish my history project tonight.
6. Koji's new computer isn't working correctly. He calls the store and says, "I'm having _____ trouble with my new computer."

C4 Using Quantity Expressions

► Notes 1-3, 5

Rick's office had a party. One hundred people attended the party. Rick ordered the food, but he made some mistakes. Make sentences about the amounts of food that Rick ordered. Use quantity expressions in affirmative and negative sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 150 hot dogs, 30 hot dogs buns | 1 apple pie, 10 chocolate cakes |
| 50 hamburgers, 100 hamburger buns | 1 gallon of lemonade, 3 bottles of soda |
| 5 bags of potato chips | 10 gallons of coffee, 1 gallon of iced tea |
| 2 bowls of salad | 50 cups, 100 plates, 25 napkins |

He bought plenty of hot dogs, but he didn't buy many hot dog buns.

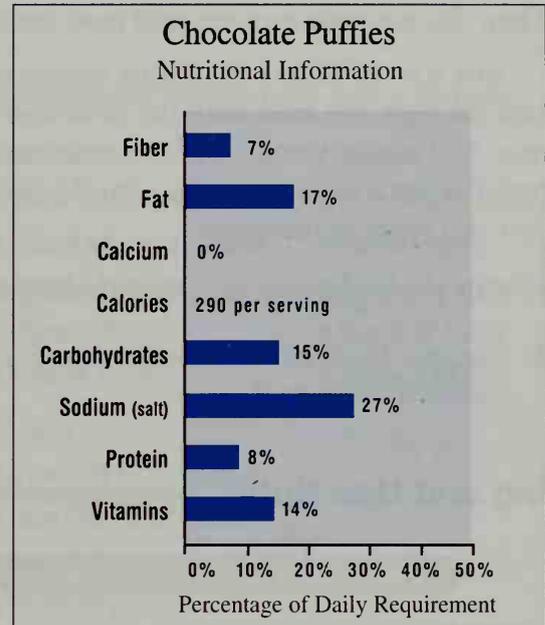
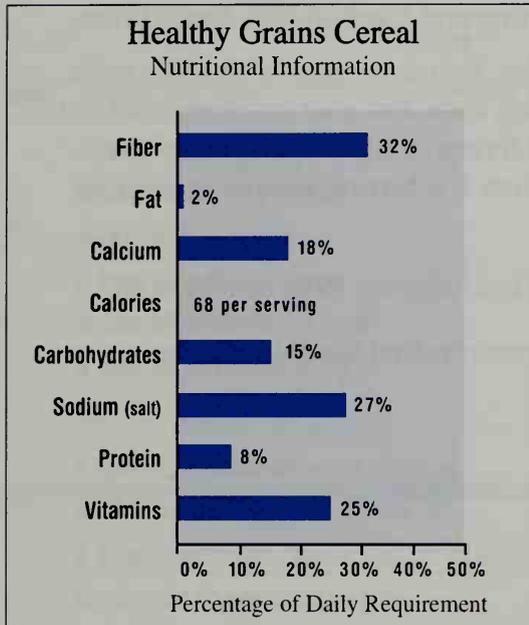
A. Work with a partner. Look at the charts. Take turns asking and answering questions about the two cereals. Use quantity expressions.

A: Does Healthy Grains have much fiber?

B: Yes, it has plenty of fiber. What about Chocolate Puffies?

How much fiber does it have?

A: It has only a little.



B. Look at the nutritional information on the package of a food that you eat often. Write four sentences about the nutritional value of this food.

Spaghetti has a lot of carbohydrates. It has very little fat and ...

D Specific Quantity Expressions

a ^片 slice of -片...
v. 切成薄片

Examining Meaning and Use

Read these instructions for making pancakes and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

Mix a lot of flour with a little baking powder. ^打 Beat some eggs with some milk. Mix the eggs and milk with the flour and baking soda. Put a lot of blueberries in the mix. Add a little vanilla. Melt some butter in a frying pan. Pour in some of the batter. After a while, turn the pancake over. When it is brown, remove it from the pan and serve immediately.

1. Can you make pancakes by following these instructions? Why or why not? ^{指示}
2. Can you think of any specific quantity expressions that should be in the instructions above? ^{No. No quantity Expressions}

Meaning and Use Notes

Expressing Specific Amounts

1A General quantity expressions indicate only whether quantities are large or small. Specific quantity expressions give exact amounts.

General Quantity Expression

I ate **too much** pizza.

He bought **a lot of** potato chips.

Specific Quantity Expression

I ate **six slices** of pizza.

He bought **ten bags of** potato chips.

1B Specific quantity expressions can be used with plural count nouns or noncount nouns.

Plural Count Nouns

a box of matches

a cup of raisins

Noncount Nouns

a box of cereal

a cup of sugar

1C Specific quantity expressions make noncount nouns countable. ^{可数名词}

one bowl of milk ^{不可数}

two cans of soup

six ounces of beef

four gallons of gas ^{不可数}

^{如命}
不可数
不可数

2 inches = 1 foot
 3 feet = 1 yard

1D The expression *a piece of* can be used with a number of noncount nouns to express a specific amount.

a piece of *pieces* {
 cake
 bread
 furniture
 clothing
 advice
 news
 information

1E There are many different types of specific quantity expressions. Some include:

Containers 箱 罐 瓶 袋
 a carton of eggs/milk
 a jar of mayonnaise
 a bag of potato chips
 a can of soda/tuna fish
 a box of cereal/candy

Portions
 a slice of bread
 a piece of candy/cake
 a bowl of soup
 a glass of milk
 a cup of coffee

Groups
 a bunch of bananas
 a dozen eggs
 a herd of cattle
 a flock of birds
 a school of fish

Measurements 测量 份量
 a quart/gallon of juice
 an inch/foot/yard of cloth
 a cup/teaspoon/tablespoon of salt
 an ounce/pound of butter

Shapes
 a grain of rice/sand
 a pile/stack of leaves
 a drop of water
 a stick of butter

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use ▶ Notes 1A-1E

Listen to this description. Listen carefully for each food in the chart. Does the speaker mention a specific or general amount? Check (✓) the correct column.

		SPECIFIC	GENERAL
1.	tomatoes	✓	
2.	ground beef	✓	
3.	salt		✓
4.	onions		✓
5.	cream		✓
6.	spaghetti	✓	
7.	water	✓	
8.	bread		✓

box of
 gallon
 some

D2 Choosing Specific Quantity Expressions

► Notes 1A-1E

Work with a partner. Each item has one specific quantity expression that is incorrect. Cross it out.

1. a piece of cloth
~~a pound of cloth~~
a yard of cloth
2. a drop of milk
a pound of milk
a quart of milk
3. a piece of bread
a slice of bread
a tablespoon of bread
4. a grain of rice
a bunch of rice
a cup of rice
5. an ounce of fish
a pound of fish
a gallon of fish
6. a slice of cereal
a cup of cereal
a box of cereal
7. a bag of peanut butter
a jar of peanut butter
a teaspoon of peanut butter
8. a can of food
a bowl of food
a yard of food
9. a bunch of bananas
a pound of bananas
a quart of bananas
10. a drop of papers
a pile of papers
a box of papers

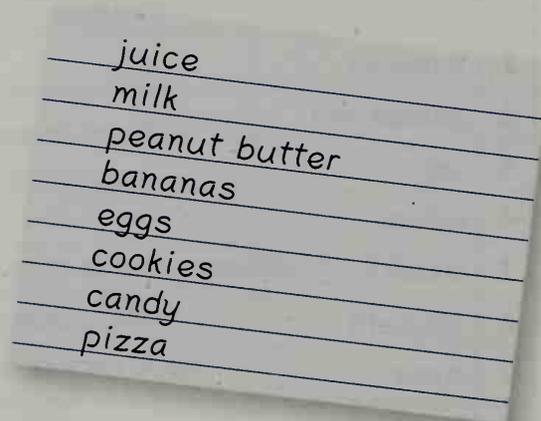
D3 Using Specific Quantity Expressions

► Notes 1A-1E

Work with a partner. Look at the shopping list and take turns asking and telling your partner about how much of each item you're going to buy. Use specific quantity words and expressions.

A: How much juice are you going to buy?

B: I think I'll get three quarts of juice.



E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. A: We have plenty of food.
B: _____
a. OK. I'll get some more.
b. OK. I won't bring any.</p> | <p>4. A: Is a gallon enough for ten people?
B: _____
a. No. Buy more meat.
b. No. Buy more soda.</p> |
| <p>2. A: I have little free time.
B: _____
a. Oh. Then you can't help me.
b. Good. Then you can help me.</p> | <p>5. A: We don't have any milk.
B: _____
a. Good. I need a cup for this recipe.
b. I'll go buy some.</p> |
| <p>3. A: My car gives me little trouble.
B: _____
a. Why don't you get it fixed?
b. You're lucky.</p> | <p>6. A: It snowed here last night.
B: _____
a. How many inches did you get?
b. How many quarts did you get?</p> |

P 271
→ A

好事因不是信

夸特 容量单位

E2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. There is several fruit ^{are several pieces of fruit} in the basket.</p> <p>2. We bought many food.</p> <p>3. There isn't much salt in the soup.</p> <p>4. There isn't much traffic at night.</p> <p>5. I have little money, so I guess we can go out to dinner tonight.</p> | <p>6. I bought a grain of eggs.</p> <p>7. How many does a pound of beef cost?</p> <p>8. We had foot of snow last night.</p> <p>9. Could I have a piece of cake?</p> <p>10. She'll graduate soon. She only has a little more courses to take.</p> |
|---|--|

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look for an article on healthy foods in an English-language magazine or newspaper, or on the Internet. Find five specific and five general quantity expressions with nouns. Write them down and bring them to class. What other quantity expressions could be used with these nouns? Discuss your answers with your classmates.

Writing

You write a food column for a magazine called *Health Nut*. You have just received this letter.

	<i>Dear Health Nut,</i>
	<i>I am a teenager. My favorite foods are pizza and hamburgers.</i>
<input type="radio"/>	<i>I also like potato chips, candy, and soda. My parents say</i>
	<i>that these foods are not good for me, but I feel fine. What</i>
	<i>do you think? Are these foods good or bad? What should I eat?</i>
	<i>Yours truly,</i>
	<i>Junk Food Jan</i>

Follow the steps below to write a reply to the letter.

1. Think about the topic. Make notes about what you want to say.
2. Write a first draft. Use count and noncount nouns with quantity expressions where possible.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to help you decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

Dear Junk Food Jan,

Your parents are right. It is not good to eat too much of these kinds of food. . . .



不确定的

确定的

Indefinite and Definite Articles

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Meat-Eating Plants 282

B. FORM: Indefinite and Definite Articles 284

a flower	the flower
an insect	the insect
∅ flowers	the flowers
some water	the water

C. MEANING AND USE 1: Indefinite and Definite Articles 287

The Indefinite Article for Introducing a Noun

The Definite Article for Identifying a Noun

Vocabulary Notes: Phrases such as *In School* and *In the School* 292

D. MEANING AND USE 2: Nouns in General Statements 293

Making General Statements

E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use 297

A

Meat-Eating Plants

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions with your classmates.

Do you know about any unusual plants? What makes them unusual? Have you ever heard of a meat-eating plant? What kind of meat do you think it eats?

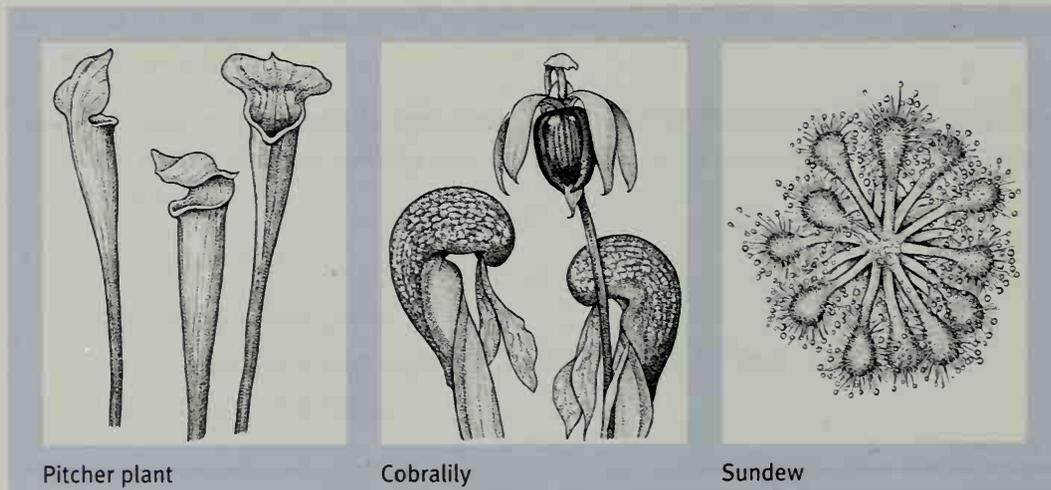
A2 Read

Read the book excerpt on the following page to find out how meat-eating plants attract insects and other small animals.

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

1. Venus flytraps are one kind of carnivorous plant.
2. Flies can easily escape from a Venus flytrap.
3. Carnivorous plants have moving parts.
4. There are about 450 kinds of carnivorous plants.
5. Carnivorous plants eat large animals.
6. Some carnivorous plants smell sweet.



Pitcher plant

Cobralily

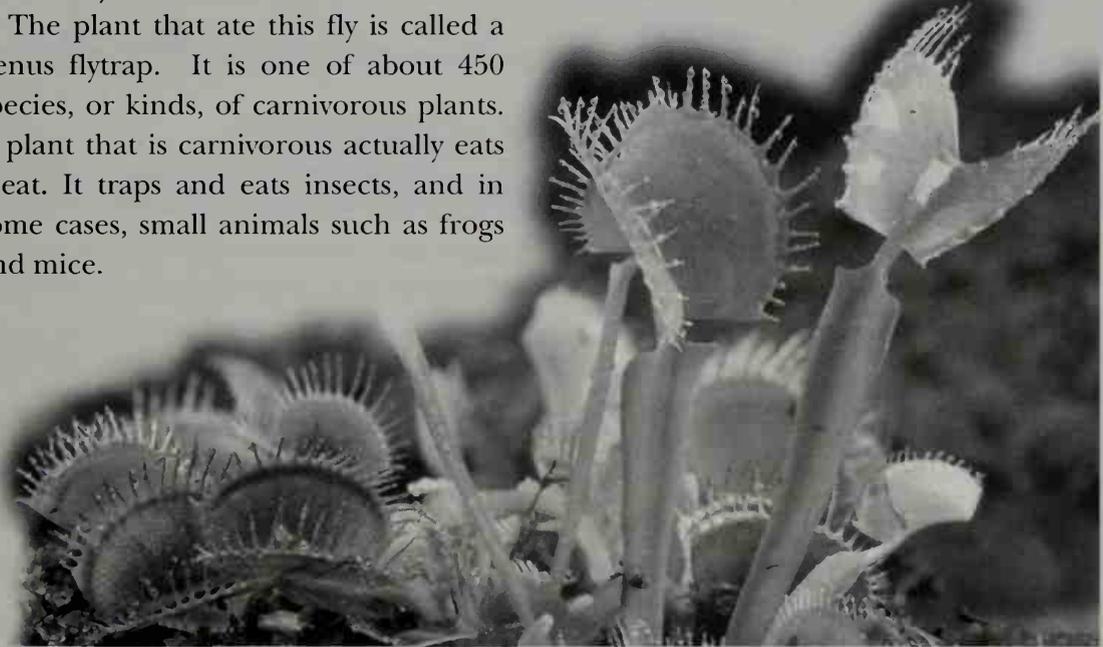
Sundew

Meat-Eating Plants

A black fly hovers in the air over a strange-looking plant. Attracted by a sweet smell, the fly lands on one of the plant's flat, red leaves. The fly begins to crawl across the leaf. Suddenly, the leaf moves! Before the fly can get away, the leaf closes around it. Two rows of teeth close together. Escape is impossible. The fly tries to get out, but the trap closes more tightly. Soon the fly is dead. In a few days there is nothing left but the hard parts of its body.

The plant that ate this fly is called a Venus flytrap. It is one of about 450 species, or kinds, of carnivorous plants. A plant that is carnivorous actually eats meat. It traps and eats insects, and in some cases, small animals such as frogs and mice.

How do these unusual plants work? They must attract animals. Unlike a frog or a bird, a carnivorous plant cannot reach out and grab an insect. It must wait until an insect comes to it. Some carnivorous plants give off a sweet smell that attracts insects such as flies, bees, and ants. Other carnivorous plants have bright colors and patterns. And one species has leaves covered with sparkling droplets that attract insects with bright color and light, as well as with a sweet smell.



Venus flytrap

Adapted from *Carnivorous Plants*

crawl: to move slowly with the body close to the ground, like a baby

droplet: a very small drop of liquid

grab: to take hold of something quickly

hover: to stay in the air without moving forward

insect: a small animal such as an ant, fly, or bee

sparkling: shiny and bright from light, like water in sunshine

B

Indefinite and Definite Articles

Examining Form

Look back at the book excerpt on page 283 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- Complete each sentence from the reading with an article (*a*, *an*, or *the*).
 - ___ black fly hovers in ___ air over ___ strange-looking plant.
 - Suddenly, ___ leaf moves.
 - In a few days there is nothing left but ___ hard parts of its body.
- Look at the underlined nouns in the sentences above. Are they count nouns or noncount nouns? In these examples, which article(s) are used with singular count nouns? Which are used with plural count nouns? Which are used with noncount nouns?

Indefinite Article	
A/AN	SINGULAR COUNT NOUN
a / <i>one</i>	flower uniform
an	insect hour

Ø or SOME	PLURAL COUNT NOUN
Ø some	flowers uniforms insects hours

Ø or SOME	NONCOUNT NOUN
Ø some	water information money

Definite Article	
THE	SINGULAR COUNT NOUN
the	flower uniform insect hour

THE	PLURAL COUNT NOUN
the	flowers uniforms insects hours

THE	NONCOUNT NOUN
the	water information money

vowel sound

vowels

an = apple
= elephant
= inch
= owl
= uncle

an hour = our sounds the same

an F.B.I

of

Do you have the book for the class?

↓
specific book

Indefinite Article

- The indefinite article is *a* or *an*. It can be used before a singular count noun (*a book*) or an adjective + a singular count noun (*an interesting book*).
- Use *a* before words that begin with a consonant sound (*a flower, a uniform*). Use *an* before words that begin with a vowel sound (*an insect, an hour*).
- Do not use *a* or *an* before plural count nouns or noncount nouns. We show this with the symbol \emptyset , which means "no article."
a money (X)
love (✓)
- *Some* often acts like an indefinite article before plural count nouns and noncount nouns.

Definite Article

- The definite article is *the*. It can be used before singular count nouns, plural count nouns, and noncount nouns.
- The definite article can be used before a noun (*the flower*) or an adjective + noun (*the beautiful flower*).
- When *the* comes before a noun that begins with a consonant sound, it is often pronounced /ðə/. When *the* comes before a noun that begins with a vowel sound, it is often pronounced /ði/.

/ðə/	/ði/
the plant	the insect

B1 Listening for Form

 Listen to these sentences. Listen carefully for the nouns in the chart. Which article do you hear before each noun? Check (✓) the correct column.

		A	AN	THE	∅ (NO ARTICLE)
1.	scientist	✓			
2.	botany				
3.	plants				
4.	hour				
5.	books				
6.	fork				
7.	apple				
8.	children				
9.	pen				
10.	flowers				

B2 Working on the Indefinite Article

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. I'd like ~~an~~^a hot drink.
2. Can you give me a example?
3. I waited an whole hour for you. Where were you?
4. If you're going to London, don't forget a umbrella.
5. We saw a huge old elephant at the zoo.
6. You've met the Senator? What a honor!
7. She's thinking about buying an used car.
8. He isn't a honest man.
9. Can I use a one dollar bill in the soda machine?
10. Cornell is an university in New York state.

B3 Working on Singular and Plural Forms

Look at the underlined count nouns in these sentences. Rewrite the sentences in the plural. Change singular nouns to plural nouns, and plural nouns to singular nouns. Change the form of the verb where necessary.

1. A new store is opening here soon. New stores are opening here soon.
2. Celia is taking a class now. _____
3. The sandwich is good. _____
4. We saw some interesting movies. _____
5. We've been here for hours. _____
6. The new people at work are nice. _____
7. Mr. Smith has a cow and some horses. _____
8. The girls need uniforms for school. _____
→ some cows → a horse
9. There was an insect in the bathroom. _____
girl needs a uniform
10. Some men were talking to my father. _____
more insects
A man was " " "

C

Indefinite and Definite Articles

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the task below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Let's go shopping. I need a lamp for my bedroom.
- 1b. We'll need to use a flashlight. The lamp in the bedroom is broken.
- 2a. Excuse me, sir. I'm looking for a bank. Do you know where one is?
- 2b. Excuse me, sir. Where is the bank in this mall?

Compare the meaning of the underlined articles and nouns in each pair of sentences. In which sentences do the speakers have a specific object or place in mind? In which sentences do the speakers have only a general idea of the object or place they mention?

Meaning and Use Notes

The Indefinite Article for Introducing a Noun

- 1A** Use *a* or *an* to introduce a singular count noun. (There is) or (there are) often begins a sentence or clause that introduces a noun with an indefinite article.

Woman: Did you see **a little boy** walk by here five minutes ago?

Police Officer: I'm not sure. What does he look like?

Woman: He has brown hair, and there's a big soccer ball on his sweatshirt.

- 1B** Use *some* or \emptyset (no article) to introduce plural count nouns or noncount nouns.

I need some batteries for my camera.

I called for some information.

I need \emptyset **batteries** for my camera.

I called for \emptyset **information**.

- 1C** When a speaker uses an indefinite article, the noun is not a specific thing in the mind of the listener. In the speaker's mind, however, sometimes the noun is specific and sometimes it is not.

Bob: I bought **a new car**. (Bob has a specific car in mind, but the listener doesn't.)

Bob: I need **a new car**. (Neither Bob nor the listener have a specific car in mind.)

↓
nothing happen.

(Continued on page 288)

The Definite Article for Identifying a Noun

Use *the* to refer to a noun that both you and a listener can identify. This is possible when you and the listener share information about the noun.

- 2A** Use the definite article after a noun has already been introduced with an indefinite article.

Introduced (with Indefinite Article)

I bought Koji a sweater and a watch for his birthday.

Mentioned Again (with Definite Article)

The sweater doesn't fit and **the watch** doesn't work!

- 2B** Use the definite article for objects that you can see or hear.

Nouns You Can See or Hear

Could you pass **the butter**, please?

That must be a big fire. I can hear **the sirens** from here!

- 2C** Use the definite article when you and a listener share general knowledge about something in your environment.

Noun of General Knowledge

A: Oh, no! **The copy machine** is broken again!

B: I can't believe it!

(Both workers use a particular copy machine, so they know which one is broken.)

- 2D** Use the definite article when other information in the sentence identifies the noun.

Noun Identified in Sentence

Turn off **the light** near the door.

(The phrase *near the door* tells which light.)

Please hand me **the book** about England.

(The phrase *about England* tells which book.)

- 2E** Use the definite article with certain nouns (*store, doctor, hospital, movies, bank, park, TV, telephone*) that are familiar to you and a listener in everyday life.

Familiar Noun

A: I'm going to **the doctor** this morning. Can I borrow your car?

B: Sure.

A: Hello. I'm here to see Ms. Stephens.

B: I'm sorry, she's on **the telephone**. Would you like to sit down and wait?

- 2F** Use the definite article for a noun that is unique (the only one of its type).

Unique Noun

The earth revolves around **the sun**.

Tokyo is **the capital** of Japan.

↓
only one !!

unique
juni:k
ジュニク

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 2A, 2C, 2E



Listen to these sentences. Listen carefully for the nouns in the chart. Is each speaker introducing a noun or referring to a noun that the listener can identify? Check (✓) the correct column.

		INTRODUCING A NOUN	REFERRING TO A NOUN THAT THE LISTENER CAN IDENTIFY
1.	present	✓	
2.	children		
3.	car		
4.	teacher		
5.	restaurant		
6.	man		
7.	bank		
8.	article		
9.	car keys		
10.	meeting		

C2 Choosing the Correct Article

► Notes 1, 2A, 2D

Choose the articles that best complete this description.

The Venus flytrap is (a / some) famous carnivorous plant that grows in North and South Carolina. (The / \emptyset) entire plant is about a foot tall. In spring it has (the / \emptyset) small white flowers. But the most interesting parts of (a / the) plant are its leaves.

(The / \emptyset) leaves grow in (a / some) circle around the bottom of (\emptyset / the) plant. Each leaf opens into two halves. On (the / \emptyset) surface of the leaves there are (some / the) short hairs. They are called (\emptyset / some) trigger hairs. If (an / the) insect lands on one of (\emptyset / the) leaves and touches (a / the) trigger hairs in a certain way, (the / some) two halves close tightly around (an / the) insect.

To find more information about (\emptyset / the) carnivorous plants, look in (\emptyset / the) plant guides, (an / \emptyset) encyclopedia, or on the Internet.

C3 Using Definite and Indefinite Articles

► Notes 1-2

Complete each sentence with *the*, *a*, *an*, or \emptyset .

1. A: Excuse me. Where's Room 203?

B: Room 203 is the room at the end of the hall, next to the stairs.

2. Two women are eating lunch. There's a bottle of water on the table. One says, "Please pass me _____ water, Julie."

3. A: How do you get to school?

B: I walk, but it takes too long. I think I'll buy _____ bike next semester.

4. Look at _____ sky! It's beautiful, isn't it?

5. My friend made a cake and a pie. I tasted _____ pie, and it was delicious!

6. Two roommates are cleaning their apartment. One says, "Could you help me move _____ couch? I need to sweep under there."

7. Oh, no! There's _____ fly in my salad.
8. This evening I'm going to visit my aunt. She's in _____ hospital.
9. A: May I borrow your camera?
B: Yes, but you need to buy _____ film for it.
10. Two co-workers are standing near a printer. One of them says,
"I think _____ printer is out of paper."

C4 Guessing About Contexts

► Notes 1-2

Work with a partner. Discuss the two sentences in each situation. How does the speaker's use of the indefinite or definite article change the meaning? Make guesses about the context of each sentence.

1. Two young women are talking. One says:
 - a. "I hope I get the job."
 - b. "I hope I get a job."

A: *In the first sentence the definite article means that the job is specific for both her and her friend. Maybe the young woman has applied for a specific job that her friend knows about.*

B: *In the second sentence the indefinite article means that she doesn't have a specific job in mind. It sounds like she's not working and will take just about any job.*
2. A married couple is talking. The man says:
 - a. "I bought the book on Tahiti."
 - b. "I bought a book on Tahiti."
3. Two young men are talking. One says:
 - a. "I got the letter today."
 - b. "I got a letter today."
4. A middle-aged woman is talking to her son. She says:
 - a. "Did you buy a suit?"
 - b. "Did you buy the suit?"

Vocabulary Notes

Phrases such as *In School* and *In the School*

After the preposition *in*, some nouns change meaning depending on whether they are used with an article or not. Some examples are *school*, *college*, *prison*, *court*, *church*, *bed*, and *class*. Use these nouns without an article to refer to what people usually do in them. Use these nouns with an article to refer to the physical place or object.

Ø ARTICLE

Are your children in school?

(Are they students?)

Davis is **in prison**.

(He's a prisoner.)

Professor Lee is **in class**.

(He's teaching.)

WITH AN ARTICLE

Are your children **in the school**?

(Are they in the school building?)

Davis is **in the prison**.

(He's not a prisoner, but he's in the building.)

There aren't enough chairs **in the class**.

(in the class = in the room)

C5 Using Nouns that Change Meaning

Work with a partner. Complete each sentence with *the* or Ø (no article).

1. He's still in _____ school, but he's graduating next year.
2. On the tour, a guide showed us some beautiful stained glass windows in _____ church.
3. Professor Johnson teaches two courses. He's in _____ class all morning, and he has office hours in the afternoon.
4. There is a job opening for a social worker in _____ prison. They're looking for someone with a lot of experience.
5. Right now, there's no gym in _____ college, so I can't exercise here.
6. As an attorney, she spends a lot of her time in _____ court.
7. When I was in _____ college, I lived at home.
8. I know three people in my history course. Rita, Holly, and Omar are in _____ class.

D

Nouns in General Statements

说明、表述

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Students often don't get enough sleep.
- 1b. How much sleep do the students in your class get?
- 2a. Plants usually need light and water.
- 2b. The plants in my garden don't need much water.

Compare the meaning of the underlined nouns in each pair of sentences.

1. In which sentences do they refer to a group of people or plants in general?
2. In which sentences do the underlined nouns refer to specific people or plants?

Meaning and Use Notes

Making General Statements

- 1A** Sometimes a noun is used to make a general statement about a whole class or group. These nouns do not identify a specific person, place, or thing. They represent all members of that class or group.

Ants are insects.

Chocolate is made from cacao seeds.

- 1B** When making general statements about a whole class or group, we use *a/an* with singular count nouns, and \emptyset with plural count nouns and noncount nouns.

Singular Count Noun

A cheetah can run very fast.

Plural Count Noun

Cheetahs can run very fast.

Noncount Noun

Oxygen is necessary for our survival.

(Continued on page 294)

1C You may also see or hear the before singular count nouns in more formal discussions about plants, animals, and machines. Musical instruments usually occur with *the* in general statements.

The giant panda is an endangered animal.
It is difficult to play **the violin**.

1D General statements are often used to classify and define nouns.

A diary is a daily record of a person's life.
A carnivorous plant is a plant that eats meat.

1E General statements are also often used to express opinions.

Sharks are beautiful creatures.

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A-1C



Listen to each sentence. Listen carefully for the nouns in the chart. What does each one represent: a specific person, place, or thing, or a whole class or group? Check (✓) the correct column.

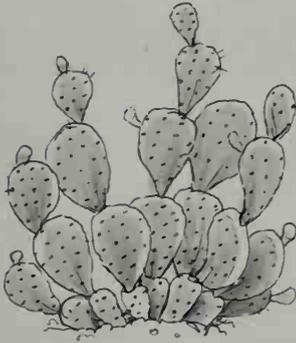
		SPECIFIC PERSON, PLACE, OR THING	WHOLE CLASS OR GROUP
1.	a. teachers		✓
	b. tests		✓
2.	a. kids		
	b. dogs		
3.	a. girl		
	b. information		
4.	a. dolphin		
	b. animal		
5.	a. radio station		
	b. advertisements		
6.	a. doctor		
	b. hospital		

D2 Classifying and Defining Nouns

► Note 1D

A. Look at the pictures. Match each group noun below to the appropriate specific noun.

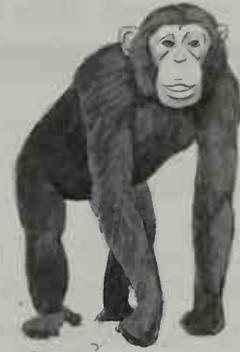
ape fish plant dog insect flower



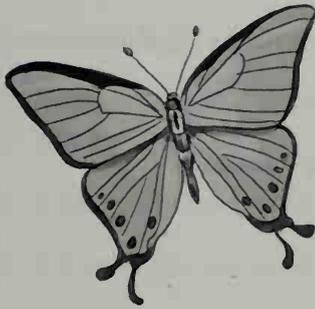
1. cactus - plant



3. poodle - _____



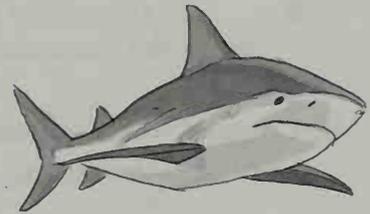
5. chimp - _____



2. butterfly - _____



4. rose - _____



6. shark - _____

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking for and giving definitions of the specific nouns in part A.

A: *What's a cactus?*

B: *A cactus is a plant.*

D3 Giving Your Opinion

► Note 1E

Work with a partner. Discuss your opinion about the topics below.

cats football politicians television
doctors housework rock music the guitar

A: *Television wasn't a good invention.*

B: *I agree. People don't read enough books these days. TV has made us lazy.*

A. Complete the statements with a, an, or ∅. Be sure to capitalize the first word of each sentence where necessary.

1. ∅ ^{Rainforests} ~~rainforests~~ are very warm, wet, dense forests. They cover about 6% of the earth's land surface.
2. _____ parrot is a well-known rainforest bird.
3. _____ teak and mahogany are two kinds of exotic wood that come from rainforest trees.
4. _____ jaguars are large beautiful rainforest cats. They are in danger of becoming extinct.
5. _____ rhinoceros beetle is a beetle that has a curved horn on its head. It is one of the more exotic-looking rainforest insects.



B. Complete these sentences with a, an, the, or ∅. Be sure to capitalize the first word of each sentence where necessary.

1. ∅ ^{Wolves} ~~wolves~~ usually live in groups.
2. _____ chair is a piece of furniture that you can sit on.
- The 3. _____ flute is my favorite instrument.
- ∅ 4. _____ ^{rice} ~~rice~~ is a popular food in Asia.
- The 5. _____ trumpet is very hard to play.
6. _____ ^{palm trees} ~~palm trees~~ are common in places with a tropical climate.
7. _____ calcium is important for strong bones.
8. _____ mango is a tropical fruit.

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read the conversations and the statements that follow. Write *True*, *False*, or *It's not clear* next to each statement.

Conversation 1

A: Have you met the new teacher?

B: No, I haven't.

1. B knows that there is going to be a new teacher. True
2. B knows the new teacher. _____

Conversation 2

A: Betty works in a department store.

B: Really? Does she like it?

1. A knows the name of the department store. _____
2. B knows the name of the department store. _____

Conversation 3

A: Did you buy a computer?

B: Yes. They're delivering it tomorrow.

1. A knows what kind of computer B bought. _____
2. B knows what kind of computer he or she bought. _____

Conversation 4

A: Please open the window. It's hot in here.

B: I can't. It's broken.

1. A and B are talking on the telephone. _____
2. There is only one window in the room. _____

E2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

The leaves of Venus flytraps are ~~the~~ clever traps. Each leaf has the “trigger” hairs. When these hairs move, a trap closes. When leaf is open, the trap is set, ready for a insect to come. Plant attracts insects with the sweet smell. When an insect crawls across the leaf, it moves the trigger hairs. This is a signal for a trap to close. But the trap must receive two signals before it closes. It will close only if one hair moves twice or if two hairs move. This way, the plant makes sure that it has caught the live creature and not the piece of grass or a leaf.

▶ Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look at an English-language recipe in a cookbook, magazine, or on the Internet. Find five examples of definite and indefinite articles and bring them to class. Are the articles you found used to introduce a noun, to refer to a noun that the listener can identify, or to make a general statement? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Follow these steps to make a group presentation of a story.

1. Work in small groups. Choose a story that you all know. It can be a true story, a fairy tale, a story from a movie or book, or a story that you make up. Make sure that the story isn't too long. You should be able to tell it in about five minutes.
2. Make notes about your story. Then assign each person a different part.
3. Practice telling your part of the story from your notes. Think about how you will use indefinite and definite articles.
4. Present the story to your class.

Once upon a time there was a beautiful young girl. The girl lived in a small village. She had a very mean stepmother. . . .

Adjectives and Adverbs

PART

7



Adjectives and Adverbs

Classroom

Writing Exercise

Ask students to describe the book as an English language
reference work. They should list the strengths of the book
and how they would use it. They should also list the
weaknesses of the book and how they would use it.

Classroom Discussion

Ask students to discuss the book as a reference work.
They should list the strengths of the book and how they
would use it. They should also list the weaknesses of the
book and how they would use it.

Ask students to discuss the book as a reference work.
They should list the strengths of the book and how they
would use it. They should also list the weaknesses of the
book and how they would use it.

Ask students to discuss the book as a reference work.
They should list the strengths of the book and how they
would use it. They should also list the weaknesses of the
book and how they would use it.

Adjectives

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Unusual Gifts for Unusual People	302
B. FORM: Adjectives	304
PLACEMENT OF ADJECTIVES	
I saw an entertaining play last night.	
It's nothing important .	
The sky became cloudy .	
FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES	
The police saw a speeding car.	
The house had a broken window.	
She wears fashionable clothes.	
C. MEANING AND USE: Describing with Adjectives	309
Order of Adjectives	
Adjectives Ending in <i>-ing</i> and <i>-ed</i>	
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	314

A

Unusual Gifts for Unusual People

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

Do you ever buy things from mail-order catalogs? Do you ever buy things from on-line catalogs? If so, what do you buy? Do you prefer to shop at a store? Why or why not?

A2 Read

Read the catalog entries on the following page. Would you buy any of these items?

A3 After You Read

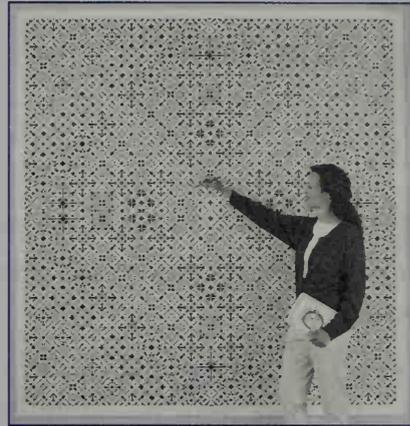
Choose the answer that best completes each sentence.

- The crossword puzzle has _____.
a. 91,000 clues b. 100 squares **c. 28,000 words**
- The potholders are _____.
a. washable b. removable c. round
- The thermometer has _____ balls.
a. wooden b. glass c. leather
- Each ball in the thermometer has a _____ tag.
a. silver b. black c. gold
- The backpacker guitar is _____.
a. easy to carry b. heavy c. soft

Unusual Gifts for Unusual People

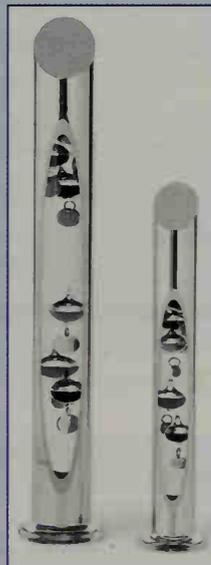
The World's Largest Crossword Puzzle

This challenging crossword puzzle can take months to finish. It has 91,000 squares and contains fascinating clues for over 28,000 words. A 100-page clue book provides additional help. The puzzle is printed on strong paper so that you can hang it on any wall. *Comes with storage box.*
Item #66813.....\$29.95



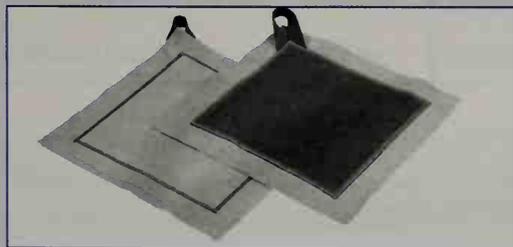
Backpacker Guitar

This extremely light, compact guitar weighs less than three pounds. It is so lightweight and portable that it has gone on trips on the Space Shuttle, to the summit of Mount Everest, and to both the North and South Poles. It has a wooden body and neck, and metal tuners, and it comes with a soft, padded carrying case.
Item #66545\$224.95



Galileo Liquid Thermometer

Galileo was the first to make this unusual liquid thermometer. The clear glass tube holds a number of handmade glass balls that float in a special liquid. Each colored ball responds to temperature changes by rising or falling. The lowest ball gives you the correct temperature. The temperatures are easy to read because each ball has a gold tag with large numbers.
Item #48210.....\$49.95



Washable Leather Potholders

These strong, long-lasting potholders are excellent for protecting your hands from heat. The potholders are made from two soft, attractive leather pieces. They're washable, too.
Item #60934.....\$19.95

Adapted from the *Hammacher Schlemmer* catalog

challenging: difficult, but exciting and interesting

clue: a piece of information that helps you solve a crossword puzzle

compact: small and convenient

potholder: a thick piece of material used to handle hot pots, pans, or dishes

summit: the top of a mountain

temperature: measure of how hot or cold something is

B

Adjectives

Examining Form

Complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- Underline the adjective and circle the noun in each phrase below. Does the adjective come before or after the noun?
fascinating clues strong paper gold tag
- Look back at the catalog entries on page 303. Find three more examples of adjective + noun phrases.
- Find the adjective in the sentence below. Does it follow an action verb or a stative verb? What does it describe?

The potholders are washable.

PLACEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

Before Nouns

	ARTICLE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN	
I saw	an	entertaining	play	last night.
	The	angry	man	shouted at me.
He explained	the	main	point.	
We went to	the	same	school.	

After Certain Nouns

	NOUN	ADJECTIVE
He is six	feet	tall.
I'm fifty	years	old.
It's	nothing	important.
Did you meet	anyone	famous?

After Stative Verbs

	STATIVE VERB	ADJECTIVE
The play	was	entertaining.
The man	looked	angry.
The sky	became	cloudy.
The child	seemed	afraid.

Before Nouns

- Adjectives modify (or describe) nouns.
- Adjectives usually come after an article and before a noun. Be sure to use the form of *a* or *an* that agrees with the beginning sound of the adjective (a unique experience, an entertaining play, an honest man).

After Certain Nouns

- Adjectives come after nouns in most expressions of measurement such as height and age.
- Adjectives also come after pronouns such as *nothing*, *anyone*, and *someone*.

After Stative Verbs

- Adjectives can occur alone (without a noun) following stative verbs such as *be*, *become*, *feel*, *seem*, *look*, and *appear*.
- Some adjectives cannot come before a noun. These include *glad*, *pleased*, and certain adjectives beginning with the letter *a*, such as *awake*, *asleep*, *afraid*, *alone*, and *alike*.
The dog is **asleep** on the couch. * The asleep dog is on the couch. (INCORRECT)
- Some adjectives can only come before a noun. (These include *main*, *chief*, *principal*, *same*, *only*, *future*, *former*, and *previous*.)
Hamlet is the **main** character. * The character of Hamlet is main. (INCORRECT)
- Use *and* to separate two adjectives that follow a verb. If more than two adjectives follow the verb, separate them with commas and the word *and*.
The official is **lazy and dishonest**. We were **wet, tired, and hungry**.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

	ARTICLE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
The police saw	a	speeding	car.
The child held	the	excited	puppy.
The house had	a	broken	window.

	ARTICLE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
She wears		fashionable	clothes.
Bears are		furry	animals.
My father is	a	successful	doctor.

- Many adjectives are formed by adding *-ing* to verbs.
speed → **speeding** (a **speeding** car) bore → **boring** (a **boring** book)
- Many adjectives have the same form as past participles.
excite → **excited** (an **excited** puppy) break → **broken** (a **broken** window)
- Many adjectives are formed by adding endings such as *-able*, *-ish*, *-ic*, *-y*, *-ful*, and *-less* to nouns.
fashion → **fashionable** (a **fashionable** tie) success → **successful** (a **successful** play)
- Many nouns function as adjectives when they are used to modify other nouns.
window seat **music** box

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each conversation. Listen carefully for the adjectives in the chart. Which noun does each describe? Check (✓) the correct column.

Conversation 1

		MOVIE	STARS	MAN
1.	entertaining	✓		
2.	same			
3.	famous			
4.	boring			
5.	asleep			

Conversation 2

		KIDS	RIDES	ADULTS
1.	excited			
2.	frightening			
3.	fine			
4.	tired			
5.	hungry			

B2 Identifying Adjectives

Circle the adjectives in each sentence. Then draw arrows to the nouns described.

1. Matt loves that comfortable old leather chair.
2. My new dress is fancy, so I can't wear it to an informal party.
3. The tall dark man was the main character in the play.
4. When she returned my favorite silk dress, it had a huge coffee stain on it.
5. The salesman told us the rusty old car was a real bargain.
6. The theater tickets were cheap, but our balcony seats were awful.
7. The lost little boy has blond hair and blue eyes.
8. The tired old dog was asleep under the shady tree.

B3 Forming Adjectives from Nouns

A. Work with a partner. Look at these adjectives. Do you see a noun form in each one? Circle it. Then underline the ending that makes each noun an adjective.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. <u>child</u> less | 4. friendless | 7. heroic | 10. hairy |
| 2. childish | 5. homeless | 8. successful | 11. curly |
| 3. helpful | 6. dirty | 9. angelic | 12. useless |

B. Study the meaning of the adjective endings below. Then rewrite these sentences in a way that explains the meaning of the underlined words. Discuss your answers with your partner.

-ish = like a

-ic = like a

-y = full of; having the quality of; having a lot of

-ful = full of; having the quality of; having a lot of

-less = without, do/does not have

1. Our neighbors are childless, but they have a lot of pets.
Our neighbors don't have children, but they have a lot of pets.
2. His behavior is childish.
3. This computer manual is helpful.
4. He was friendless when he arrived in this city.
5. In this city there are many homeless people.
6. The kitchen floor is dirty.
7. Everyone thought the policeman was heroic.
8. My parents are lawyers, and they are both successful.
9. The little girl has an angelic smile.
10. He always wears shirts with long sleeves because he has hairy arms.
11. She has beautiful curly hair.
12. That guidebook is useless. It's over twenty years old.

B4 Forming Sentences with Adjectives

Form sentences from these words. Punctuate your sentences correctly. Compare your sentences with a partner's.

1. and/job/challenging/her/is/rewarding

Her job is challenging and rewarding. OR Her job is rewarding and challenging.

2. somewhere/go/want/exotic/we/expensive/to/and

3. car/bought/old/they/an

4. see/I/interesting/didn't/anything

5. feet/was/wide/room/ten/the

6. beach/sandy/the/looked/beautiful

7. do/never/I/right/anything

8. Amy/house/to/a/brick/moved

9. brother/asleep/my/is

10. a/dinner/that/delicious/was

C

Describing with Adjectives

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your ideas and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Italian leather shoes are on sale today.
- b. He was wearing a large blue riding helmet.
- c. He bought an expensive European racing bike.
- d. I can't find my favorite cotton sweatshirt.

Underline the adjectives in the sentences above. Then think about the meaning of the adjectives and place them in the categories below.

quality/opinion: _____ origin: _____
 size: _____ material: _____
 color: _____ kind/purpose: _____

Meaning and Use Notes

Order of Adjectives

1A Adjectives can describe many different features of a noun.

<i>Quality/Opinion:</i> comfortable, colorful	<i>Color:</i> blue, gray
<i>Size:</i> large, small	<i>Origin:</i> Chinese, Russian
<i>Age:</i> old, antique, young	<i>Material:</i> wooden, cotton
<i>Shape:</i> round, square	<i>Kind/Purpose:</i> riding, rocking

1B If two or more adjectives come before a noun, they usually follow this order: quality/opinion, size, age, shape, color, origin, material, and kind/purpose.

<i>Quality/Opinion</i>	<i>Size</i>	<i>Age</i>	<i>Shape</i>	<i>Color</i>	<i>Origin</i>	<i>Material</i>	<i>Kind/Purpose</i>
beautiful	tall	old	round	blue	Greek	cotton	racing
expensive	small	new	square	green	Italian	wooden	rocking

That's an **Italian racing** bike. They have a **beautiful new rocking** chair.
 He wore a **blue cotton** shirt. He sat at an **expensive wooden** desk.

(Continued on page 310)

- 1C** We do not usually use more than three adjectives before a noun. It is more common to use two or three adjectives and then add other descriptive phrases to the end of the sentence.

I bought **expensive black leather** boots from Italy.

Adjectives Ending in *-ing* and *-ed*

- 2** Adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed* refer to emotions or feelings. The *-ing* adjective describes a noun that causes an emotion or feeling. The *-ed* adjective describes a noun (usually a person) that feels or experiences an emotion or feeling.

Adjective ending in -ing

It's an **exciting** match.

(= The match causes excitement.)

We heard a **frightening** scream.

(= The scream caused fear.)

Adjective ending in -ed

The **excited** fans cheered wildly.

(= The fans felt excitement.)

The **frightened** child cried all night.

(= The child felt fear.)

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Note 2

 Listen to each sentence. Does the adjective you hear describe a noun that causes an emotion, or does it describe a noun that feels an emotion? Check (✓) the correct column.

	CAUSES AN EMOTION	FEELS AN EMOTION
1.	✓	
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

A. Put the adjectives below in the correct columns of the chart. (The completed chart will have four blank boxes.)

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| lovely | French | leather | metal | fashionable |
| medical | tan | round | enormous | soft |
| brown | glass | long | plastic | small |
| toy | middle-aged | handmade | triangular | circular |
| Greek | unusual | yellow | purple | modern |
| honest | huge | beautiful | Japanese | hardworking |
| wooden | Indian | elegant | short | white |
| evening | suede | antique | tiny | wool |
| old | rectangular | decorative | square | cylindrical |
| European | racing | new | elderly | purple |
| silk | large | wedding | computer | oval |
| pink | young | miniature | gray | pear-shaped |

QUALITY/ OPINION	SIZE	AGE	SHAPE	COLOR	ORIGIN	MATERIAL	KIND/ PURPOSE
lovely							medical

B. Work with a partner. Use the adjectives in the chart in part A or others of your own to describe the things below. Use at least three adjectives from different categories in each description.

- your favorite piece of clothing
I have a yellow silk dress from India. It's very elegant.
- a piece of furniture
- a person you know very well
- a book or movie that you enjoyed
- a car you would like to own
- a favorite childhood toy

C3 Choosing *-ed* or *-ing* Adjectives

► Notes 1A, 2

Read these conversations and choose the correct adjective.

Conversation 1

A: Did you see the program *Life of a Bug* on TV last night? It was

(fascinating¹ / fascinated).

B: I started to watch it, but I turned it off. I felt (disgusting / disgusted)²
by all those insects.

A: Do you think insects are (disgusting / disgusted)³? To me they are really
(interesting / interested)⁴ creatures.

Conversation 2

A: That's an (exciting / excited)¹ idea.

B: I'm glad you like it. Unfortunately, my boss didn't seem (exciting / excited)²
when I told her about it. I felt really (disappointing / disappointed)³.

Conversation 3

A: I've never heard such a (boring / bored)¹ speaker.

B: I know. I felt (boring / bored)², too. It was (surprising / surprised)³, though,
because she's quite famous.

C4 Describing People, Places, and Things► Notes 1A-1C,
2

Work with a partner. Talk about these people, places, and things.

your best friend your boss/teacher your job
your bedroom your hometown your neighbors

A: *What's your best friend like? or Describe your best friend.*

B: *He's short, and his hair is thick and curly. He has a big moustache and green eyes.*

C5 Writing Catalog Descriptions

► Notes 1A-1C,
2

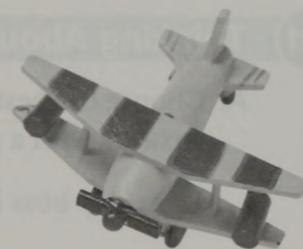
Look at these pictures from a catalog, and write a description of each item. Use the adjectives from the list in exercise C2 or others of your own. Use at least three adjectives from different categories in each description.



1. This soft wool sweater
will keep you warm all
winter. . . .



3. _____



5. _____



2. _____



4. _____



6. _____

D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

A. Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers with a partner.

1. A: My boss is very frightening.

B: _____

a. Maybe you should look for a new job.

b. What's he afraid of?

2. A: Was the actor boring?

B: Yes. _____

a. He fell asleep while he was on stage!

b. I fell asleep during the play.

3. A: We have a great German teacher this semester.

B: I know. His class is really _____.

a. exciting

b. excited

4. A: Did you like the magician?

B: _____

a. No, I thought he was pretty bored.

b. Yes. He certainly gave an amazing performance.

5. A: She's really excited!

B: _____

a. I did, too.

b. I am, too.

6. A: Would you like to hear about some of our new products?

B: _____

a. Thanks, but I'm not interested.

b. Thanks, but I'm not interesting.

B. Read these pairs of sentences. Write *S* if the meaning of each pair of sentences is the same, or *D* if the meaning is different.

- S 1. There are a lot of window seats on this flight.
There are a lot of seats by the window on this flight.
- ___ 2. I drove a Japanese car.
I drove a car in Japan.
- ___ 3. Sara was wearing a leather jacket.
Sara was wearing a jacket made of leather.
- ___ 4. The rocking chair is old.
The old chair is rocking.
- ___ 5. The musical instruments in this shop are made by hand.
The musical instruments in this shop are handmade.

D2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

I feel very ^{frustrated} ~~frustrating~~ because I never know what to buy for my father. Last year I bought him a Swiss watch expensive for his birthday. He returned it and bought several pairs of socks wool and snow new tires for his car. Last Christmas I bought him a silk long beautiful robe. It was from France, and it wasn't cheap. He returned that, too. He got a cordless new lawnmower instead. I've solved the problem for Christmas this year. I'm going to give him perfect something—money! I'm sure he'll be pleasing with that.



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look for examples of adjectives in catalogs or advertisements in English-language newspapers and magazines, or on the Internet. Bring five examples to class. What does each one describe? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow these steps to write an advertisement for a product or something you want to sell.

1. Think about the topic. Make notes about what you want to say. Describe the product's size, shape, color, origin, material, or purpose. Use quality or opinion adjectives as well.
2. Write a first draft of your advertisement. Use adjectives to make people want to buy the item.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to help you decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

Are you looking for a unique Mother's Day gift? This beautiful hand-painted picture frame makes a great gift for that special woman in your life. The lovely design is perfect for any picture. . . .



Adverbs

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The Personality Compass	318
B. FORM 1: Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion	320
She quit unexpectedly . Yesterday I found a new job.	
She probably failed the test. Unfortunately , I failed the test.	
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion	325
Adverbs of Manner	
Adverbs of Possibility	
Adverbs of Time	
Adverbs of Opinion	
Adverbs with Two Forms	
D. FORM 2: Adverbs of Degree	328
The music is really loud. He was such a fast runner (that)	
He was so fast (that) he won the race. he won the race.	
E. MEANING AND USE 2: Adverbs of Degree	331
Making Adjectives and Adverbs Weaker or Stronger	
Reasons and Results with <i>So/Such</i> . . . + <i>That</i> Clauses	
F. FORM 3: <i>Too</i> and <i>Enough</i>	335
It's too hot to eat outside. You aren't strong enough to pick this up.	
G. MEANING AND USE 3: Contrasting <i>Too</i> and <i>Enough</i>	337
<i>Too</i>	
<i>Enough</i>	
H. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	340

A

The Personality Compass

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

What kind of person are you? Are you easygoing or are you very serious? Give examples to explain the kind of person you are.

A2 Read

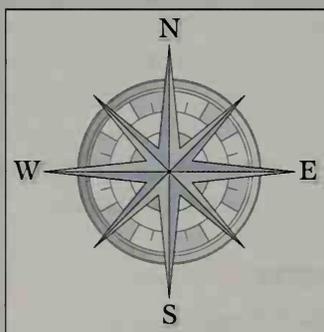
 Read this magazine article to find out about personality types at work. Which personality type are you?

WORKPLACE

The Personality Compass

When some companies hire new workers, they look for people with certain kinds of personalities for certain jobs. Fortunately, there is a test that helps these companies do this. It is called the Personality Compass. The Personality Compass divides people into four basic types: Norths, Souths, Easts, and Wests.

Norths are leaders. They work very hard to reach their goals. They often have strong opinions. They are so



confident and independent that they can make decisions quickly. Their motto is "Get the job done fast."

Souths work best when they work with others. They are good team players because they understand the needs of others. They are also good listeners, and they are almost always patient and helpful. Their motto is "Build the best teams."

Easts are such perfectionists that they always want to do everything right. They always plan very carefully. They are very

organized and logical, and they work extremely hard. They prefer to work in a structured environment because they are good rule-followers. Their motto is “Do it right the first time.”

Westers are natural risk-takers; they are not afraid to take chances. Westers are often very creative. They are also flexible, so they don't mind changing a plan after they have begun to work. They work very enthusiastically, especially on new projects. Their motto is “Don't be afraid to try something new today.”

Everyone has some characteristics from all four types, but one type is usually stronger than the others. It is also very common for some people to have both a primary personality type and a secondary one. In other words, they are not “true” Norths or Souths, for example, but are instead “Northwests” or “Southeasters.” However, since North-South and East-West are opposites, it is impossible for one person to have those combinations. Reread the descriptions. Which personality type are you? ■

Adapted from *The Personality Compass*

compass: a device that shows directions (i.e., N, S, E, W)

enthusiastically: with great energy

motto: a short sentence that expresses the beliefs of a person or group

primary: main or most important

secondary: less important than something else

structured: very organized, with strict rules

A3 After You Read

Look at the jobs below. Which two do you think best match each personality type? Discuss your answers with a partner. Did you both choose the same jobs?

artist project manager accountant architect
pilot construction worker lawyer football player

1. Norths (confident, independent leaders): _____
2. Souths (good team players): _____
3. Easts (perfectionists, rule-followers): _____
4. Wests (creative risk-takers): _____

B

Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion

Examining Form

Look back at the magazine article on page 318 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. Underline seven words that end in *-ly*. These are adverbs.
2. Which three underlined adverbs answer the question *How?* about the verb in the clause? These are adverbs of manner.
3. Where do the adverbs of manner occur in each clause? Do they come before or after the main verb?

Adverbs of Manner			
SUBJECT	(AUXILIARY +) VERB	ADVERB	
She	quit	<u>unexpectedly.</u>	
	has quit		

SUBJECT	(AUXILIARY +) VERB	DIRECT OBJECT	ADVERB
She	quit	her job	<u>unexpectedly.</u>
	has quit		

SUBJECT	AUXILIARY	ADVERB	VERB	
She	has	<u>unexpectedly</u>	quit	(her job).

Adverbs of Possibility			
	ADVERB	(AUXILIARY +) VERB	
She	<u>probably</u>	failed	the test.
		has failed	

	ADVERB	BE	
He	<u>definitely</u>	is	at home.

	BE	ADVERB	
He	is	<u>definitely</u>	at home.

	AUXILIARY	ADVERB	VERB
He	has	<u>definitely</u>	left.

MAYBE/PERHAPS		
Maybe		I'll get a raise.
Perhaps		

Adverbs of Time

Yesterday	I found a new job.
I found a new job	yesterday.

Adverbs of Opinion

Unfortunately,	I failed the test.
I failed the test,	unfortunately.
I	unfortunately failed the test.

Overview

- Adverbs modify or change the meaning of verbs.
- Many adverbs are formed by adding *-ly* to an adjective. See Appendix 10 for the spelling of adverbs ending in *-ly*.

quick → quickly definite → definitely unfortunate → unfortunately

- Adverbs can occur in different positions in a sentence. However, they never occur between a verb and its object.

She quit her job **unexpectedly**.

*She quit unexpectedly her job. (INCORRECT)

Adverbs of Manner

- Adverbs of manner usually come after the verb. In sentences with any auxiliary except *do* (that is, *be*, *have*, or a modal), *-ly* adverbs of manner can also be placed between the auxiliary and the verb.

She has **unexpectedly** quit her job.

You should **carefully** consider your options.

They are **quietly** waiting for news.

The temperature will **slowly** rise this week.

Adverbs of Possibility

- Adverbs of possibility include words like *certainly*, *definitely*, *probably*, *maybe*, and *perhaps*.
- When there is no auxiliary in a sentence, *-ly* adverbs of possibility come directly before the verb. In sentences with main verb *be* or an auxiliary, *-ly* adverbs of possibility can be placed before or after *be* or the auxiliary.
- *Maybe* and *perhaps* come at the beginning of a sentence.

Adverbs of Time

- Adverbs of time can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. They include words like *yesterday*, *today*, *tomorrow*, *now*, *recently*, and *soon*.
- *Recently* can also occur before the verb or between the auxiliary and the verb.

I **recently** found a new job.

I have **recently** found a new job.

Adverbs of Opinion

- Most adverbs of opinion can occur at the beginning or end of a sentence or before the verb. They include words like *fortunately*, *happily*, *incredibly*, *luckily*, *obviously*, *strangely*, and *surprisingly*.

(Continued on page 322)

Adverbs vs. Adjectives

	VERB	ADVERB		ARTICLE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
He	runs	fast.	He's	a	fast	runner.
They don't	work	hard.	They aren't		hard	workers.
She	gets up	early.	She has	an	early	class.
I	exercise	daily.	I do		daily	exercises.
He	sang	well.	He was	a	good	singer.

Adverbs vs. Adjectives

- Some adverbs don't end in *-ly*. They look like adjectives because they have the same form. They always follow the verb.
He runs **fast**.
 - Some adjectives end in *-ly*. They look like adverbs because they have the same form.
She has an **early** class. (*Early* is an adjective in the sentence.)
 - *Well* is the irregular adverb form of the adjective *good*. *Good* modifies nouns and stative verbs only. *Well* modifies action verbs. However, *well* can be used as an adjective when it refers to health.
He played **well**. (*Well* is an adverb in this sentence.)
I don't feel **well**. (*Well* is an adjective in the sentence.)
 - Not all verbs are modified by adverbs. We modify certain stative verbs (such as *be*, *become*, *feel*, *seem*, *look*, and *appear*) with adjectives.
It **tastes good**. I **feel terrible**. She **looks beautiful**.
- ⚠ Some words that end in *-ly* are never adverbs. They are adjectives that modify nouns, not verbs.
- friendly** women an **ugly** sweater a **lonely** child **lovely** flowers

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each sentence. Choose the adjective or adverb you hear.

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. recent / <u>recently</u> | 5. slow / slowly |
| 2. careful / carefully | 6. angry / angrily |
| 3. careless / carelessly | 7. lucky / luckily |
| 4. unexpected / unexpectedly | 8. certain / certainly |

B2 Forming Adverbs of Manner

Change these adjectives to adverbs of manner. If there is no adverb form, leave the space blank. If necessary, see Appendix 10.

1. curious curiously
2. heavy _____
3. light _____
4. natural _____
5. realistic _____
6. smooth _____
7. lovely _____
8. simple _____

B3 Placing Adverbs in Sentences

Rewrite these sentences. Put the adverbs in parentheses in the correct places. More than one answer is possible in most of the sentences.

Adverbs of possibility

1. He is coming to the party. (definitely) He is definitely coming to the party. OR
He definitely is coming to the party.
2. We'll see you at the soccer game. (perhaps) _____
3. We have met before. (probably) _____

Adverbs of manner

4. They greeted their guest. (enthusiastically) _____
5. He explained his ideas. (carefully) _____
6. He has left the country. (unexpectedly) _____

Adverbs of time

7. I'm going to finish this project. (tomorrow) _____
8. We're going to leave. (soon) _____
9. She hasn't been around. (lately) _____

Adverbs of opinion

10. No one was hurt in the accident. (luckily) _____
11. We'll need to change our plans. (obviously) _____
12. She gave the right answer. (surprisingly) _____

B4 Identifying Adverbs and Adjectives

A. Read each sentence. Is the underlined word an adverb or adjective? Check (✓) the correct column.

		ADVERB	ADJECTIVE
1.	This is a <u>hard</u> book; I don't really understand it.		✓
2.	The train ride seemed very <u>fast</u> .		
3.	When my sister went to college, I felt <u>lonely</u> .		
4.	I have to work really <u>hard</u> in my new job.		
5.	We left the party <u>early</u> because we were tired.		
6.	The bus to Denver leaves at 5:00 P.M. <u>daily</u> .		
7.	I'm eating <u>fast</u> because I need to get back to work.		
8.	He's catching an <u>early</u> flight to New York tomorrow.		

B. Circle the adjective or adverb that best completes each sentence.

- Ben plays the violin (beautiful / beautifully).
- The children are playing (quiet / quietly) in their room.
- What's the matter with Lee? He looks (angry / angrily).
- Carl sounded (terrible / terribly) when we spoke on the phone. Is he sick?
- Rosa smiled (happy / happily) when she opened her present.
- Your children are very friendly and (polite / politely).
- I felt (bad / badly) after our fight.
- You seemed (happy / happily) on the phone last night.

C. Work with a partner. Write sentences with these adverbs and adjectives.

- ugly That painting is ugly.
- recently _____
- maybe _____
- fast (adj.) _____
- hard (adv.) _____

C

Adverbs of Manner, Possibility, Time, and Opinion

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. It rained hard while we were sleeping.
 1b. Unfortunately, it rained while we were sleeping.
 2a. We have made our plans. We'll definitely leave at 7 A.M.
 2b. We haven't made plans. Maybe we'll leave at 7 A.M.
- Look at 1a and 1b. Underline the adverb in each sentence. Which adverb describes how the action happened? Which adverb gives an opinion?
 - Look at 2a and 2b. Underline the adverb in each sentence. In which sentence is the speaker more certain about future plans?

Meaning and Use Notes

Adverbs of Manner

- 1 Adverbs of manner answer the question *How?* They describe the way someone does something or the way something happens.

He works **carefully**.

It snows **heavily** in Alaska.

Adverbs of Possibility

- 2 Adverbs of possibility show how sure or unsure we are about something.

More Sure



Less Sure

- definitely, certainly
- probably
- maybe, perhaps

We're **definitely** going to win this game.

If I can find a ride, I'll **probably** go.

Perhaps you should stay home.

(Continued on page 326)

Adverbs of Time

- 3 Adverbs of time, such as *yesterday*, *today*, *now*, *recently*, and *soon*, answer the question *When?* They can refer to a specific time or a more indefinite time.

Specific Time

She saw him **yesterday**.

Indefinite Time

I saw him **recently**.

Adverbs of Opinion

- 4 Adverbs of opinion, such as *fortunately*, *happily*, *incredibly*, *luckily*, *obviously*, *strangely*, and *surprisingly*, give an opinion about an entire sentence or idea.

It **obviously** rained last night. The ground is still wet.

The plane had to make an emergency landing. **Surprisingly**, no one was hurt.

Adverbs with Two Forms

- 5 Some adverbs, such as *hard*, *high*, and *late*, have two forms with two meanings.

I want to pass this course. I'm studying **hard**. (*hard* = with a lot of effort)

I don't care about passing this course. I **hardly** study. (*hardly* = almost not at all)

After the storm the snow was piled **high**. (*high* = to a great height)

He is a **highly** respected writer. (*highly* = to a great degree)

He arrived at the party **late**. (*late* = not on time)

He hasn't gone to any parties **lately**. (*lately* = recently)

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 2-5



Listen to each sentence. Does it have the same meaning as the sentence in the chart or a different meaning? Check (✓) the correct column.

		SAME	DIFFERENT
1.	I saw her a short time ago.	✓	
2.	It snowed a lot last night.		
3.	He's been late for our meetings recently.		
4.	It's likely we'll go to Mexico this summer.		
5.	I'm not studying very much this year.		
6.	Some buses are not arriving on time.		

C2 Using Adverbs

► Notes 1–4

In your notebook, rewrite each paragraph using all of the adverbs given. Use an adverb in every sentence.

1. Adverbs of time: *recently, soon, tomorrow, yesterday*

I joined a gym. I worked out in the weight room. My muscles are sore, but I'm going to go back to the gym. I'll be strong and healthy.

I joined a gym recently. . . . OR Recently I joined a gym. . . .

2. Adverbs of manner and possibility: *hard, well, maybe, definitely*

When Lee started taking my class, she didn't know English. But she really studies. She'll pass the class. She'll be ready for an advanced class next year—if she studies a lot.

3. Adverbs of opinion: *luckily, obviously, surprisingly, unfortunately*

Children need to eat vegetables. Few children like them. My children like vegetables. They almost always ask for carrots instead of cookies.

C3 Identifying Adverbs with Different Forms

► Note 5

A. Choose the adverb that best completes each sentence.

1. I think very (high / highly) of Koji. He's a wonderful person.
2. The door is stuck, so you have to push it (hard / hardly).
3. I haven't seen Rita much (late / lately).
4. The children's kites were flying (high / highly) in the sky.
5. I'm really tired because I (hard / hardly) slept last night.
6. The store opens early during the week, but on weekends it opens (late / lately).

B. Now write four sentences about yourself. Use these adverbs: *late, lately, hard, hardly*.

I don't like to arrive late to class.

D

Adverbs of Degree

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. My car runs pretty smoothly.
 - 1b. They're very good neighbors.
 - 2a. He was so smart that he got a scholarship.
 - 2b. He was such a smart student that he got a scholarship.
1. Look at 1a and 1b. Is the underlined word in each sentence an adverb or an adjective? Circle the word that modifies each underlined word.
 2. Look at 2a and 2b. Which of the underlined words is followed by an adjective? Which is followed by an article + adjective + noun?

Adverbs of Degree

	ADVERB	ADJECTIVE		ADVERB	ADVERB
The music is	really	loud.	The storm ended	fairly	quickly.
We were	extremely	tired.	He spoke	somewhat	formally.
The soup is	very	hot.	They talk	so	quickly.

- Adverbs of degree, such as *really*, *extremely*, *very*, *fairly*, *pretty*, *quite*, *so*, and *somewhat* come before adjectives or other adverbs.

So . . . That

	SO	ADJECTIVE	THAT CLAUSE		SO	ADVERB	THAT CLAUSE
He was	so	fast	(that) he won the race.	He talks	so	softly	(that) I can't hear him.
It was		noisy	(that) I couldn't hear.	I walked		slowly	(that) I was late for class.

- *So* modifies another adverb or an adjective that is used alone (without a noun).
- Sentences with *so* can be followed by a *that* clause. The word *that* can be omitted without a change in meaning.

Such . . . That

	SUCH	ARTICLE	ADJECTIVE	SINGULAR COUNT NOUN	THAT CLAUSE
He was	such	a	fast	runner	(that) he won the race.

	SUCH		ADJECTIVE	PLURAL COUNT NOUN	THAT CLAUSE
They were	such		noisy	children	(that) I couldn't concentrate.

	SUCH		ADJECTIVE	NONCOUNT NOUN	THAT CLAUSE
It was	such		stormy	weather	(that) we canceled our trip.

- *Such (a/an)* modifies an adjective that is used with a noun.
- Use *such a/an* before an adjective + a singular count noun.
- Use *such* before an adjective + a plural count noun or a noncount noun.
- Sentences with *such (a/an)* can be followed by a *that* clause. The word *that* can be omitted without a change in meaning.

D1 Listening for Form



Listen to each sentence. Write the words you hear.

1. She cooks so well that everyone wants to eat at her house.
2. He's _____ right now.
3. We're _____ that I can tell her anything.
4. The kids were having _____ that they didn't want to leave.
5. They were _____ that they fell asleep during the movie.
6. The test was _____ that I don't think anyone passed.
7. She spoke _____ that I couldn't hear her.
8. We arrived _____ for the concert.

D2 Forming Sentences with Adverbs of Degree

Form sentences from these words. Punctuate your sentences correctly.

1. music/extremely/is/that/loud
That music is extremely loud.
2. they/English/fluentlly/quite/speak
3. instructions/these/somewhat/are/confusing
4. he/quickly/types/really.
5. those/smell/so/flowers/nice
6. the/Jenny/well/plays/very/piano
7. the/we/news/closely/follow/fairly
8. book/it's/interesting/a/not/very

D3 Completing Conversations

Complete these conversations with *so* or *such* (*a/an*). Then practice them with a partner.

1. A: What's wrong?
B: Traffic moved so slowly that it took three hours to get home.
2. A: Where are my jeans?
B: They were _____ dirty that I put them in the wash.
3. A: Would you like to go to that Italian restaurant for dinner?
B: I'd love to. They make _____ excellent pizzas that I could eat a whole pie by myself!
4. A: How was your test?
B: Great! It went _____ well that I finished early. And I got _____ good grade that I don't have to take the final exam.
5. A: How did you like the movie?
B: I thought it was _____ exciting movie that I'm going to see it again!

E Adverbs of Degree

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. Sara is an extremely good tennis player. She'll definitely win the match.
 - 1b. Ana is a fairly good tennis player. She might win the match.
 - 2a. It was so cold that the river froze.
 - 2b. It was such a cold day that I couldn't start my car.
1. Look at the underlined adverbs in 1a and 1b. Who plays tennis better?
 2. Look at 2a and 2b. Underline the part of each sentence that shows the result of the cold weather.

Meaning and Use Notes

Making Adjectives and Adverbs Weaker or Stronger

- 1 Use adverbs of degree before adjectives and other adverbs to make them stronger or weaker. The adverbs *extremely*, *quite*, *really*, and *very* make adjectives and other adverbs stronger. The adverbs *fairly*, *pretty*, and *somewhat* usually make adjectives and other adverbs weaker.

I did **very well** on the test. I got an A.

I didn't get an A on the test, but I still did **fairly well**. I got a B.

He was **extremely upset** about the situation. I've never heard him yell before.

She was **somewhat upset** at first. Later she calmed down.

Reasons and Results with *So/Such . . . + That* Clauses

- 2 *So* and *such* are used to strengthen adjectives, adverbs, and nouns that are modified by adjectives. *So* and *such* can express the reason why something happens. The *that* clause expresses the result.

Reason

The necklace was **so beautiful**

It was **such a beautiful necklace**

Result

(that) I had to buy it.

(that) I had to buy it.

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1, 2

 Listen to these sentences and choose the best response.

- a. I like loud music, too.
b. Maybe you should talk to him.
- a. Maybe she should take lessons.
b. Can she teach me?
- a. Sorry, there was a lot of traffic.
b. Yes, there were no cars on the roads!
- a. Maybe she needs extra help.
b. That's great.
- a. They're always like that on Saturdays.
b. So long. See you later.
- a. Yes, she looks beautiful.
b. No, she's almost 16.

E2 Using Adverbs of Degree

► Note 1

Read each situation. Then complete the comment with the appropriate adverb in parentheses.

- Your friend made some soup for you. It tastes delicious. What do you say when she asks you how you like it?

It's (somewhat / very) good. Can you give me the recipe?

- Your math teacher just returned your final exam. You expected an A, but you got a B instead. What do you say when your brother asks you about the exam?

I did (fairly / quite) well, but I wanted to do better.

- You are a football coach. You are talking to one of your players who has just played a great game. What do you tell him?

You were (really / fairly) great tonight, Tony.

- You were going to visit friends tonight, but you are tired. You decide to call them and cancel. What do you say?

Hi, there. Listen, I had a long day and I'm (really / somewhat) tired. Can we get together tomorrow night instead?

- Your co-worker is enthusiastic about a new idea. You don't think it's a good idea. What do you say to her?

I don't know. It's (somewhat / very) interesting. Let me think about it some more.

A. You and a friend are discussing recent events in your life. Answer each question with a complaint. Use *so . . . (that)* in your answers.

1. You went to a restaurant last night.

Friend: Was it expensive?

You: It was so expensive that we had to share a main course.

Friend: How was the food?

You: _____

2. You just started a new job.

Friend: What's the office like?

You: _____

Friend: How is the salary?

You: _____

3. You recently moved into a new apartment.

Friend: How expensive is it?

You: _____

Friend: What's your roommate like?

You: _____

4. You just started taking classes at a local university.

Friend: What are the professors like?

You: _____

Friend: What is the campus like?

You: _____

(Continued on page 334)

B. Exchange books with a partner. Answer the questions again. Use your partner's answers from part A, but change *so . . . (that)* to *such (a/an) . . . (that)*. Make any other necessary changes.

1. You went to a restaurant last night.

Friend: Was it expensive?

You: It was such an expensive restaurant that we had to
share a main course.

Friend: How was the food?

You: _____

2. You just started a new job.

Friend: What's the office like?

You: _____

Friend: How is the salary?

You: _____

3. You recently moved into a new apartment.

Friend: How expensive is it?

You: _____

Friend: What's your roommate like?

You: _____

4. You just started taking classes at a local university.

Friend: What are the professors like?

You: _____

Friend: What is the campus like?

You: _____

C. Think of two more situations. In your notebook, write two questions for each. Then exchange notebooks with your partner. For each situation, write one answer with *so . . . (that)* and another with *such (a/an) . . . (that)*.

F

Too and Enough

Examining Form

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- I type too slowly to work as a secretary.
 - He's good enough to be on the team.
 - We're too tired to go out tonight.
 - I read quickly enough to finish a book in a day.
- Look at the underlined words. Which are adverbs and which are adjectives? How do you know?
 - What is the position of *too* and *enough*? Do they come before or after the underlined words?

<i>Too</i>			
	<i>TOO</i>	ADJECTIVE	INFINITIVE PHRASE
It's	too	hot.	
It's	too	hot	to eat outside.

	<i>TOO</i>	ADVERB	INFINITIVE PHRASE
He works	too	slowly.	
He works	too	slowly	to finish on time.

<i>Enough</i>			
	ADJECTIVE	<i>ENOUGH</i>	INFINITIVE PHRASE
You aren't	strong	enough.	
You aren't	strong	enough	to pick this up.

	ADVERB	<i>ENOUGH</i>	INFINITIVE PHRASE
I jog	often	enough.	
I jog	often	enough	to stay fit.

- *Too* comes before an adjective or adverb.
- An infinitive phrase (a phrase that begins with *to* + base form of the verb) can follow the adverb or adjective.
- *Enough* follows an adjective or adverb.
- An infinitive phrase can follow *enough*.
- See Chapter 21 for more information on infinitives.

F1 Listening for Form



Listen to these statements. Write the phrases you hear with *too* and *enough*.

1. You're too young to drive.
2. This cake is _____ for me.
3. They don't work _____ at school.
4. He drives _____, and it makes me nervous.
5. Don't buy those sweaters. They're _____.
6. He's not _____ to play basketball.

F2 Forming Sentences with *Too* and *Enough*

Form sentences from these words and phrases. Punctuate your sentences correctly. Compare your sentences with a partner's.

1. enough/work/Pedro/carefully/doesn't

Pedro doesn't work carefully enough.

2. is/too/to/that dress/wear/big

3. not/enough/slowly/you're/driving

4. be/to/young/too/he looked/her father

5. hard/Mark/worked/enough/get/to/a raise

6. too/to/Dan/to school/walk/lives/far away

G

Contrasting *Too* and *Enough*

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the task below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. He worked fast enough. He finished on time.
- b. He worked too fast. He made a lot of mistakes.

Look at the underlined adverbs. Which one has a positive meaning? Which one has a negative meaning?

Meaning and Use Notes

Too

- 1A** *Too* means “to an undesirable degree.” It is used before adjectives and adverbs to express a negative meaning. *Not too* expresses a positive meaning when it is used with adjectives and adverbs that are negative qualities.

It's **too** crowded in here. Let's leave.

It's **not too** humid here in the summer. In fact, it's very pleasant.

- 1B** Do not confuse *too* and *very*.

Too (To an Undesirable Degree)

This town is **too** small. Everyone knows each other. There's no privacy.

Very (To a Great Degree)

This town is **very** small. Everyone knows each other. It's a friendly place.

Enough

- 2** *Enough* means “to an acceptable or sufficient degree.” It expresses a positive meaning. *Not . . . enough* means “to an unacceptable or insufficient degree.” It expresses a negative meaning.

He explained the problem clearly **enough**. Now I understand it.

This time I studied hard **enough** for the exam. I think I'll do well.

This jacket doesn't fit. It's **not big enough**.

She **didn't play well enough** to make the team. She was disappointed.

 Listen to each sentence. Choose the picture that matches it.



G2 Using Too, Very, and So

► Note 1A-1B

Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. That restaurant is (too / very) crowded, so the food there is probably good.
Let's try it.
2. He works (very / too) fast, so he never misses deadlines.
3. I finished my homework (so / very) quickly that I had time to watch a movie before bed.
4. This pudding is delicious. It's (too / very) sweet, and it has a nice chocolate flavor.
5. He drove (so / too) slowly that we missed the beginning of the play.
6. Her son is (too / very) young to see that movie.

G3 Giving Reasons and Making Excuses

► Notes 1A, 2

Read each situation. Use the words in parentheses and an infinitive phrase to give a reason or make an excuse.

1. You didn't do your homework because you were sick last night. (too)
I was too sick to do my homework.
2. You can't go to the movies with your friend because you're very busy. (too)

3. You didn't catch the train because you were late. (not . . . enough)

4. You couldn't finish painting the kitchen because you were very tired. (too)

5. You failed the course because you didn't study very hard. (not . . . enough)

6. You didn't win the race because you couldn't swim very fast. (not . . . enough)

H

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

H1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: It's too late to go to the meeting.

B: _____

a. Then we should hurry.

b. That's OK. We'll just stay home.

2. A: It's such a large class that I have to go early to get a good seat.

B: _____

a. Is the classroom crowded?

b. I hate crowded classes.

3. A: I wonder how Mark is doing. I haven't seen him lately.

B: _____

a. He's fine. I spoke with him last week.

b. I know. He's always late.

4. A: My daughter's a fairly good student.

B: _____

a. Mine isn't. She's failing everything.

b. That's too bad.

5. A: It was so cold that we decided not to go to the game.

B: _____

a. Why did you stay home?

b. We didn't go, either.

6. A: He doesn't play piano very well.

B: _____

- a. Well, he's only had four lessons.
- b. You should be very proud of him.

7. A: Kate dances pretty well.

B: _____

- a. I don't think she's very pretty.
- b. Yeah. She's a good dancer.

8. A: You did fairly well on the test.

B: _____

- a. I know, but not well enough to get an A in the class.
- b. I know. I'm so disappointed.

H2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. He's not ~~enough handsome~~ ^{handsome enough} to be a movie star.
2. Andrea looks beautifully in that dress.
3. He has been recently in the hospital.
4. You are such kind woman.
5. He always works hardly.
6. She's enough shy to be a teacher.
7. You aren't tall enough to wear my clothes.
8. This ice cream tastes deliciously.
9. He's such good a player that they made him captain of the team.
10. The child smiled sweetly at the photographer.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Read an advice column in an English-language newspaper or magazine, or on the Internet. Look for examples of adverbs of manner, time, possibility, opinion, and degree. How do the adverbs change the meaning of the verbs or of the sentences? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a newspaper report of a sporting event such as a football game or an ice-skating competition.

1. Think about the topic. Make notes about what you want to say.
2. Write a first draft. Use a variety of adverbs and at least one sentence with *so/such* (*a/an*) . . . (*that*).
3. Read your work carefully, and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to help you decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

The Tigers played extremely well against the Giants in the championship soccer game yesterday. The game was very close. We didn't know who would win until the last minute. . . .



Comparatives and Superlatives

PART

8

PART

88

Journal

Volume 10

Number 1

Temperature

and

Superlatives

The first part of the article discusses the

relationship between the two variables

and the results are presented in the

following table. The data shows that

there is a strong positive correlation

between the two variables.

Comparatives

比較級

A is more intelligent than B
smarter

- A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Early to Rise Makes Teens . . . Less Attentive?** 346
- B. FORM 1: Comparatives** 348
- COMPARATIVE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND NOUNS
- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| tall—taller | quickly— more quickly |
| expensive— more expensive | good—well— better |
| hard—harder | homework— more homework |
- THE COMPARATIVE IN SENTENCES
- Lisa is **taller than I (am)**.
- Lisa is **taller than me**.
- C. MEANING AND USE 1: Making Comparisons** 352
- Talking About Differences
- Expressing Greater and Lesser Degrees
- Pronouns and Formality
- Changing Situations
- D. FORM 2: As . . . As with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns** 356
- She is **as tall as Dan (is)**.
- E. MEANING AND USE 2: As . . . As with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns** 358
- As . . . As to Talk About Things That Are Equal or Similar
- Negative Statements with As . . . As to Talk About Differences
- Vocabulary Notes:** Using Descriptive Phrases with As . . . As 361
- F. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use** 362

A

Early to Rise Makes Teens . . . Less Attentive?

A1 Before You Read

Discuss this question.

There is a proverb in English that says "Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise." What do you think this means? Do you agree with it?

A2 Read

Read this newspaper article about high school students. Is sleeping later a good idea?

Early to Rise Makes Teens . . . Less Attentive?

PHILADELPHIA—Crystal Irwin would like to pay closer attention in her first-period class, but she's simply too tired. She can barely keep her eyes open. Can schools do anything to help students like Crystal? One solution is to change school starting times and let teens sleep longer.

In the United States many high school students get less sleep than younger students. This is because American high schools generally start earlier than elementary schools, and, of course, teenagers stay up later. Doctors say that teenagers need more sleep. According to a number of studies, too little sleep can make students less attentive in class and more difficult to deal with. "When people don't have enough sleep, they get upset more easily," a researcher says.



Students are more awake when school begins later.

The first high school to change its starting time was in Edina, Minnesota. In 1996 it moved its daily starting time from 7:25 A.M. to 8:30 A.M., and its finishing time from 2:05 P.M. to 3:10 P.M. The results have been positive. According to teachers, especially

good better best
more (better) (X)

smoothly
平稳地

25 first-period teachers, students are more⁺
awake in class. The students participate more⁺
enthusiastically, and classes seem to go more⁺
smoothly. Counselors say that students seem
happier and that they are nicer to one
30 another. There is a better⁺ climate in the
school.

Despite the positive results, some parents
and teachers do not want schedule changes.

They think that people who sleep late are
35 lazier than people who get up early.

adj (lazy)

Researchers believe that this way of thinking
comes from the time when most people
lived on farms and had to get up early to
work. At that time people believed late risers
40 weren't as hardworking or successful as early
risers. This clearly isn't true of high school
students today. Indeed, one student says the
changes in Edina have been successful. He
was in tenth grade when the school changed
45 its starting time, and he says he immediately
noticed that "everyone was more alert."

alert: awake and paying attention

attentive: watching or listening carefully

climate: the general attitude or feeling in a place

counselors: school employees who give
students advice

smoothly: easily and without problems

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- T 1. Some students are very tired and cannot pay attention in class.
2. American high schools usually start later than elementary schools.
3. Doctors believe that teenagers need more sleep.
4. The first high school to change its schedule was in Iowa.
5. Teachers say the results have been negative.
6. Some parents and teachers do not like the schedule change.

B

Comparatives

Examining Form

Look back at the article on page 346 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- Four examples of comparative adjectives and adverbs are underlined. Which are adjectives? Which are adverbs? There are two ways to form the comparative of adjectives and adverbs. What are they?
- Find two more examples of each underlined form.

COMPARATIVE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND NOUNS

Adjectives		
ONE SYLLABLE	TWO SYLLABLES	THREE OR MORE SYLLABLES
tall—taller	simple—simpler	beautiful— <u>more</u> beautiful
cold—colder	happy—happier	expensive— <u>more</u> expensive
cute—cuter	famous— <u>more</u> famous	creative— <u>more</u> creative / 创意
big—bigger	polite—politer/ <u>more</u> polite	intelligent— <u>more</u> intelligent

= 5 音节 可用 +er

Adverbs	
ONE SYLLABLE	TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES
hard—harder	quickly— <u>more</u> quickly
late—later	clearly— <u>more</u> clearly

Irregular Forms		
ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE
good	well	<u>better</u>
bad	badly	<u>worse</u>

= 2 音节 不可用 +er
只能用 more

Nouns			
COUNT NOUN	COMPARATIVE	NONCOUNT NOUN	COMPARATIVE
a book	<u>more</u> books	homework	<u>more</u> homework

friendly adj
=> friendlier

adj { easy => easier
simple => simpler

Study it! 例句 fun more fun most fun
 funny funnier

Adjectives with One Syllable

- Add *-er* to form the comparative of most one-syllable adjectives. If the adjective ends in *e*, add *-r*. If it ends with a single vowel and a consonant, double the final consonant and add *-er*.
 母音 輔音

Adjectives with Two Syllables

- If the adjective ends in *le*, add *-r*. If it ends in a consonant + *y*, change *y* to *i* and add *-er*. For most other two-syllable adjectives, use *more*.
 simple / consonant
- Some two-syllable adjectives can use either *-er* or *more*. See Appendix 11.

Adjectives with Three or More Syllables

- Use *more* with adjectives of three or more syllables.

Adverbs with One Syllable

- Add *-er* to form the comparative of most one-syllable adverbs. If the adverb ends in *e*, add *-r*.

Adverbs with Two or More Syllables

- Use *more* instead of *-er* with most adverbs of two or more syllables ending in *ly*.

Irregular Forms

- Some adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms. See Appendix 12.
 She sings **better** than I do. He is a **worse** student than I am.

Nouns

- To form the comparative, use *more* with count and noncount nouns.

THE COMPARATIVE IN SENTENCES

	COMPARATIVE	THAN	SUBJECT (+ VERB or AUXILIARY)
Lisa is	taller	than	her brother (is). he is.
Tony works	harder		you (work). you (do).
We read	more books		our friends (read). they (do).

	COMPARATIVE	THAN	OBJECT PRONOUN
Lisa is	taller	than	him.
Tony works	harder		you.
Lisa reads	more books		them.

(Continued on page 350)



- *Than* often follows comparative forms. If *than* is not used, it is still implied. 隱含的
I'm **older than** my sister. I'm also **taller** (than my sister).
 - *Than* can be followed by a noun or by a subject pronoun + an optional verb or auxiliary.
We read **more books than our friends (read)**. We read **more books than they (do)**.
 - *Than* can also be followed by an object pronoun. An object pronoun is always used alone without a verb after it.
Lisa is **taller than him**.
- ⚠ Do not use both *-er* and *more* in a comparative.
Lisa is **taller than he is**. *Lisa is more taller than he is. (INCORRECT)

B1 Listening for Form

Listen to each conversation. Which comparative form do you hear? Check (✓) the correct column.

	-ER	MORE
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

more convenient

adj

→ 形容词 < 形容词 < y → -er 形容词 < y

B2 Working on Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs

Write the correct comparative form. Use *-er* or *more*.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. fast <u>faster</u> | 7. loudly _____ |
| 2. messy _____ | 8. large _____ |
| 3. handsome _____ | 9. dangerously _____ |
| 4. happily _____ | 10. complicated _____ |
| 5. hot _____ | 11. late _____ |
| 6. expensive _____ | 12. polite _____ |

adj 形容词 < y ⊕ more 比较没有问题!

B3 Working on Comparatives in Sentences

Complete each conversation with the comparative forms of the adjectives, adverbs, or nouns in parentheses.

Conversation 1

Amy: What do you think? Should I buy the paperback or the hardcover book?

Betty: Well, the paperback is cheaper¹ (cheap) than the hardcover, but the hardcover will last longer² (long).

Conversation 2

Stefan: Your newspaper is thicker¹ (thick) than my newspaper.

Josh: It probably just has fewer² (advertisements).

Conversation 3

Carlos: Is André a better¹ (good) tennis player than I am?

Miguel: I'm not sure. He hits the ball harder² (hard) than you, but you move quicker³ (quickly) than he does.

Conversation 4

Mr. Orr: So how is college compared to high school?

Yuji: It's definitely harder¹ (difficult) and the professors give more² (homework) than my teachers did in high school. But it's getting easier. My grades were worse³ (bad) last semester than they are this semester.

Conversation 5

Alex: You look like your sister.

Luisa: I know. But actually, we're very different. She's taller¹ (tall) and thinner² (thin) than me. Her hair is curlier³ (curly) than mine, and she has more⁴ (freckles).

C

Making Comparisons

Examining Meaning and Use

Read these sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- Jake likes his new job. He's making more money.
- Jake's new apartment is less expensive than his old one.

Which comparison talks about a larger amount? Which comparison talks about a smaller amount?

Meaning and Use Notes

Talking About Differences

- 1A** Use comparatives with adjectives, adverbs, and nouns to talk about differences between two things (people, objects, ideas, places, or actions).

My father is ^{adj.} **older than** my mother.

The new computer runs ^{adv.} **more smoothly than** the old one.

There are ^{noun} **more cars than** buses on the highways.

- 1B** You can use the comparative without *than* when the meaning is clear from context.

She's a good student, but I think he's **smarter**. (= smarter than she is)

We sang well, but they sang **better**. (= better than we did)

Expressing Greater and Lesser Degrees

- 2A** Use *more* or *-er* with adjectives and adverbs to show that something is a larger quantity, degree, or size than something else. Use *less* with adjectives and adverbs to show that something is a smaller quantity, degree, or size than something else.

More/-er . . . Than

Diamonds are **more expensive** than rubies.

He works **more quickly** than she does.

Less . . . Than

Rubies are **less expensive than** diamonds.

She works **less quickly than** he does.

⚠ *Less* can sound awkward with adjectives and adverbs that have one syllable. To avoid this, use the comparative form of an adjective or adverb with the opposite meaning.

I'm **shorter than** my brother.

* I'm **less tall than** my brother. (NOT USUAL)

2B Use *more* with count or noncount nouns to talk about larger quantities. Use *fewer* with count nouns and *less* with noncount nouns to talk about smaller quantities.

Count Nouns

Mexico City has **more people than** Seattle.

Seattle has **fewer people than** Mexico City.

Noncount Nouns

The Smiths have **more money than** the Johnsons.

The Johnsons have **less money than** the Smiths.

Pronouns and Formality

3 When *than* is followed by a subject pronoun alone, the sentence has a more formal tone. When it is followed by a subject pronoun + verb or auxiliary, it is neutral in tone (neither formal nor informal). When it is followed by an object pronoun, it has a more informal tone.

More Formal

He is **older than I**.

Neutral

He is **older than I am**.

More Informal

He is **older than me**.

Changing Situations

4 A comparative form can be repeated and joined with *and* to show that a situation is changing. This use of the comparative is common with verbs of change such as get, become, and grow, especially in the present continuous.

He looks **older and older** every day.

I have **less and less time** to study.

Taxes are getting **higher and higher**.

Car engines are becoming **more and more efficient**.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A,
1B, 2A

 Listen to each situation and the question that follows. Choose the correct answer.

- a. Dan is.

b. Mike is.
- a. Ana's coat was.

b. Rick's coat was.
- a. Our team did.

b. Their team did.
- a. Betty did.

b. Her classmates did.
- a. Maria does.

b. Frank does.
- a. The B4 bus is.

b. The D2 bus is.

C2 Expressing Differences

► Notes 1A,
2A, 2B

Read the two sentences. Then write a comparative sentence with the adjective, adverb, or noun in parentheses.

- Texas has an area of 267,277 square miles.
California has an area of 158,869 square miles.

(larger) Texas has a larger area than California (has/does).
- Cheetahs can run up to 70 miles per hour.
Greyhounds can run up to 40 miles per hour.

(quickly) _____
- There are exactly 36 inches in a yard.
There are a little more than 39 inches in meter.

(long) _____
- Earth travels around the Sun in 365 days.
Mercury travels around the Sun in 88 days.

(slowly) _____
- A kilogram has 1,000 grams.
A pound has 454 grams.

(heavy) _____
- China's population is more than 1.3 billion.
India's population is more than 845 billion.

(people) _____

C3 Rephrasing Comparatives

► Note 3

Make each sentence more formal, more informal, or more neutral in tone.

1. My son is taller than me.

(more neutral) My son is taller than I am.

2. I take more classes than he does.

(more informal) _____

3. I've been waiting longer than them.

(more neutral) _____

formal ← 4. Jack has more experience than I.

(more informal) _____

neutral → 5. He worked harder than she did.

(more formal) _____

informal 6. He got more presents than me.

(more neutral) _____

neutral 7. They've lived here for more years than we have.

(more informal) _____

neutral 8. She's more friendly than he is.

(more formal) _____

C4 Talking About Changing Situations

► Note 4

Think about the place where you live. Choose six of the topics below to make sentences about how things are changing. Use the present continuous with *get*, *become*, or *grow* and the comparative form of an adjective with *and*.

the air the economy my neighborhood the prices the stores
the buses the houses the people the schools the traffic

The air is getting more and more polluted.

less
heavier
busier
and ~~the~~
busier
heavier
less



As . . . As with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns

Examining Form

Look at the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- My car isn't as new as your car.
 - Sara looks as young as he looks.
 - We walked as fast as them.
 - Dan doesn't talk as loudly as Mark does.
- Underline the adjectives and circle the adverbs.
 - Which sentences end with an auxiliary or a verb? Which ends with a noun? Which ends with an object pronoun?

Adjectives		
	AS + ADJECTIVE + AS	SUBJECT (+ VERB or AUXILIARY)
She is	as tall as	Dan (is).
	AS + ADJECTIVE + AS	OBJECT PRONOUN
She is	as tall as	him.

Adverbs		
	AS + ADVERB + AS	SUBJECT (+ VERB or AUXILIARY)
He works	as hard as	Eve (works). she (does).
	AS + ADVERB + AS	OBJECT PRONOUN
He works	as hard as	her.

Plural Count Nouns		
	AS MANY + NOUN + AS	SUBJECT (+ VERB or AUXILIARY)
I have	as many CDs as	they (have). they (do).
	AS MANY + NOUN + AS	OBJECT PRONOUN
I have	as many CDs as	him.

Noncount Nouns		
	AS MUCH + NOUN + AS	SUBJECT (+ VERB or AUXILIARY)
He has	as much money as	Carla (has). she (does).
	AS MUCH + NOUN + AS	OBJECT PRONOUN
He has	as much money as	her.

He is as tall as his mother. She has as many jackets as her mother.
 She drives as quickly as her mother. She has as much money as her mother.

- Use as . . . as with adjectives and adverbs.
- Use as many . . . as with plural count nouns. Use as much . . . as with noncount nouns.
- The second *as* can be followed by a noun or a subject pronoun + an optional verb or auxiliary.
- The second *as* can also be followed by an object pronoun. An object pronoun is always used alone.
- To form a negative statement with *as . . . as*, use the negative form of the verb + *as (much/many) . . . as*.

She is not as tall as he is. He doesn't have as much money as I do.

He has as much money as he does / \$20.
 She doesn't have as much money as him / \$50.

D1 Listening for Form

 Listen to each conversation. What form of *as . . . as* does the second speaker use? Write the *as . . . as* phrase you hear.

1. My college isn't small. It's as big as your college.
2. Yes, but it's going to take me a while to finish it. I don't read _____ you do.
3. I'm _____ you are.
4. Not great. It seems to have _____ my old car
5. It's hard. The other kids already did this stuff. I can't work _____ they can.

D2 Rephrasing Sentences with As . . . As

In your notebook, rewrite each sentence in three different ways.

1. Lee works as hard as his sister.
Lee works as hard as she. Lee works as hard as she does. Lee works as hard as her.
2. We've spent as much money as the Swansons.
3. Rita's son isn't as old as Sara's son.
4. Rick didn't take as many classes as his brother.
5. He doesn't have as many stamps as I do.
6. They played better than Mike and I.

E

As . . . As with Adjectives, Adverbs, and Nouns

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Ben is as tall as Matt.
 - b. Dan isn't as tall as Ben.
1. In which sentence are the boys the same height?
 2. In which sentence are the boys different heights?

Meaning and Use Notes

As . . . As to Talk About Things That Are Equal or Similar

- 1A** Use *as . . . as* with adjectives, adverbs, and nouns to say that two things (people, objects, actions, etc.) are equal or similar.

My office is **as big as** his office.

The student explained the problem **as simply as** the teacher.

We saved **as much money as** Gina did.

They have **as many friends as** us.

- 1B** Use *about*, *almost*, and *nearly* before *as . . . as* to say that two things are close but not quite equal.

My office is almost **as big as** his office. (His office is bigger than my office by a small amount.)

Elena is nearly **as tall as** Eva. (Eva is taller than Elena by a small amount.)

- 1C** You can omit the second part of an *as . . . as* phrase when the meaning is clear from context.

Yes, she's a good student, but he's **as good**. (= as good as she is.)

Negative Statements with As . . . As to Talk About Differences

- 2 Use negative statements with *as . . . as* to talk about differences between two things. A negative statement with *as . . . as* has the same meaning as a comparative sentence with *less* or *fewer*.

Ken is not as athletic as Tom. (= Ken is less athletic than Tom.)

He didn't finish as quickly as us. (= He finished less quickly than us.)

I don't have as much energy as they do. (= I have less energy than they do.)

He doesn't know as many students as I do. (= He knows fewer students than I do.)

! *Less* can sound awkward with adjectives and adverbs that have one syllable. Use a negative statement with *as . . . as* instead.

I'm not as tall as my brother.

* I'm less tall than my brother. (NOT USUAL)

E1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 2



Listen to each statement and the question that follows. Choose the correct answer to the questions. Choose *c* if neither *a* nor *b* is correct.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. a. Atlanta Braves | 5. a. teenage girls |
| b. New York Yankees | b. teenage boys |
| c. neither | c. <u>neither</u> |
| 2. a. Russian | 6. a. teachers |
| b. Chinese | b. nurses <i>as hard as</i> |
| c. neither | c. neither |
| 3. a. Carlene | 7. a. Paul's children |
| b. Janet | b. Bob's children <i>don't watch as more TV as . . .</i> |
| c. neither | c. neither |
| 4. a. Techno computers | 8. a. rattlesnakes |
| b. Quantum computers | b. king cobras |
| c. neither | c. neither |

A. Look at the pictures of Derek's and Koji's apartments. In your notebook, write sentences about the two men. Use the words below and *as . . . as*, *nearly/almost as . . .*, and *not as . . . as*.



Derek's apartment



Koji's apartment

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. Derek's apartment/messy | 4. Koji/books/bookcase |
| <i>Derek's apartment isn't as messy as Koji's.</i> | 5. Derek/dress/casually |
| 2. Koji/clean/frequently | 6. Derek/interested/sports |
| 3. Koji/eat/junk food | |

B. Work with a partner. Look at the pictures again. Make at least four more comparisons with *as . . . as* phrases.

Koji's furniture isn't as nice as Derek's.

Vocabulary Notes

Using Descriptive Phrases with *As . . . As*

There are many common descriptive phrases with *as . . . as* in English. These phrases are used to compare a subject to something (such as an animal or object) that people associate with a certain quality or feeling.

An example of one of these phrases is *as free as a bird*. We use this phrase to express the idea that someone or something is or feels very free: for example, *I have finished my exams, and now I'm as free as a bird*.

We sometimes use these phrases in speech and writing to make a description more lively and colorful. Here is a list of some of these phrases:

as free as a bird	as cold as ice	as tough as nails
as strong as an ox	as gentle as a lamb	as hungry as a bear
as old as the hills	as quiet as a mouse	as light as a feather

E3 Using Descriptive Phrases with *As . . . As*

Complete the sentences with one of the descriptive phrases from the Vocabulary Notes above.

1. Can we turn up the heat? It's freezing in here. My hands are as cold as ice.
2. Don't be afraid of the dog. He's big and he looks mean, but he wouldn't hurt anyone. He's _____.
3. Wow! I can lift this bicycle with one hand. It's _____.
4. No one heard me come in. I didn't make any noise. I was _____.
5. Don't try to move that big TV by yourself. It's really heavy. Ask Mike to help you.
He's _____.
6. My kids are all in college now. I don't have to cook meals or spend hours cleaning. These days I feel _____.
7. I haven't had anything to eat all day. I'm _____.
8. Our dog is 16 or 17 years old. He's _____.
9. That old, retired army officer still insists on ordering everyone around.
He's _____.

F

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

F1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read each sentence and choose the best response. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Your son doesn't seem as interested in sports as your daughter.

B: _____

a. You're right. He's definitely less interested in sports.

b. Yes. They're both very interested in sports.

2. A: I don't run as fast as Greg.

B: _____

a. Good, then you should win the race easily.

b. That's OK. You could still get second place.

3. A: The red dress is more expensive than the blue one.

B: _____

a. Well, if you want to save money, get the blue one.

b. I like the red one better and it's cheaper, too.

4. A: You're as smart as I am.

B: _____

a. Then why are my grades worse?

b. You're always criticizing me.

5. A: My grades are getting better and better.

B: _____

a. Maybe you're trying too hard.

b. That's because you've been studying.

6. A: He's not arriving as early as we thought.

B: _____

- a. That's good. I haven't finished cleaning the house yet.
- b. Oh, dear! Will we be ready in time?

7. A: I don't have as much money as you do.

B: _____

- a. OK. Then I'll pay for dinner.
- b. OK. Then you pay for dinner

8. A: Ana doesn't work as quickly as Sara.

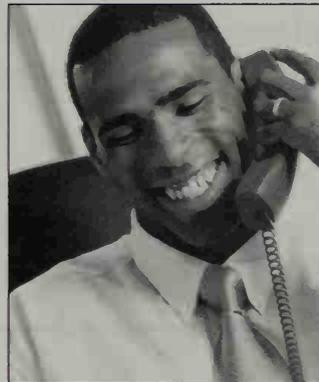
B: _____

- a. That's why Sara stays later.
- b. That's why Ana stays later.

F2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

My new job is ^{better}~~more good~~ than my old one. I am more happier here. There are several reasons why. For one thing, we have flextime. That means that we can arrive at work anytime between seven and ten and leave eight hours later. In general, this company doesn't have as much rules as my old company does. Also, the building is nicer of the old building, and my office is bigger than my old office. There are more windows in this building than in my old building. The work is more hard than the work at my old job, but I like the challenge of hard work. I like my new boss more than my old boss. She's less bad tempered than he was, and she's helpfuler. Finally, I really like my co-workers. They are so much more nice that the people I used to work with. We have a lot of fun together. The day goes by more quicker. I'm glad I came here.





Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look at advertisements in English-language magazines and newspapers or on the Internet. Find at least three examples of comparative adjectives or adverbs. Bring them to class. What two things are compared in each advertisement? Do you believe the advertisement? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow these steps to write a letter to a friend comparing teenagers in your country to teenagers in another country that you are familiar with.

1. Think about the topic. Make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you.
 - How are teenagers in your country similar to teenagers in the other country?
 - How are they different?
2. Write a first draft. Use comparative adjectives, adverbs, and nouns. Try to use at least one sentence with *less* and one sentence with *as . . . as*.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors.
4. Rewrite your draft.

There are many differences between the teenagers in the United States and the teenagers in Japan. In general, the teenagers in Japan are more serious about life. . . .



Superlatives

superlatives 最高級

tall, taller, tallest
 beautiful, more beautiful, the most beautiful

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: Strange but True	366
B. FORM: Superlatives	368
SUPERLATIVE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND NOUNS	
tall— the tallest	quickly— the most quickly
expensive— the most expensive	good— the best
hard— the hardest	money— the most money
PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES AFTER SUPERLATIVES	
My sister is the tallest in the family .	
C. MEANING AND USE: Superlatives	372
Comparing Members of a Group	
Emphasizing or Weakening Superlatives	
Using <i>The Most</i> , <i>The Least</i> , and <i>The Fewest</i>	
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	377

A

Strange but True

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

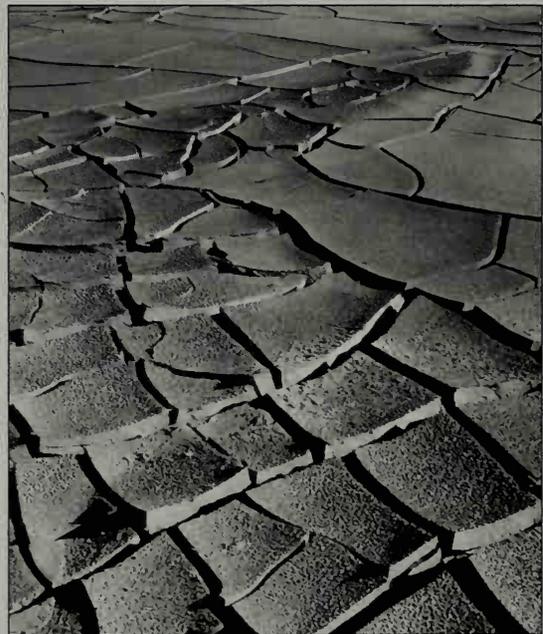
What is the tallest building in the world? What is the longest river? Which country has the most people? If you need information like this, where can you look?

A2 Read

Read this magazine article to find out the story behind the first *Guinness* record book.

Strange but True

How big was the world's biggest lollipop? (4,016 pounds) What is the driest place in the world? (The Atacama Desert in Chile) Who has climbed a 100-foot tree the fastest? (Guy German; 24.82 seconds, up and down) If you would like to know the answers to thousands of questions like these, you can find them in *Guinness World Records*TM. For over 40 years *Guinness* has recorded the world's superlatives: the strongest person, the most valuable stamp, the fastest talker, the most



The driest place in the world

expensive meal, the ugliest dog, the most dangerous ant, the worst pollution, and the world's tallest building.

The History of a Best-Seller

A little over 50 years ago Sir Hugh Beaver, the managing director of Guinness Brewery, had a problem. He wanted to know whether a certain bird, the golden plover, was the fastest of all the birds that people hunt in Europe. He looked everywhere, but he couldn't find the answer to his question. He thought that other people must have similar questions, so he got the idea for a book that would answer them. On August 27, 1955, the first *Guinness* record book was printed. By Christmas of that year it was selling the most copies of any book.

Two years later the first U.S. version of *Guinness* appeared. By 1974 the book had sold more copies than any other book except the Bible. By 1989 sales around the world had risen to over 60 million. That equals 163

35 piles of books, each as high as Mount Everest. So far the book has sold more than 90 million copies in 37 languages.

Getting into Guinness

It's not easy to be a world record holder, in any category. For example, do you think you can collect the most bus tickets? You'll have to collect more than 14,000 of them. Or what about dribbling a basketball the farthest without stopping? As Mark Young, the publisher of the American version of *Guinness*, points out, that record is 97 miles in 24 hours. "I get tired driving a car that far," Young says.

You can try to set a record, though, and be successful. In 1979 Ashrita Furman decided to set a *Guinness* record, and he now has set 58 of them—the most *Guinness* records that one person has set.

dribbling: bouncing a basketball up and down with short repeated bounces

lollipop: a piece of hard candy on a stick

set a record: do something better than anyone has done before

A3 After You Read

Match each number with what it represents.

 c 1. 4,016 pounds

_____ 2. 1955

_____ 3. 58

_____ 4. over 90 million

_____ 5. 97

_____ 6. over 14,000

a. the number of miles someone dribbled a basketball

b. the number of bus tickets someone has collected

c. the weight of the biggest lollipop

d. the number of *Guinness* books sold so far

e. the most *Guinness* records one person has set

f. the year the first *Guinness* record book was published

B

Superlatives

Examining Form

Look back at the article on page 366 and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1. Find the superlative form of these adjectives: *big*, *strong*, *valuable*, and *expensive*.
2. There are two ways to form the superlative of adjectives. What are they?
3. Find one more example of each form.

SUPERLATIVE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND NOUNS

Adjectives					
ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE	ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
tall	taller	the tallest	famous	more famous	the most famous
cute	cuter	the cutest	polite	politer more polite	the politest the most polite
big	bigger	the biggest	beautiful	more beautiful	the most beautiful
simple	simpler	the simplest	expensive	more expensive	the most expensive
happy	happier	the happiest	intelligent	more intelligent	the most intelligent

Adverbs		
ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
hard	harder	the hardest
late	later	the latest
quickly	more quickly	the most quickly
clearly	more clearly	the most clearly

Irregular Forms		
ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst

ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
well	better	the best
badly	worse	the worst

Nouns					
COUNT NOUN	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE	NONCOUNT NOUN	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
a book	more books	the most books	money	more money	the most money

Adjectives with One Syllable

- Use *the* + adjective + *-est* to form the superlative of most one-syllable adjectives. If the adjective ends in *e*, add *-st*. If it ends with a single vowel and a consonant, double the consonant and add *-est*.

Adjectives with Two Syllables

- If the adjective ends in *le*, add *-st*. If it ends in a consonant + *y*, change *y* to *i* and add *-est*. For most other two-syllable adjectives, use *the most* + adjective.
- Some two-syllable adjectives can use either *-est* or *the most*. See Appendix 11.

Adjectives with Three or More Syllables

- Use *the most* + adjective with adjectives of three or more syllables.

Adverbs with One Syllable

- Use *the* + adverb + *-est* to form the superlative of most one-syllable adverbs. If the adverb ends in *e*, add *-st*.

Adverbs with Two or More Syllables

- For most adverbs with two or more syllables ending in *ly*, use *the most* + adverb.
- Use *the most* + adverb with adverbs of three or more syllables.

Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

- Some adjectives and adverbs have irregular superlative forms. See Appendix 12.

Nouns

- To form the superlative, use *the most* with count and noncount nouns.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES AFTER SUPERLATIVES

	SUPERLATIVE	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE
My sister is	the tallest	<i>in the world at 5'2"</i> in the family.
He works	the hardest	of all the employees.
They have	the most children	on the block.

⚠ Do not use *than* after a superlative.

He works **the hardest** of all the employees.

*He works the hardest **than** all the employees. (INCORRECT)

FX
#3 = comparative

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each sentence. Which form of the adjective or adverb do you hear?
Check (✓) the correct column.

	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1.		✓
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

B2 Forming Adjectives and Adverbs

Complete this chart with the missing forms of each adjective or adverb.

	BASE FORM	COMPARATIVE FORM	SUPERLATIVE FORM
1.	<i>beautifully</i>	<i>more beautifully</i>	<i>the most beautifully</i>
2.		<i>higher</i>	
3.	<i>badly</i>		
4.		<i>more rapidly</i>	
5.			<i>the sleepest</i>
6.		<i>more famous</i>	
7.	<i>early</i>		
8.	<i>good</i>		
9.			<i>the happiest</i>
10.		<i>more softly</i>	
11.	<i>wet</i>		
12.	<i>lovely</i>		

C

Superlatives

Examining Meaning and Use

Read these sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. August was warmer than July. b. August was the warmest month of the year.

Which sentence compares things in a group of three or more things? Which compares only two things?

Meaning and Use Notes

Comparing Members of a Group

- 1A** Use the superlative of adjectives, adverbs, and nouns to compare things in a group—three or more people, objects, ideas, places, or actions. The superlative shows that one member has more (or less) of something than all other members.

Paris was **the most interesting** city that we visited. (Paris was more interesting than all of the other cities.)

I'm **the youngest** of four children. (I am younger than any of the other children.)

- 1B** Superlative adjectives are often followed by a noun. The noun indicates the thing you are comparing. Superlative adjectives can also be used without a noun if the context indicates the missing noun.

All the teachers here are good. Ms. Jordan is probably **the best**. (= the best teacher). noun

- 1C** Superlatives are often followed by a prepositional phrase. The prepositional phrase indicates the group in the comparison.

Who is **the richest man** in the world? (all men in the world = the group)

She's **the most popular student** in the class. (all students in the class = the group)

He's **the best actor** on TV. (all actors on TV = the group)

- 1D** Superlatives are also often followed by clauses. These, too, indicate the group. Often the clauses are in the present perfect with ever.

The Pink Panther is **the funniest movie** that I've ever seen.

This is the best sushi that I've ever eaten.

This is the hardest test that I've ever had taken.

Emphasizing or Weakening Superlatives

- 2A** The prepositional phrase *of all* gives the superlative more emphasis. It means “of all the people, places, or other things in the group.” It doesn’t change the meaning of the superlative.

I think mountain climbing is **the most dangerous sport** of all.
Everyone made an effort, but John tried **the hardest** of all.

- 2B** You can use *one of* before the superlative of an adjective. *One of* weakens the superlative because it means that the thing you are talking about is not unique by itself, but is part of a group of things that are unique.

New York is one of the most famous cities in the world. (New York and some other cities are more famous than the rest of the cities in the world.)

Using The Most, The Least, and The Fewest

- 3A** Use *the most* or *-est* with adjectives and adverbs to show that something is a higher degree, quantity, or size than all the other members of a group. Use *the least* to show that something is a lower degree, quantity, or size than all the other members of a group.

Diamonds are **the most expensive** gems in this shop.

He’s **the richest** man in the world.

He’s **the least talkative** of any of our friends.

-  *The least* sometimes sounds awkward with one-syllable adjectives and adverbs. To avoid this, use the superlative form of an adjective or adverb with the opposite meaning.

I’m **the shortest** in my family.

* I’m the least tall in my family. (INCORRECT)

- 3B** Use *the most* with count or noncount nouns to talk about the largest quantities. Use *the fewest* with count nouns and *the least* with noncount nouns to talk about the smallest quantities.

Count Nouns

He made **the most mistakes**.

You made **the fewest mistakes**.

Noncount Nouns

I had **the most trouble** with the test.

She had **the least trouble** with the test.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A-1D,
2A, 3A, 3B

 Read the situations and questions below. Then listen to the conversations and answer the questions.

Situation 1

A woman has three daughters: Alison, Caitlin and Megan. One of them is five years old, one is seven, and one is eleven.

1. Who is five years old? Caitlin
2. Who is eleven years old? _____

Situation 2

There are three restaurants: Isabelle's, Sun Palace, and Seaview. One of them is a block away, one is two miles away, and one is five miles away.

1. Which restaurant is a block away? _____
2. Which restaurant is five miles away? _____

Situation 3

Three boys played in a practice basketball game: Ed, Pete, and Tom. One of them made two baskets, one made ten, and one made fifteen.

1. Who made two baskets? _____
2. Who made fifteen baskets? _____

C2 Asking for Opinions and Preferences

► Notes 1A, 1B,
1D

A. Use each set of words and phrases to write a question with *what* or *who*. Use a superlative and a clause with *ever* and the present perfect.

1. easy subject/study What is the easiest subject that you've ever studied?
2. interesting book/read _____
3. unusual person/know _____
4. pretty place/visit _____
5. bad movie/see _____

B. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering the questions in part A.

A: *What is the easiest subject that you have ever studied?*

B: *The easiest subject that I've ever studied is geography.*

C3 Weakening Superlatives

► Note 2B

Read the situations. Write sentences with *one of* . . . + superlative.

1. You have just moved to New York. When you call your family, your sister asks if the New York subway system is larger than any other subway system in the United States. You know that Boston and Chicago have large subway systems, too. You say:

New York has one of the largest subway systems in the U.S.

2. You're talking about sports with your friend. You say that basketball is more popular than any other sport in the world. Your friend knows that basketball is very popular, but he thinks that soccer may be more popular. He says:

Basketball is

3. You wonder whether diamonds are more valuable than other gems. You research the subject and find out that diamonds are valuable, but other gems are sometimes more valuable. What have you learned?

Diamonds are

4. You and your friend are driving through Death Valley in California. It is very hot! Your friend asks if Death Valley is hotter than any other place on earth. You're not really sure. You say:

Death Valley is

C4 Making Recommendations

► Notes 1A-1C

Work with a partner. ^{猜想} Imagine that you have a new neighbor. Use the words in parentheses to make recommendations with superlatives.

1. (beautiful/place) The most beautiful place in town is Memorial Park.

2. (good/restaurant) _____

3. (near/supermarket) _____

4. (nice/hotel) _____

5. (popular/club) _____

6. (big/mall) _____

7. (cheap/movie theater) ^{cheapest} _____

8. (interesting/store) _____

A. Complete this note with the superlative of the words in parentheses.

Dear Carol,

Thank you so much for the birthday gift! I received many fabulous presents this year, but yours was the most wonderful (wonderful) of all! You can imagine my smile when I tore off the wrapping and saw

_____ (late) edition of Guinness World Records! Only you could have chosen something so appropriate for the one who was voted "girl with _____ (weird) sense of humor" in high school!

It may not be _____ (serious) reference in the world, but it's certainly one of _____ (enjoyable). I loved reading about _____ (long) surviving headless chicken, _____ (smelly) flower in the world, and the man with _____ (wide) waist! But you know us library science majors! The book appeals to my serious side as well. Did you know that Switzerland has _____ (high) use of solar energy in the world and that World War II was _____ (bloody) war in history?

Again, many thanks for the wonderful surprise. You really are _____ (great)! This was one of _____ (nice) birthdays I've ever had.

Regards to you and the family,

Rita

B. Use the example in part A to help you write a thank-you note to someone who has given you a gift recently. Use superlatives where possible.

Dear Kim,

Thank you very much for the beautiful gift. It's the nicest sweater that I've ever seen. . . .

D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Read each sentence and choose the best answer. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Bill works more quickly than Bob. Elena works more quickly than Bill.

B: _____

- a. So Elena is the quickest worker of all.
- b. Can Elena work more quickly than Bob?

2. A: Jan is one of the fastest runners on the team.

B: _____

- a. Who else is fast?
- b. Is anyone else fast?

3. A: Their youngest son is 12 years old.

B: _____

- a. How old are their other sons?
- b. How old is their other son?

4. A: John got an A, and the rest of us got B's and C's.

B: _____

- a. So John did the best of all.
- b. So John got one of the highest grades.

5. A: She's the best dancer I know.

B: _____

- a. Who is better?
- b. She must be great!

6. A: Are any of your other TVs less expensive than this one?

B: _____

- a. Yes, this is one of our least expensive TVs.
- b. No, this is our least expensive TV.

D2 Editing

Find the errors in this paragraph and correct them.

I think that Paris is ^{the}most wonderful~~est~~ city in the world. It certainly is the more romantic. It has some of the most good art museums in the world. It also has some of the interestingest architecture, such as the Eiffel Tower. Then there is French food. I've been to many cities, and Paris has the best restaurants than all. Of course, Paris is not the most cheap place to visit. In fact, it is one of the most expensive place in the world, especially for hotels. But there are a few cheap hotels. Youth hostels cost the less of all, so I stay in youth hostels.



The Eiffel Tower

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in a book or on the Internet for information on world records, or for information that compares members of a group (rivers, cities, etc.). Find five facts that use superlatives. Bring them to class and discuss them with your classmates.

Speaking

Work with a group of classmates to create a list of group or class records. Then write questions. For example: Who is the fastest swimmer in the group? Who can eat the most ice cream? Who has visited the most countries? Who speaks the loudest? After you have completed your questions, take turns reading them to the whole class. Then ask the class to try to guess who holds the record.

PART

9

**Gerunds,
Infinitives,
and Phrasal
Verbs**

Gerunds

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: 10 Easy Ways to Start Saving Money	382
B. FORM 1: Gerunds as Subjects and Objects	384
GERUNDS AS SUBJECTS	
Exercising isn't fun.	
GERUNDS AS OBJECTS	
I enjoy shopping .	
C. FORM 2: Gerunds After Prepositions	387
We walked instead of driving .	
D. MEANING AND USE: Gerunds	389
Referring to Activities and States	
<i>Do You Mind . . . ? , I Don't Mind . . . , and Would You Mind . . . ?</i>	
Other Common Uses	
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	393

A

10 Easy Ways to Start Saving Money

A1 Before You Read

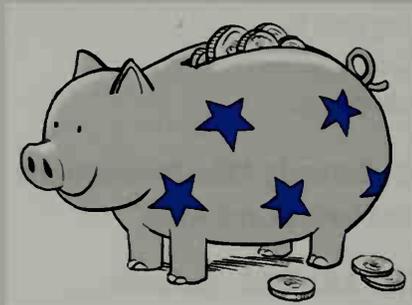
Discuss these questions.

Do you try to save money? How do you do it? Is it easy or difficult?

A2 Read

Read this magazine article to learn ten things that you can do to save money.

10 Easy Ways to Start Saving MONEY



Saving money is very difficult for many people. Here are some ways to make it easier.

1

5 Before starting, write down your expenses. For one week, every time you spend money write down how much money you
10 spent and what you spent it on. This will help you save by showing you where your money goes.

2

15 Divide your expenses into two groups—the

things that you need and the things that you want. Think about cutting some of your “wants.”

20 These cuts will help you save money.

3

25 Make a monthly budget. A budget is a plan for spending the money you have. Include in your budget all your needs and some of your wants. Each month stay within your budget. This is very
30 important. Many people love making budgets but hate staying within them.

Saving is a need, so include it in your budget.

35 Save some money each month, and put this money in the bank; even small amounts of money add up.

4

40 Start taking your lunch to work or to school. How much do you save by not buying lunch? Each day put this money
45 in a large jar.

5

Save all of your change. Instead of spending your coins, put them in the jar, too. You won't notice the difference, and by the end of the year you could have several hundred dollars. Each time your jar is full, put the money in the bank.

6

Make it difficult to spend money. Before going out, check your wallet. Don't take much money with you and leave your credit cards at home.

7

Don't go shopping when you don't need to buy anything. Do you find it hard to be in stores without buying things? If so, stay away from stores.

8

Wait a while before making a large purchase. Give yourself time to change your mind. If you wait 24 hours, you may decide not to make the purchase.

9

If you get unexpected money, don't spend it.

Put any gifts of money in the bank. You didn't expect this money, so you won't miss it.

10

When you do have to buy something, use the Internet. Shopping on the Internet not only saves money, it saves time.

If you are tired of not having any money in the bank, try these ten easy ways to start saving money. You will be surprised at how quickly your situation will change.

Adapted from "Ten Easy Ways to Start Saving Money"

expenses: money spent for specific purposes

purchase: something bought

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true and *F* for false for each statement.

- T 1. Writing down your expenses will help you save money.
- 2. Your wants are more important than your needs.
- 3. A budget is a plan for earning money.
- 4. You don't have to stay within your budget every month.
- 5. Saving works only with large amounts of money.
- 6. Taking your lunch to work is cheaper than buying lunch.
- 7. Always carry a lot of money so that you will be ready for an emergency.
- 8. Waiting to make large purchases is a good idea.

B

Gerunds as Subjects and Objects

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. Saving is difficult for many people. 2a. I started taking my lunch to work.
 1b. She is saving a lot of money. 2b. Taking my lunch to work saves money.

- Look at the underlined forms in 1a and 1b. Which one is in the present continuous? Which one is a gerund? How do you know?
- Look at the underlined gerund phrases in 2a and 2b. In which sentence is the underlined phrase the subject? In which sentence is the underlined phrase the object of the main verb?
- Are gerunds singular or plural? How do you know?

OVERVIEW

Affirmative Gerunds	
GERUND	
Exercising	is important.
Budgeting carefully	is difficult.
Budgeting your money	

Negative Gerunds	
NOT + GERUND	
Not exercising	is bad for you.
Not budgeting carefully	is a mistake.
Not budgeting your money	

GERUNDS AS SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS

Gerunds as Subjects		
GERUND (SUBJECT)	THIRD-PERSON SINGULAR VERB	
Learning math	is	difficult.
Exercising	isn't	fun.

Gerunds as Objects		
SUBJECT	VERB	GERUND (OBJECT)
I	enjoy	shopping.
We	discussed	moving to Ohio.

Overview

- A gerund is the base form of a verb + *-ing*. It can be one word (*exercising*), or it can be part of a longer phrase with an adverb (*budgeting carefully*), a noun (*budgeting your money*), or a prepositional phrase (*moving to Ohio*).
- A gerund functions as a singular noun.
- All verbs except modal auxiliaries have gerund forms.
- See Appendix 3 for the spelling of verbs ending in *-ing*.

Gerunds as Subjects

- A gerund can function as the subject of a sentence. A subject gerund takes a third-person singular verb.

Listening is an important skill.

Learning math takes time.

Gerunds as Objects

- A gerund can be the object of certain verbs. These verbs include:

avoid	discuss	finish	like	prefer
begin	dislike	go	love	quit
continue	enjoy	hate	miss	start

- See Appendix 13 for a list of verbs that can be followed by gerunds.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each statement. Listen carefully for the *-ing* form in the chart. Do you hear a gerund or the present continuous? Check (✓) the correct column.

		GERUND	PRESENT CONTINUOUS
1.	shopping	✓	
2.	saving		
3.	working		
4.	eating		
5.	buying		
6.	taking		
7.	having		
8.	spending		

B2 Working on Gerunds as Subjects

Complete these sentences with gerunds. Use the words in parentheses.

1. Finding a job (find/a job) isn't easy.
2. _____ (take/classes) can help improve job skills.
3. _____ (not/have/money) isn't much fun.
4. _____ (stay/within a budget) can be difficult.
5. _____ (not/carry/credit cards) is a way to spend less.
6. _____ (shop/on the Internet) saves time and money.
7. _____ (travel) costs less with student discounts.
8. _____ (save/a lot of money) takes time.

B3 Working on Gerunds as Objects

Complete each conversation with a verb + gerund. Use the words in parentheses.

1. A: You lost a lot of weight. How did you do it?

B: It was easy. I quit eating (quit/eat) sweets.

2. A: I thought you and Jim were moving to California.

B: We often _____ (discuss/move), but I don't think we'll ever leave Philadelphia.

3. A: That dinner was expensive. What happened to our new budget?

B: It's OK. We can _____ (start/budget) tomorrow.

4. A: We don't have much money in the bank right now.

B: Maybe we should _____ (consider/not/go) on vacation.

5. A: Do you like college?

B: I'm not sure yet. I _____ (miss/be) with my family.

6. A: I couldn't get tickets for the basketball game.

B: That's OK. It will be on TV. I _____ (like/watch) basketball on TV.

C

Gerunds After Prepositions

Examining Form

Look at the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- He won a prize for swimming the fastest.
- She wasn't accustomed to getting bad grades.
- I don't approve of lying.
- Do you worry about making enough money?

Underline the gerund in each sentence. Circle the word that comes directly before each gerund. What kind of word is it?

Preposition + Gerund		
	PREPOSITION	GERUND
I'll call	before	leaving town.
We walked	instead of	driving.

Verb + Preposition + Gerund		
	VERB + PREPOSITION	GERUND
We	worried about	losing.
I	believe in	telling the truth.

Be + Adjective + Preposition + Gerund		
	BE + ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION	GERUND
We	were tired of	studying hard.
He	was afraid of	losing his job.

Preposition + Gerund

- Gerunds can follow prepositions such as *about*, *for*, *in*, *instead of*, *of*, and *to*.

Verb + Preposition + Gerund

- Many verb + preposition combinations can be followed by gerunds. These include *approve of*, *believe in*, *disapprove of*, *plan on*, *think about*, and *worry about*.
- See Appendix 13 for a list of verb + preposition combinations that can be followed by gerunds.

(Continued on page 388)

Be + Adjective + Preposition + Gerund

- Many *be* + adjective + preposition combinations can be followed by a gerund. These include *be accustomed to/be used to*, *be afraid of*, *be fond of*, *be good at*, *be interested in*, *be surprised at*, and *be tired of*. See Appendix 13 for a list of more *be* + adjective + preposition phrases that are followed by gerunds.

C1 Listening for Form



Listen and complete these sentences with the words you hear.

1. Are you interested in going to a movie tonight?
2. You should drink tea _____ coffee.
3. John is talking _____ his job.
4. I'm looking _____ Mr. Johnson's class.
5. I'm _____ TV.

C2 Working on Gerunds After Verb + Preposition

Match each sentence beginning on the left to its correct sentence ending on the right.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <u>d</u> 1. Jorge is talking | a. of being in school. |
| _____ 2. I believe | b. at explaining things. |
| _____ 3. We're looking forward | c. in treating people fairly. |
| _____ 4. We're planning | d. about buying an apartment. |
| _____ 5. He's tired | e. on leaving early today. |
| _____ 6. She's good | f. to traveling to Europe next summer. |

C3 Working on Gerunds After Adjective + Preposition

Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering these questions. Answer with adjective + preposition combinations and gerunds.

1. What are you afraid of doing?
A: *What are you afraid of doing?*
B: *I'm afraid of flying.*
2. What are you good at doing?
3. What are you interested in doing?
4. What are you tired of doing?
5. What are you fond of doing?

D

Gerunds

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. I don't like playing tennis, but I love watching it.
 - b. Would you mind opening the door, please? My hands are full.
 - c. You can stop the elevator by pressing this button.
1. In which sentence is the speaker expressing a like or dislike?
 2. In which sentence is the speaker making a polite request?
 3. In which sentence is the speaker explaining how to do something?

Meaning and Use Notes

Referring to Activities and States

- 1A** Use a gerund to refer to an activity or state.

Activity

Learning a foreign language is hard work.

State

I don't like **being hungry**.

- 1B** Use *go* + gerund to refer to common activities. *Go* can be used in any tense.

I went **sightseeing** when I was in Paris.

When you visit a national park, you can go **hiking, camping, and fishing**.

- 1C** Use verbs such as *like*, *dislike*, *hate*, and *enjoy* + gerund to talk about liking or disliking activities and states.

I hate **eating alone**.

In his spare time, John enjoys **fixing old cars**.

(Continued on page 390)

Do You Mind . . .?, I Don't Mind . . . , and Would You Mind . . . ?

- 2A** The verb *mind* means “dislike, feel bothered.” *Mind* + gerund is usually used in questions and negative statements to express likes and dislikes.

Expressing Likes and Dislikes

A: **Do you mind getting up early for work?** (= Does getting up early bother you?)

B: **No, I don't mind.** I'm used to it. (= No, it doesn't bother me.)

I don't mind driving at night. (= Driving at night doesn't bother me.)

- 2B** Use the phrase *would you mind* + gerund to make polite requests. An answer of *no* means that the listener agrees to the request.

Making Polite Requests

A: **Sorry to bother you, but would you mind closing that window?**

B: **No, not at all.** (= OK. I'll close it.)

Other Common Uses

- 3A** Use *by* + gerund to explain how to do something.

Explaining How to Do Something

You can make better cookies **by adding extra butter.**

- 3B** Gerunds are often used in signs that permit or forbid an activity.

Signs

Taking photos is not allowed. **Smoking** is strictly forbidden.

D1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1A, 1C, 2A, 2B, 3A

 Listen to each sentence. Is the speaker expressing a like or dislike, making a polite request, or explaining how to do something? Check (✓) the correct column.

	LIKE OR DISLIKE	POLITE REQUEST	HOW TO DO SOMETHING
1.	✓		
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			

D2 Making Polite Requests

► Note 2B

Look at the pictures. Take turns making and responding to a polite request for each situation. Use *would you mind* and a gerund in your requests.



A: *Would you mind passing the salt?*

B: *No, not at all.*



D3 Talking About How to Do Things

► Note 3A

Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering these questions. Use *by* + gerund. Compare answers with two other students.

1. How do you find a job?
By going to an employment service.
2. How do you keep your money safe?
3. How do you lose weight?
4. How do you get a raise?
5. How do you find out the meaning of unknown words?
6. How do you choose a roommate?

D4 Making Lists of Activities

► Notes 1A, 1B

Complete these lists with gerunds.

Relaxing Activities

1. Reading a novel
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Stressful Activities

1. Taking an exam
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Healthy Activities

1. Swimming
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Not Allowed in Class

1. Cheating on tests
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A: Would you mind opening the window?
B: _____
a. No, not at all.
b. Sure, go ahead and open it. | 4. A: What do you like doing at night?
B: _____
a. Watching television.
b. By watching television. |
| 2. A: What kind of housework do you dislike the most?
B: _____
a. Doing the laundry.
b. Do the laundry. | 5. A: These days I have to get up early for work.
B: _____
a. Do you mind getting up early?
b. Would you mind getting up early? |
| 3. A: Instead of serving steak, why don't we serve pizza?
B: _____
a. I hate steak.
b. That's a good idea. | 6. A: I need to save money, but keeping to a budget won't be easy.
B: _____
a. Yes, they will. Don't worry.
b. Yes, it will. Don't worry. |

E2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

- We avoid ~~to drive~~^{driving} at night.
- Save money can be difficult.
- Walking are good exercise.
- He got sick by stand out in the rain.
- Shopping and eating are my two favorite activities.
- No buying everything you want is a good way to save money.



Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in English-language magazines or on the Internet for examples of gerunds (including subject and object gerunds) in advice columns, instructions, and signs. Bring at least five examples to class. What verbs do your object gerunds follow? Do any of the gerunds follow prepositions? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Writing

Follow the steps below to write a paragraph about your plans for the near future.

1. Think about the topic, and make notes about what you want to say. Use these questions to help you.
 - What are you looking forward to doing?
 - What do you plan on doing?
 - What are you worried about doing?
2. Write a first draft. Use gerunds with verbs and gerunds with verb + preposition combinations.
3. Read your work carefully and circle grammar, spelling, and punctuation errors. Work with a partner to decide how to fix your errors and improve the content.
4. Rewrite your draft.

I'm planning on getting my own apartment next year. Living with my parents is fine, but I'm looking forward to living on my own. I'm worried about having enough money for the rent. Maybe I can manage better by getting a roommate. . . .



Infinitives

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: The <i>Twenty-One</i> Quiz Show Scandal	396
B. FORM: Infinitives	398
He agreed to speak slowly .	
He taught me to cook .	
(In order) to win , he cheated.	
It took two years to learn the truth .	
C. MEANING AND USE 1: Infinitives	402
Referring to Activities and States	
Giving Reasons with <i>In Order</i> + Infinitive	
Sentences with <i>It</i> Subject . . . + Infinitive	
D. MEANING AND USE 2: Contrasting Gerunds and Infinitives	405
Verbs Taking Only Gerunds	
Verbs Taking Only Infinitives	
Verbs Taking Gerunds or Infinitives with No Difference in Meaning	
Verbs Taking Gerunds or Infinitives with a Difference in Meaning	
E. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	409

A

The *Twenty-One* Quiz Show Scandal

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

What are television quiz shows? Do you ever watch them? Do you enjoy them? Why or why not?

A2 Read

Read this magazine article to find out about a famous scandal involving a quiz show.

The *Twenty-One* Quiz Show Scandal

In the 1950s, television quiz shows were very popular. Each week families turned on their TVs to watch their favorite quiz shows. If a show was very popular, up to one-third
5 of all Americans watched it. One of the most popular shows was *Twenty-One*. *Twenty-One* worked like this: two contestants tried to answer questions for points. In order to win, a contestant needed to get 21 points. The
10 winning contestant got money and could choose to play again the next week.

In the beginning *Twenty-One* was not very popular. Dan Enright, the producer, was in trouble because the show's
15 commercial sponsor expected a hit. Enright had an idea: if a contestant kept winning, TV viewers might become interested in that contestant and would keep watching in order to see him. He found a student
20 named Herb Stempel who wanted to appear on the show. Enright thought Stempel was perfect because he was a very ordinary



Charles Van Doren (right) on *Twenty-One*

person. Viewers often want an ordinary person to win. Before each show Enright
25 gave Stempel the questions. Stempel was on *Twenty-One* for eight weeks. He pretended not to know the questions, and the viewers believed this. Stempel won more than \$69,000 and became famous. *Twenty-One*
30 became a hit.

Soon, however, people started to get tired of Stempel. Enright decided not to keep Stempel on the show anymore. This time he looked for someone who was not ordinary.

35 He found Charles Van Doren—a handsome English professor from a famous family. Enright convinced Van Doren to cheat. He then told Stempel to give the wrong answer on the next show. Stempel was unhappy, but
40 he agreed to lose by not answering correctly.

Van Doren became the new champion of *Twenty-One*. He stayed on the show for 15 weeks and won almost \$130,000. Each week millions of people watched Van Doren win
45 more money.

The show's ratings were high, and everyone was happy—except Herb Stempel. He told newspaper reporters his story, but no

one believed him. Finally, the government
50 began to investigate. It took two years to learn the whole story. In the end, Charles Van Doren admitted cheating and apologized.

The TV station canceled *Twenty-One*. Enright lost his job and left the United States.
55 Van Doren lost his job, too, and he refused to say anything more about the show. The TV viewers were surprised and angry. The show seemed so real. Van Doren seemed so wonderful. It was hard to accept the truth.

60 For many years Stempel and Enright were forgotten. Then, in 1994 the famous actor Robert Redford turned this strange story into a movie titled *Quiz Show*. To find out more about the scandal, as well as
65 Stempel and Enright, watch Redford's award-winning movie.

contestant: a person who participates in a quiz show

hit: a very popular TV show

ratings: a measure of how popular a TV show is

scandal: a situation that shocks people

sponsor: a company that pays for a TV show in return for being able to advertise on the show

A3 After You Read

Write *T* for true or *F* for false for each statement.

- F 1. In the 1950s few Americans watched game shows on TV.
- 2. *Twenty-One* was not popular before Herb Stempel appeared on it.
- 3. Herb Stempel was happy when Charles Van Doren won on the show.
- 4. When Herb Stempel told everyone how he won on *Twenty-One*, they immediately believed him.
- 5. Charles Van Doren was sorry that he cheated.
- 6. *Twenty-One* was canceled.

B

Infinitives

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

- 1a. They speak to the producer before the show. 2a. He wanted to be on the show.
 1b. The producer told them to speak clearly. 2b. The producer wanted him to cheat.
- Look at the underlined forms in 1a and 1b. Which is in the simple present? Which is an infinitive?
 - Look at 2a and 2b. In which does the infinitive directly follow the verb? In which does the infinitive follow the object of the verb? Look back at lines 31–40 of the article on page 397. Find a verb + infinitive and a verb + object + infinitive.

OVERVIEW

Affirmative Infinitives		
SUBJECT	VERB	INFINITIVE
He	agreed	to leave. to speak slowly. to help me.

Negative Infinitives		
SUBJECT	VERB	NOT + INFINITIVE
He	agreed	not to leave. not to speak quickly. not to bother me.

INFINITIVES

Infinitives After Verbs			
SUBJECT	VERB	INFINITIVE	
I	learned	to cook.	

SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT	INFINITIVE
He	taught	me	to cook.

SUBJECT	VERB	(OBJECT)	INFINITIVE
I	wanted		to cook.
		him	

(In Order +) Infinitive		
SUBJECT	VERB	(IN ORDER +) INFINITIVE
He	cheated	(in order) to win.

It Subject . . . + Infinitive			
SUBJECT	VERB	ADJECTIVE	INFINITIVE
It	was	difficult	to lie.

(IN ORDER +) INFINITIVE	SUBJECT	VERB
(In order) to win,	he	cheated.

SUBJECT	VERB	NOUN	INFINITIVE
It	took	two years	to learn the truth.

Overview

- An infinitive is *to* + the base form of the verb. It can be two words (*to leave*), or it can be part of a longer phrase with an adverb (*to speak slowly*) or an object (*to help me*).
- All verbs except modal auxiliaries have infinitive forms.

Infinitives After Verbs

- Infinitives follow verbs in three main patterns:

VERB + INFINITIVE

agree continue hate learn wait
begin decide hope plan

VERB + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

advise cause order teach
allow invite remind tell

VERB + (OBJECT) + INFINITIVE

ask expect need promise prefer
choose help pay want

- See Appendix 14 for a list of verbs that can be followed by infinitives.

In Order + Infinitive

- Infinitives can follow the expression *in order*.
- With affirmative infinitives, we often leave out *in order* and use the infinitive alone.

It Subject . . . + Infinitive

- An infinitive can function as the subject of a sentence: *To lie is wrong*. However, this form is not common. It is more usual to start the sentence with *It* and use the infinitive at the end of the sentence. *It* refers to the infinitive.

It is wrong to lie. (*It* = to lie)

- *It* is followed by a limited group of verbs, including *be*, *cost*, *seem*, and *take*.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to each sentence. Does it have an infinitive? Check (✓) the correct column.

	INFINITIVE	NO INFINITIVE
1.	✓	
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

B2 Working on Infinitives

Complete these sentences by choosing the correct answers. In some of the sentences, both answers are correct.

- I agreed _____.
a. not to tell
b. him not to tell
- I asked _____.
a. to leave
b. him to leave
- I allowed _____.
a. to go
b. him to go
- They decided _____.
a. to study
b. him to study
- We want _____.
a. to look at it
b. him to look at it
- We told _____.
a. not to ask
b. him not to ask
- I expect _____.
a. to finish soon
b. him to finish soon
- We plan _____.
a. to help
b. him to help
- They invited _____.
a. to come
b. him to come
- I need _____.
a. to stay
b. him to stay

B3 Working on *In Order + Infinitive*

In your notebook, write each sentence in two different ways.

1. I need to sit in front of the class in order to see. .

In order to see, I need to sit in front of the class. I need to sit in front of the class to see.

2. In order to get good seats, we left early.

3. I drink coffee to stay awake.

4. To get a scholarship, you need to do well in school.

5. In order to get a better job, she's going to study English.

6. I didn't tell her about losing the money in order to avoid an argument.

B4 Working on *It Subject . . . + Infinitive*

Use these words to write sentences with *It* subject . . . + infinitive.

1. be/useful/know/foreign languages

It is useful to know foreign languages.

2. take/time/learn/a language well

3. be/expensive/eat/in restaurants

4. cost/a lot/fly/first class

5. be/important/not/tell/lies

6. seem/better/talk/about your problems

7. be/dangerous/drive/on icy roads

8. be/wise/not/smoke

C

Infinitives

Examining Meaning and Use

Look at the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. I left the house early in order to arrive on time.
 - b. She hated to eat alone.
 - c. It isn't easy to leave your family.
1. Underline the infinitive in each sentence.
 2. Which sentences express a feeling about an activity? In which sentence does the infinitive express a reason for doing something?

Meaning and Use Notes

Referring to Activities and States

- 1** An infinitive usually follows a verb and refers to an activity or state. Use verbs such as *like*, *love*, *hate*, *prefer*, and *want* + infinitive to express likes, dislikes, and other feelings toward these activities and states.

I hate **to go to parties alone**.

He wants **to own his own home**.

Giving Reasons with *In Order* + Infinitive

- 2A** Use *in order* + infinitive to express a reason for doing something. This is called the purpose infinitive. It can answer the question *Why?*

A: Why did you go to your son's school?

B: I went **in order to meet his teacher**.

In order to finish my Christmas shopping early, I started in November.

- 2B** *In order* is often left out, especially in conversations or in instructions.

A: Why did you leave work early?

B: **To go to the doctor**. I had a 3:00 appointment.

Call the number below **to get more information**.

Sentences with *It* Subject . . . + Infinitive

3A In sentences with *It* subject . . . + infinitive, *it* refers to the infinitive at the end of the sentence.

It takes a long time to learn another language. (*It* = to learn another language)

It wasn't easy to find an apartment. (*It* = to find an apartment)

It is better not to say anything. (*It* = not to say anything)

3B *It* subject . . . + infinitive sentences can have the same meaning as sentences with subject gerunds.

It was difficult to lie. = Lying was difficult.

It took two years to learn the truth. = Learning the truth took two years.

C1 Listening for Meaning and Use

► Notes 1, 2A, 2B



Listen to each sentence. How is the infinitive used? Check (✓) the correct column.

	TO EXPRESS A LIKE, DISLIKE, OR WANT	TO GIVE A REASON FOR DOING SOMETHING
1.	✓	
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

C2 Expressing Likes and Dislikes

► Note 1

Complete these sentences with infinitives. Share your answers with another student. Do you agree with each other?

1. Most children hate to go to bed on time.
2. Teenagers often prefer _____
3. Some adults don't like _____
4. Many Americans like _____
5. Most of my friends like _____
6. Few people hate _____

C3 Giving Reasons

► Notes 2A, 2B

Answer these questions with at least one reason. Use (*in order +*) infinitive.

1. Why do stores raise their prices?
In order to make more money. OR
To pay for their expenses.
2. Why do people climb mountains?
3. Why do people take vacations?
4. Why are you taking this class?
5. Why do people go to libraries?
6. Why do people work?

C4 Rephrasing Gerunds and Infinitives

► Notes 3A, 3B

A. Rewrite these sentences. Change sentences with *It* subject . . . + infinitive to sentences beginning with gerunds. Change sentences beginning with gerunds to sentences with *It* subject . . . + infinitive.

1. It's fun to learn a language.
Learning a language is fun.
 2. Learning to type is not easy.
 3. It will take several days to drive across the country.
 4. Going camping will be fun.
 5. Ignoring people isn't nice.
 6. It doesn't have to cost a lot to take a vacation.
- B. Work with a partner. Write two more sentences beginning with a gerund or *It* subject . . . + infinitive. Ask your partner to rephrase them as in part A.

D

Contrasting Gerunds and Infinitives

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and answer the questions below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- 1a. When I stopped eating ice cream every day, I lost five pounds.
- 1b. When I stopped to eat ice cream every day, I gained five pounds.
- 2a. It started raining a few minutes ago. Take an umbrella.
- 2b. It started to rain a few minutes ago. Take an umbrella.

Compare the underlined phrases in each pair of sentences. Which pair has the same meaning? Which pair has different meanings?

Meaning and Use Notes

Verbs Taking Only Gerunds

- 1 Some verbs take only gerunds. These verbs include *avoid, dislike, enjoy, finish, miss, prohibit, and resist*. See Appendix 13 for a list of more verbs.

Paul enjoys swimming. I finished reading the book.

Verbs Taking Only Infinitives

- 2 Some verbs take only infinitives. These verbs include *agree, expect, need, offer, plan, promise and want*. See Appendix 14 for a list of more verbs.

Joe wants to leave. I expect to receive her letter today.

Verbs Taking Gerunds or Infinitives with No Difference in Meaning

- 3 Some verbs can take either gerunds or infinitives with no difference in meaning. These verbs include *begin, continue, hate, like, love, prefer, and start*. See Appendix 15 for a list of more verbs.

<i>Gerund</i>	=	<i>Infinitive</i>
I <u>began feeling sick</u> after dinner.	=	I <u>began to feel sick</u> after dinner.
It <u>starts snowing</u> in December.	=	It <u>starts to snow</u> in December.

(Continued on page 406)

! After continuous forms of *begin* or *start*, use an infinitive, not a gerund.

Infinitive

I was **beginning to feel** sick.
He **was starting to get** better.

Gerund

*I was **beginning feeling** sick. (INCORRECT)
*He was **starting feeling** better.

Verbs Taking Gerunds or Infinitives with a Difference in Meaning

4A Some verbs can take either gerunds or infinitives, but with a difference in meaning. After *stop*, *forget*, and *remember*, the gerund refers to something that happened before the action of the main verb. The infinitive refers to something that happened after the action of the main verb.

Gerund

I **stopped smoking**.
(I was a smoker. Then I stopped.)
He **remembered mailing the letter**.
(He mailed the letter. Then he remembered doing it.)

Infinitive

I **stopped to smoke**.
(I stopped what I was doing. Then I smoked.)
He **remembered to mail the letter**.
(He remembered the letter. Then he mailed it.)

4B The verb *forget* is usually used with an infinitive. With a gerund, *forget* is most common in sentences with *will never*.

Infinitive

I **forgot to go to her party**.
She was mad at me.
(First = I forgot.
Second = I didn't go.)

Gerund

I'll **never forget going to her party**.
It was so much fun!
(First = I went to the party.
Second = I won't forget it.)

D1 **Listening for Meaning and Use**

► Notes 3, 4A, 4B

 Listen to these pairs of sentences. Do they have the same meaning or different meanings? Choose the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|---------|--|---------|---------------------------------|
| 1. same | <input checked="" type="radio"/> different | 4. same | <input type="radio"/> different |
| 2. same | <input type="radio"/> different | 5. same | <input type="radio"/> different |
| 3. same | <input type="radio"/> different | 6. same | <input type="radio"/> different |

D2 Contrasting Gerunds and Infinitives

► Notes 1, 2

Complete each sentence with a gerund or infinitive.

1. I finished reading (read) the book you lent me. It was really good.
2. She expects us _____ (finish) our essays by Friday.
3. Do you miss _____ (see) your family and friends?
4. They dislike _____ (get) phone calls late at night.
5. He promised _____ (make) less noise after I complained.
6. Jim says he wants _____ (quit) his job.

D3 Rephrasing Gerunds and Infinitives

► Notes 1-4

- A. Replace the underlined words with a verb + gerund without changing the meaning of the sentence. If this is not possible, write *no change possible*.

Conversation 1

A: I'll start to load the car. start loading

Did you remember to turn off the light? no change possible

B: Yes, but I forgot to lock the front door. _____

Conversation 2

A: Do you like to cook? _____

B: Yes, but I prefer to eat out. _____

- B. Replace the underlined words with an infinitive without changing the meaning of the sentence. If this is not possible, write *no change possible*.

Conversation 1

A: Do you like working at home? _____

B: Yes. I've been much happier since I stopped working in an office. _____

Conversation 2

A: I finished writing my paper this morning. _____

B: That's great! I just began writing mine. _____

A. Work in small groups. Choose one of the topics below. Make suggestions by completing each sentence with either a gerund or an infinitive.

Starting an Exercise Program

Organizing Your Time

Choosing a Marriage Partner

Learning a Language

Studying for Final Exams

Choosing a University

Suggestions for Starting an Exercise Program _____

1. Start thinking about different exercises. _____

2. Plan to join a gym. _____

3. Remember _____

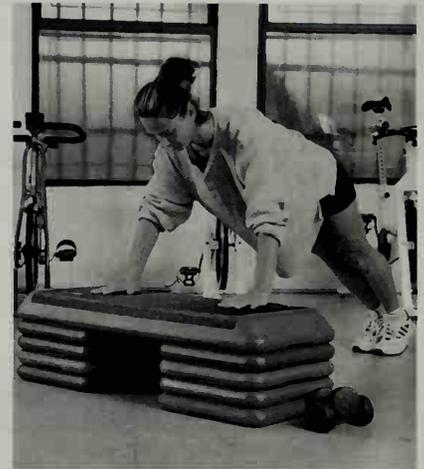
4. Avoid _____

5. Try _____

6. Consider _____

7. Don't stop _____

8. Finally, don't forget _____



B. Work with a partner from a different group. Share your suggestions. Can you add any ideas to your partner's list?

E

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

E1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: She stopped _____ when she saw the accident.

B: How brave!

- a. to help
- b. helping

2. A: I went out to buy some paint.

B: _____

- a. Why did you go out?
- b. How much did you buy?

3. A: We stopped _____ you, but there was no answer.

B: I went out for a while.

- a. to call
- b. calling

4. A: I'll never forget _____ my baby daughter for the first time.

B: I feel the same way.

- a. to see
- b. seeing

5. A: _____ cheap tickets, come back an hour before the show.

B: Thanks for the advice!

- a. To get
- b. Getting

6. A: Do you remember _____ to me about your boss?

B: Yes, last week in the lunch room. Why?

- a. to talk
- b. talking

E2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. We avoid to ^{driving} drive at night.
2. It is useful have an extra key for your house.
3. I was starting saying something when he interrupted.
4. He continued to ask questions.
5. In order get your driver's license, you have to take a test.
6. She stopped to smoke a few years ago. She feels much better now.
7. I'm looking forward to finish this report.
8. She needs to pass this course for to graduate.

▶ Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Find examples of English grammar in everyday life. Look in English-language newspaper articles, advice columns, instructions, or on the Internet. Find five examples of infinitives and bring them to class. Do any of your examples contain *in order to*? Are any of them sentences with *It* subject . . . + infinitive? Discuss your findings with your classmates.

Speaking

Work with a partner. Write a six-question survey about likes and dislikes. Use some of the verbs below with gerunds or infinitives. (You can use the verbs more than once.) Your survey can be on one topic (for example, TV or food) or on various topics. Ask at least ten people to respond to your survey. Report your results to the class.

dislike enjoy hate like prefer want

What TV programs do you enjoy watching?

Do you prefer to play sports or to watch sports?

Phrasal Verbs

A. GRAMMAR IN DISCOURSE: “Eggstraordinary” Breakfasts Are Easy	412
B. FORM: Phrasal Verbs	414
TRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS	
I left out the sugar.	
I left the sugar out .	
I left it out .	
She looked after the children.	
INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS	
We grew up overseas.	
C. MEANING AND USE: Phrasal Verbs	418
Idiomatic Meanings	
Predictable Meanings	
D. REVIEW: Combining Form, Meaning, and Use	421

A

“Eggstraordinary” Breakfasts Are Easy!

A1 Before You Read

Discuss these questions.

What’s your favorite breakfast? Do you like to eat eggs? If you do, how do you cook them?

A2 Read

Read the website article on the following page to find out the best way to fry an egg.

A3 After You Read

Look at the information again and number these steps for cooking a fried egg.

- ___ Take the egg out of the pan.
- ___ Turn the heat down to low.
- ___ Wait until the white is slightly hard.
- ___ Wait about 15 seconds.
- ___ Put oil or butter in the pan.
- 1 Turn on the stove to medium heat.
- ___ Turn the egg over.
- ___ Break the egg into the pan.

"Eggstraordinary" Breakfasts Are Easy!

Do you start each day with a boring bowl of cereal? Do you try to get by without breakfast? Why put up with an ordinary breakfast—or no breakfast at all—when you can eat eggs? Eggs are one of the most popular breakfast foods in the United States. There are many different ways to prepare them. Most of these ways are easy. Consider, for example, fried (over easy) eggs. Follow these simple steps 5 (remember to start out with fresh eggs) and you can count on delicious fried eggs every time.

Heat up the pan

Put a frying pan on the stove, and turn the stove on to medium. Figure out the amount of butter or oil you will need. (Use about two teaspoons of butter or one teaspoon of oil per egg.

10 To cut down on fat, use less butter or oil and a nonstick pan.)

Put the butter or oil in the pan, and heat up the pan for a couple of minutes.



Cook the eggs

To crack an egg, gently hit it against the side of the pan. Then break 15 it open and let the white and yolk fall out. Turn the heat down to low, so the eggs will cook slowly. This is very important. If the heat is too high, your eggs won't turn out well. When the whites are slightly hard, use a spatula to turn the eggs over. Wait about 15 seconds and your eggs will be ready. If you prefer a harder yolk, wait up to one minute.



20 Take the eggs out and season them

Once the eggs are ready, take them out with a spatula and put them on a warm plate. Season them with salt and pepper. Now sit down, pick up a fork, and enjoy your "eggstraordinary" breakfast!



Adapted from Learn2.com

"eggstraordinary": a made-up word that sounds like *extraordinary* (special, not ordinary)

nonstick pan: a pan with a special surface that food does not stick to

season: to add flavor to something

spatula: a cooking tool for lifting and turning food

yolk: the yellow part of the egg

B

Phrasal Verbs

Examining Form

Read the sentences and complete the tasks below. Then discuss your answers and read the Form charts to check them.

1a. He turned off the stove.

2a. Turn on the stove.

1b. The eggs turned out well.

2b. Turn the stove on.

- Look at the underlined phrasal verbs in 1a and 1b. In which sentence does the phrasal verb have an object? Circle it. In which sentence does the phrasal verb not have an object?
- Look at 2a and 2b. Circle the objects in these sentences. In which sentence does the object come after the phrasal verb? In which sentence does the object separate the phrasal verb?

TRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS

Separable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

SUBJECT	VERB + PARTICLE	OBJECT NOUN
I	left out	the sugar.

SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT NOUN	PARTICLE
I	left	the sugar	out.

SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT PRONOUN	PARTICLE
I	left	it	out.

Inseparable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

SUBJECT	VERB + PARTICLE	OBJECT NOUN or PRONOUN
She	looked after	the children.
He	counts on	you.
We	cut down on	fat.
They	dropped out of	school.

INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS

SUBJECT	VERB + PARTICLE	
We	grew up	overseas.
He	dropped by	yesterday.

Overview

- A phrasal verb consists of a verb and a particle. *Up, down, on, off, after, by, in, and out* are examples of particles.
- Particles look like prepositions, but they often have different meanings. Unlike prepositions, particles often change the meaning of the verb they combine with.

VERB + PREPOSITION

I ran out the door.
(I left quickly.)

PHRASAL VERB

Can I borrow some paper? I ran out.
(I used all of my paper. I have no more.)

- See Appendix 17 for a list of phrasal verbs and their meanings.

Transitive Phrasal Verbs

- Transitive phrasal verbs take objects.
- Most transitive phrasal verbs are separable; that is, we can put an object noun after the phrasal verb or between the verb and the particle.

VERB + PARTICLE + NOUN

She **turned on** the stove.

VERB + NOUN + PARTICLE

She **turned** the stove **on**.

- If the object of a separable transitive phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must separate the verb and the particle. It cannot follow the phrasal verb.

She **turned it on**.

*She **turned on it**. (INCORRECT)

- Separable transitive phrasal verbs include *call up, figure out, fill out, leave out, pick up, put down, try on, and turn down*.
- Some transitive phrasal verbs are inseparable; that is, you cannot place the object between the verb and the particle. Inseparable phrasal verbs include *call for, come across, count on, go over, and look after*.

She **looked after** the children.

*She **looked the children after**. (INCORRECT)

She **looked after** them.

*She **looked them after**. (INCORRECT)

- Some inseparable transitive phrasal verbs consist of three words. The verb + particle is followed by a preposition. The object always follows the preposition. These verbs include *cut down on, drop out of, go along with, look up to, put up with, run out of, and stick up for*.

We **cut down on** fat.

They **dropped out of** school.

Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

- Phrasal verbs that do not take objects are called intransitive phrasal verbs. These verbs include *break down, come out, drop by, grow up, run out, show up, and watch out*.

We **grew up** overseas.

He **dropped by** yesterday.

B1 Listening for Form



Listen to these sentences with phrasal verbs. Write the particle you hear.

1. take _____ *out* _____
2. grows _____
3. ran _____ of _____
4. look _____
5. give _____
6. made _____
7. turn _____
8. get _____ with _____

B2 Working on Separable Phrasal Verbs

In your notebook, rewrite these sentences in two different ways. First, place the object between the verb and the particle. Then, replace the object with a pronoun.

1. We picked up the children from school.
We picked the children up from school.
We picked them up from school.
2. Fill out the application.
3. He tried on his new suit.
4. You should call up Bill after lunch.
5. She dropped off her daughter.
6. I put on my warm coat.
7. Please take out the garbage.
8. I can't figure out this problem.

B3 Working on Inseparable Phrasal Verbs

Complete each conversation with the correct form of the phrasal verb in parentheses and an appropriate object pronoun.

1. A: Did I leave my gloves here?
B: Yes. I came across them (come across) when I cleaned.
2. A: I'm going away for the weekend, and I can't take my dog.
B: Why don't you leave him with me? I _____ (look after).
3. A: How are you getting to the airport?
B: A car from my company _____ (come by for) in about an hour.

4. A: Your children seem to get along well.
 B: They do. Rachel is five years older than Alex, and he really _____ (look up to).
5. A: Did you finish your report?
 B: Yes, but I want _____ (go over) once more.
6. A: Do you drink coffee in the morning?
 B: Yes. I can't _____ (do without).
7. A: Do you have any of those new stamps?
 B: I'm sorry, but we _____ (run out of) earlier today.
8. A: The food here is terrible!
 B: I know! We shouldn't _____ (put up with)!

B4 Working on Transitive and Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

A. Underline the phrasal verb in each sentence and identify it as transitive or intransitive.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Look up</u> the number in the phone book. | _____ <i>transitive</i> _____ |
| 2. I came across your watch while I was cleaning. | _____ |
| 3. My friend Chris is going to drop by this afternoon. | _____ |
| 4. We have to be there at 11, so I'll pick up the boys at 10. | _____ |
| 5. The weather was terrible, so they called off the race. | _____ |
| 6. Next week we'll go over phrasal verbs again. | _____ |
| 7. You might have left out a word here. | _____ |
| 8. His plane took off on time. | _____ |

B. Look at the sentences with transitive phrasal verbs again. Where possible, change each sentence so that the object is between the verb and particle. Why is it not possible to change some of the sentences?

Look the number up in the phone book.

C

Phrasal Verbs

Examining Meaning and Use

Read the sentences and complete the task below. Then discuss your answers and read the Meaning and Use Notes to check them.

- a. Please pick up the chair and move it over there.
 - b. I pick up the children at 3:00 every day.
 - c. He'll pick up French easily because he's a good language learner.
1. The phrasal verb *pick up* has more than one meaning. In which sentence does it mean "learn"?
 2. In which sentence does it mean "lift"?
 3. In which sentence does it mean "go somewhere and get somebody"?

Meaning and Use Notes

Idiomatic Meanings

- 1A** Many phrasal verbs are like idiomatic expressions. Their meaning is different from the meaning of the individual words combined. See Appendix 17 for a list of phrasal verbs and their meanings.

Keep up the good work. (*keep up* = continue)

The plane **took off** late. (*took off* = left)

- 1B** Some phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Some meanings may be transitive, and others may be intransitive.

Transitive

It was warm, so I **took off** my coat.

(*took off* = removed)

He's not telling the truth. He **made up** that story.

(*made up* = created, invented)

Intransitive

The plane **took off** at 10:00.

(*took off* = left)

Last night they had a big fight.

This morning they **made up**.

(*made up* = became friends again)

- 1C** Many phrasal verbs have the same meaning as an equivalent one-word verb. Phrasal verbs are more common in conversation. Their one-word equivalents sometimes sound more formal.

Phrasal Verbs

One-Word Verbs

I **took off** my coat because I was hot. = I removed my coat because I was hot.
The dress didn't fit so she **took it back**. = The dress didn't fit so she returned it.

Predictable Meanings

- 2** With certain particles, you can use the meaning of the particle to guess the meaning of the phrasal verb. Some examples are *through* (from beginning to end), *over* (again), and *up/down* (completely). *Up* and *down* can also mean a change in amount (increase or decrease).

Don't make a quick decision. You need to **think** the problem **through** first.

My speech is finished, but I wish I could **do** it **over**. It was a disaster.

He **tore up** the letter. Then he threw all the little pieces in the garbage.

Their house **burned down**. They lost everything.

Turn down the music. It's too loud.

C1 **Listening for Meaning and Use**

► Notes 1A, 1B



Listen to each sentence. Choose the meaning of the phrasal verb you hear.

1. take off
a. leave
b. remove

5. turn down
a. refuse
b. make lower

9. make up
a. invent
b. end a fight

2. take off
a. leave
b. remove

6. turn down
a. refuse
b. make lower

10. make up
a. invent
b. end a fight

3. let out
a. finish
b. make bigger

7. work out
a. be OK
b. exercise

11. pick up
a. lift
b. learn

4. let out
a. finish
b. make bigger

8. work out
a. be OK
b. exercise

12. pick up
a. lift
b. learn

C2 Rephrasing Phrasal Verbs

► Note 1C

Replace the phrasal verb in each sentence with one of the verbs below.

choose delay postpone remove return review

1. If you need to go, I don't want to hold you up.

If you need to go, I don't want to delay you.

2. Before you give me your test, you should go over your work very carefully.

3. If you've finished your dinner, I'll take away your plates.

4. If some people can't come today, maybe we should put off the meeting.

5. I need the dictionary for a minute; I'll give it back to you right away.

6. Can you help me pick out a dress for tonight?

C3 Understanding Phrasal Verbs

► Notes 1A, 2

Complete this paragraph by choosing the correct phrasal verbs.

I (ran into₁ / ran over) an old friend by accident the other day. I was going to (pick up / pick out)₂ my son from school, when suddenly my car (broke up / broke down)₃. I (called up / called in)₄ my husband on my cell phone. While I was waiting for him to (turn down / turn up)₅, a truck crashed into my car. The driver (got into / got out)₆ of the truck to (check in / check out)₇ the damage. It was my friend Patrick. I hadn't seen him since college. Fortunately, nobody was hurt. It was nice to (catch up / catch on)₈ while we were waiting for my husband and the tow truck.



D

Combining Form, Meaning, and Use

D1 Thinking About Meaning and Use

Choose the best answer to complete each conversation. Then discuss your answers in small groups.

1. A: Did anyone else see that note?

B: No, I ____ after I read it.

a. tore it

b. tore it up

2. A: Hey, Bob! It's great to see you.

B: It's great to see you, too! Come on in! ____ your jacket.

a. Take off

b. Remove

3. A: What happened? Why were you so late?

B: Our flight didn't take ____ until 11:30.

a. up

b. off

4. A: What is the homework for tomorrow?

B: Read the story ____, but this time read only the important parts.

a. over

b. up

5. A: Do you want to go clothes shopping this week?

B: I'd rather wait until they mark ____ the prices.

a. down

b. up

6. A: Doctor, how is the patient progressing?

B: His condition remains serious. However, I plan to ____ again soon.

a. look him up

b. examine him

D2 Editing

Some of these sentences have errors. Find the errors and correct them.

1. I can look ^{after} your children ~~after~~ tomorrow if you want.
2. Tom is always on time; you can count out him.
3. I haven't seen your book, but I'll tell you if I come across.
4. The doctor told me to cut salt down on.
5. I'm not going to put up with that noise any longer.
6. It's not a very good paper; I might do over it.

Beyond the Classroom

Searching for Authentic Examples

Look up these phrasal verbs in an English-language dictionary. Write down two meanings for each, and indicate whether the meanings are transitive or intransitive. Then write a sentence for each meaning.

blow up call up check out get down turn out work out

Speaking

Follow these steps to prepare a demonstration of how to do something. You can use one of the ideas below or an idea of your own.

bathe a dog make a paper airplane polish shoes wrap a package

1. First make notes on cards for the different steps. You can use some of the phrasal verbs below or any other phrasal verbs. Try to use at least six phrasal verbs.

brush off	dry off	fold down	make up	sit down
check out	end up with	fold over	pick up	start out
clean up	figure out	hold down	put down	throw away
do over	fill up	look over	put together	tie up

2. Bring objects to class to demonstrate the activity as you are explaining it. If this is not possible, draw pictures or diagrams to illustrate the steps. Show a small group of your classmates how to do the task you have chosen.

I'm going to explain how to polish shoes. First, pick up one of the shoes. Then, take a stiff brush and brush off any dried mud or dirt. . . .

Appendices

1 Spelling of Verbs and Nouns Ending in <i>-s</i> and <i>-es</i>	A-2
2 Pronunciation of Verbs and Nouns Ending in <i>-s</i> and <i>-es</i>	A-3
3 Spelling of Verbs Ending in <i>-ing</i>	A-3
4 Spelling of Verbs Ending in <i>-ed</i>	A-4
5 Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in <i>-ed</i>	A-4
6 Irregular Verbs	A-5
7 Common Stative Verbs	A-6
8 Common Irregular Plural Nouns	A-7
9 Common Adjectives Ending in <i>-ed</i> and <i>-ing</i>	A-7
10 Spelling Rules for Adverbs Ending in <i>-ly</i>	A-7
11 Adjectives with Two Comparative and Superlative Forms	A-8
12 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms	A-8
13 Gerunds	A-9
14 Infinitives	A-10
15 Verb + Infinitive or Gerund	A-10
16 Contractions with Verb and Modal Forms	A-11
17 Phrasal Verbs	A-12
18 Phonetic Symbols	A-15

1 Spelling of Verbs and Nouns Ending in -s and -es

1. For most third-person singular verbs and plural nouns, add -s to the base form.

Verbs	Nouns
swim — swims	lake — lakes

2. If the base form ends with the letter *s*, *z*, *sh*, *ch*, or *x*, add -es.

Verbs	Nouns
miss — misses	box — boxes

3. If the base form ends with a consonant + *y*, change *y* to *i* and add -es.
(Compare vowel + *y*: obey — obeys; toy — toys.)

Verbs	Nouns
try — tries	baby — babies

4. If the base form ends with a consonant + *o*, add -s or -es. Some words take -s, some words take -es, some take both -s and -es. (Compare vowel + *o*: radio — radios; zoo — zoos.)

-s	Both -s and -es
auto — autos	tornado — tornados/tornadoes
photo — photos	volcano — volcanos/volcanoes
piano — pianos	zero — zeros/zeroes
solo — solos	

-es
do — does
echo — echoes
go — goes
hero — heroes
potato — potatoes
tomato — tomatoes

5. If the base form of certain nouns ends with a single *f* or *fe*, change the *f* or *fe* to *v* and add -es.

calf — calves
shelf — shelves
knife — knives

Exceptions

belief — beliefs
chief — chiefs
roof — roofs
scarf — scarfs/scarves

2 Pronunciation of Verbs and Nouns Ending in *-s* and *-es*

1. If the base form of the verb or noun ends with the sound /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, or /ks/, then pronounce *-es* as an extra syllable /ɪz/.

Verbs

slice — slices watch — watches
lose — loses judge — judges
wash — washes relax — relaxes

Nouns

price — prices inch — inches
size — sizes language — languages
dish — dishes tax — taxes
garage — garages

2. If the base form ends with the voiceless sound /p/, /t/, /k/, /f/, or /θ/, then pronounce *-s* and *-es* as /s/.

Verbs

sleep — sleeps work — works
hit — hits laugh — laughs

Nouns

grape — grapes cuff — cuffs
cat — cats fifth — fifths
book — books

3. If the base form ends with any other consonant or with a vowel sound, then pronounce *-s* and *-es* as /z/.

Verbs

learn — learns
go — goes

Nouns

name — names
boy — boys

3 Spelling of Verbs Ending in *-ing*

1. For most verbs, add *-ing* to the base form of the verb.

sleep — sleeping talk — talking

2. If the base form ends in a single *e*, drop the *e* and add *-ing* (exception: *be* — *being*).

live — living write — writing

3. If the base form ends in *ie*, change *ie* to *y* and add *-ing*.

die — dying lie — lying

4. If the base form of a one-syllable verb ends with a single vowel + consonant, double the final consonant and add *-ing*. (Compare two vowels + consonant: *eat* — *eating*.)

hit — hitting stop — stopping

5. If the base form of a verb with two or more syllables ends in a single vowel + consonant, double the final consonant only if the stress is on the final syllable. Do not double the final consonant if the stress is not on the final syllable.

admit — admitting begin — beginning develop — developing listen — listening

6. Do not double the final consonants *x*, *w*, and *y*.

fix — fixing plow — plowing obey — obeying

4 Spelling of Verbs Ending in *-ed*

1. To form the simple past and past participle of most regular verbs, add *-ed* to the base form.
brush — brushed play — played
2. If the base form ends with *e*, just add *-d*.
close — closed live — lived
3. If the base form ends with a consonant + *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *-ed*.
(Compare vowel + *y*: play — played; enjoy — enjoyed.)
study — studied dry — dried
4. If the base form of a one-syllable verb ends with a single vowel + consonant, double the final consonant and add *-ed*.
plan — planned shop — shopped
5. If the base form of a verb with two or more syllables ends with a single vowel + consonant, double the final consonant and add *-ed* only when the stress is on the final syllable. Do not double the final consonant if the stress is not on the final syllable.
prefer — preferred enter — entered
6. Do not double the final consonants *x*, *w*, and *y*.
coax — coaxed snow — snowed stay — stayed

5 Pronunciation of Verbs Ending in *-ed*

1. If the base form of the verb ends with the sounds /t/ or /d/, then pronounce *-ed* as an extra syllable /ɪd/.
/t/ /d/
start — started need — needed
wait — waited decide — decided
2. If the base form ends with the voiceless sounds /f/, /k/, /p/, /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, or /ks/, then pronounce *-ed* as /t/.
laugh — laughed jump — jumped wish — wished fax — faxed
look — looked slice — sliced watch — watched
3. If the base form ends with the voiced sounds /b/, /g/, /dʒ/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/, /r/, /ð/, /v/, /z/, or with a vowel, then pronounce *-ed* as /d/.
rob — robbed hum — hummed call — called wave — waved
brag — bragged rain — rained order — ordered close — closed
judge — judged bang — banged bathe — bathed play — played

6 Irregular Verbs

Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
arise	arose	arisen
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dove/dived	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fit	fit	fit
flee	fled	fled
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone

Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lay (= put)	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie (= recline)	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proven/proved
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung

Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
sink	sank	sunk	sweep	swept	swept
sit	sat	sat	swim	swam	swum
sleep	slept	slept	swing	swung	swung
slide	slid	slid	take	took	taken
speak	spoke	spoken	teach	taught	taught
speed	sped	sped	tear	tore	torn
spend	spent	spent	tell	told	told
spin	spun	spun	think	thought	thought
split	split	split	throw	threw	thrown
spread	spread	spread	understand	understood	understood
spring	sprang	sprung	undertake	undertook	undertaken
stand	stood	stood	upset	upset	upset
steal	stole	stolen	wake	woke	woken
stick	stuck	stuck	wear	wore	worn
stink	stank	stunk	weep	wept	wept
strike	struck	struck	wet	wet	wet
string	strung	strung	win	won	won
swear	swore	sworn	write	wrote	written

7 Common Stative Verbs

Emotions and Attitudes

admire
 appreciate
 care
 desire
 despise
 dislike
 doubt
 envy
 fear
 hate
 like
 love
 mind
 need
 prefer
 regret
 respect
 want

Senses and Sensations

ache
 burn
 feel
 hear
 hurt
 itch
 notice
 see
 smell
 sound
 sting
 taste

Knowledge and Beliefs

agree
 believe
 consider
 disagree
 expect
 feel (=think)
 find
 forget
 guess
 hope
 imagine
 know
 mean
 notice
 realize
 recognize
 remember
 suppose
 think
 understand

Descriptions and Measurements

appear
 be
 cost
 equal
 look (like)
 measure
 resemble
 seem
 sound (like)
 taste
 weigh

Possession and Relationships

belong
 consist of
 contain
 depend on
 have
 include
 own
 possess

8 Common Irregular Plural Nouns

Singular	Plural
child	children
fish	fish
foot	feet
man	men
mouse	mice
person	people
tooth	teeth
woman	women

9 Common Adjectives Ending in *-ed* and *-ing*

<i>-ed</i>	<i>-ing</i>	<i>-ed</i>	<i>-ing</i>
amazed	amazing	relaxed	relaxing
amused	amusing	satisfied	satisfying
annoyed	annoying	shocked	shocking
bored	boring	surprised	surprising
confused	confusing	terrified	terrifying
depressed	depressing	tired	tiring
disappointed	disappointing		
embarrassed	embarrassing		
excited	exciting		
fascinated	fascinating		
frightened	frightening		
interested	interesting		

10 Spelling Rules for Adverbs Ending in *-ly*

- Many adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-ly* to an adjective.
careful — carefully
quick — quickly
- If the adjective ends with a consonant + *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *-ly*.
easy — easily
happy — happily
- If the adjective ends in *le*, drop the *e* and add *-ly*.
gentle — gently
suitable — suitably
- If the adjective ends in *ic*, add *-ally*.
fantastic — fantastically
terrific — terrifically

11 Adjectives with Two Comparative and Superlative Forms

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
common	commoner more common	the commonest the most common
friendly	friendlier more friendly	the friendliest the most friendly
handsome	handsomer more handsome	the handsomest the most handsome
happy	happier more happy	the happiest the most happy
lively	livelier more lively	the liveliest the most lively
lovely	lovelier more lovely	the loveliest the most lovely
narrow	narrower more narrow	the narrowest the most narrow
polite	politer more polite	the politest the most polite
quiet	quieter more quiet	the quietest the most quiet

12 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
bad	badly	worse	the worst
far	far	farther/further	the farthest/furthest
good	well	better	the best
(a) little	(a) little	less	the least
much/many	much/many	more	the most

13 Gerunds

Verb + Gerund

These verbs may be followed by gerunds, but not by infinitives:

acknowledge	detest	keep (= continue)	recall
admit	discuss	loathe	recollect
anticipate	dislike	mean (= involve)	recommend
appreciate	endure	mention	regret
avoid	enjoy	mind (= object to)	report
can't help	escape	miss	resent
celebrate	excuse	omit	resist
consider	feel like	postpone	resume
defend	finish	practice	risk
defer	go	prevent	suggest
delay	imagine	prohibit	tolerate
deny	involve	quit	understand

Verb with Preposition + Gerund

These verbs or verb phrases with prepositions may be followed by gerunds, but not by infinitives:

adapt to	believe in	depend on
adjust to	blame for	disapprove of
agree (with someone) on	care about	discourage (someone) from
apologize (to someone) for	complain (to someone) about	engage in
approve of	concentrate on	forgive (someone) for
argue (with someone) about	consist of	help (someone) with
ask about	decide on	

Be + Adjective + Preposition + Gerund

Adjectives with prepositions typically occur in *be* + adjective phrases. These phrases may be followed by gerunds, but not by infinitives:

be accustomed to	be familiar with	be nervous about
be afraid of	be famous for	be perfect for
be angry (at someone) about	be fond of	be proud of
be ashamed of	be glad about	be responsible for
be capable of	be good at	be sad about
be certain of/about	be happy about	be successful in
be concerned with	be incapable of	be suitable for
be critical of	be interested in	be tired of
be discouraged from	be jealous of	be tolerant of
be enthusiastic about	be known for	be upset about

14 Infinitives

These verbs may be followed by infinitives, but not by gerunds:

Verb + Infinitive

agree	decide	offer	struggle
aim	decline	plan	swear
appear	demand	pledge	tend
arrange	fail	pretend	volunteer
care	hope	refuse	wait
claim	intend	resolve	
consent	manage	seem	

Verb + Object + Infinitive

advise	get	persuade	tell
command	hire	remind	trust
convince	invite	require	urge
force	order	teach	warn

Verb + (Object) + Infinitive

ask	desire	need	want
beg	expect	pay	wish
choose	help	prepare	would like
dare	know	promise	

15 Verb + Infinitive or Gerund

These verbs may be followed by infinitives or gerunds:

attempt	continue	neglect	start
begin	forget	prefer	stop
can't bear	hate	propose	try
can't stand	like	regret	
cease	love	remember	

16 Contractions with Verb and Modal Forms

Contractions with *Be*

I am = I'm
you are = you're
he is = he's
she is = she's
it is = it's
we are = we're
you are = you're
they are = they're

I am not = I'm not
you are not = you're not / you aren't
he is not = he's not / he isn't
she is not = she's not / she isn't
it is not = it's not / it isn't
we are not = we're not / we aren't
you are not = you're not / you aren't
they are not = they're not / they aren't

Contractions with *Be Going To*

I am going to = I'm going to
you are going to = you're going to
he is going to = he's going to
she is going to = she's going to
it is going to = it's going to
we are going to = we're going to
you are going to = you're going to
they are going to = they're going to
you are not going to = you're not going to /
you aren't going to

Contractions with *Will*

I will = I'll
you will = you'll
he will = he'll
she will = she'll
it will = it'll
we will = we'll
you will = you'll
they will = they'll
will not = won't

Contractions with *Would*

I would = I'd
you would = you'd
he would = he'd
she would = she'd
we would = we'd
you would = you'd
they would = they'd
would not = wouldn't

Contractions with *Was and Were*

was not = wasn't
were not = weren't

Contractions with *Have*

I have = I've
you have = you've
he has = he's
she has = she's
it has = it's
we have = we've
you have = you've
they have = they've
have not = haven't
has not = hasn't

Contractions with *Had*

I had = I'd
you had = you'd
he had = he'd
she had = she'd
we had = we'd
you had = you'd
they had = they'd
had not = hadn't

Contractions with *Do and Did*

do not = don't
does not = doesn't
did not = didn't

Contractions with Modals and Phrasal Modals

cannot = can't
could not = couldn't
should not = shouldn't
have got to = 've got to
has got to = 's got to

17 Phrasal Verbs

Separable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Many two-word transitive phrasal verbs are separable. This means that a noun object can separate the two words of the phrasal verb or follow the phrasal verb. If the object is a pronoun (*me, you, him, her, us, it, or them*), the pronoun must separate the two words of the phrasal verb. Pronoun objects cannot follow the phrasal verb.

Noun Object

She **turned** the offer **down**.

She **turned down** the offer.

Pronoun Object

She **turned it down**.

*She **turned down it**. (INCORRECT)

These are some common separable transitive phrasal verbs and their meanings:

Phrasal Verb

bring (someone) up
bring (something) up
brush (something) off
call (something) off
call (someone) up
clean (something) up
do (something) over
dry (something) off
fill (something) out
get (someone) up
give (something) back
hand (something) in
hold (something) up
leave (something) out
let (something) out
look (something) over
look (something) up
make (something) up
mark (something) down/up
pick (something) out
pick (something/someone) up
put (something) away
put (something) off
put (something) together
take (something) away
take (something) back
take (something) off
talk (something) over
tear (something) up
think (something) through
throw (something) away

Meaning

raise someone (a child)
introduce a topic
remove something by brushing
cancel something
telephone someone
clean something completely
do something again
dry something with a towel
complete a form with information
awaken someone
return something
give something to a person in authority
delay something
omit something
alter clothes to make them larger
examine something carefully or review it
look for information in a book or on the Internet
invent something
decrease/increase the price of something
choose something
lift something or someone; stop to get something or someone
put something in its usual place
postpone something
assemble something
remove something
return something
remove an article of clothing
discuss something
destroy something by ripping
consider something thoroughly
get rid of something

Phrasal Verb

try (something) on
 turn (something) down
 turn (something) in
 turn (something) off
 turn (something) on
 turn (something) over
 use (something) up

Meaning

put on clothing to see how it looks
 refuse a request; lower the heat or volume
 give something to a person in authority
 stop a machine or a light
 start a machine or a light
 turn something so that its top is facing down
 use something until no more is left

Nonseparable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Some two-word and most three-word transitive phrasal verbs cannot be separated. This means that a noun object or pronoun object cannot separate the parts of the phrasal verb.

Noun Object

The teacher **called on** Sally.
 *The teacher **called Sally on**. (INCORRECT)

Pronoun Object

The teacher **called on** her.
 *The teacher **called her on**. (INCORRECT)

These are some common nonseparable transitive phrasal verbs and their meanings:

Phrasal Verb

break into (something)
 call on (someone)
 come across (something)
 come by for (someone)
 count on (someone)
 cut down on (something)
 do without (something)
 drop out of (something)
 end up with (something)
 find out (something)
 get around (something)
 get on with (something)
 go along with (someone/something)
 get over (something)
 go over (something)
 look after (someone)
 look into (something)
 look up to (someone)
 put up with (something/someone)
 run into (someone)
 take after (someone)

Meaning

enter something illegally, such as a car or house
 ask someone to speak, especially in a class or meeting
 find something unexpectedly
 pick someone up, especially in a car
 depend on someone
 use less of something
 manage without having something
 quit something, especially school
 have or get something in the end
 discover something
 avoid something
 continue something
 agree with someone/something
 recover from something, such as an illness
 review something, such as a report
 take care of someone
 research a subject
 admire someone
 tolerate something or someone
 meet someone unexpectedly
 resemble someone; act like someone

Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

Intransitive phrasal verbs do not take objects.

My car **broke down** yesterday. What time do you usually **get up**?

These are some common intransitive phrasal verbs and their meanings:

Phrasal Verb	Meaning
blow up	explode
break down	stop working properly
burn down	burn completely
catch up	find out the latest news
come back	return
come over	visit
drop by	visit, especially unexpectedly
eat out	eat in a restaurant
fall down	suddenly stop standing
get up	get out of bed
give up	stop trying, lose hope
go down	(of computers) stop functioning; (of prices or temperature) become lower; (of ships) sink; (of the sun or moon) set
go off	(of lights or machines) stop functioning; (of alarms) start functioning; explode or make a loud noise
grow up	become an adult
hold on	wait on the telephone
look out	be careful
make out	manage or progress
move out	stop living somewhere, especially by removing all of your possessions
pass out	lose consciousness
show up	appear
start out	begin
take off	leave (usually by plane)
talk back	answer in a rude way
turn up	appear or arrive
wake up	stop sleeping
work out	exercise

18 Phonetic Symbols

Vowels

i	see /si/	u	too /tu/	oʊ	go /gou/
ɪ	sit /sɪt/	ʌ	cup /kʌp/	ə	bird /bɜrd/
ɛ	ten /tɛn/	ə	about /ə'baʊt/	ɪr	near /nɪr/
æ	cat /kæt/	eɪ	say /seɪ/	ɛr	hair /hɛr/
ɑ	hot /hɑt/	aɪ	five /faɪv/	ɑr	car /kɑr/
ɔ	saw /sɔ/	ɔɪ	boy /bɔɪ/	ɔr	north /nɔrθ/
ʊ	put /pʊt/	aʊ	now /naʊ/	ʊr	tour /tʊr/

Consonants

p	pen /pen/	f	fall /fɔl/	m	man /mæn/
b	bad /bæd/	v	voice /vɔɪs/	n	no /nou/
t	tea /ti/	θ	thin /θɪn/	ŋ	sing /sɪŋ/
tʃ	butter /'bʌtʃər/	ð	then /ðɛn/	l	leg /lɛg/
d	did /dɪd/	s	so /sou/	r	red /rɛd/
k	cat /kæt/	z	zoo /zu/	y	yes /yɛs/
g	got /gɑt/	ʃ	she /ʃi/	w	wet /wɛt/
tʃ	chin /tʃɪn/	ʒ	vision /'vɪʒn/	x	Chanukah /'xɑnəkə/
dʒ	June /dʒun/	h	how /haʊ/		

Glossary of Grammar Terms

ability modal See **modal of ability**.

action verb A verb that describes a thing that someone or something does. An action verb does not describe a state or condition.

Sam **rang** the bell.

I **eat** soup for lunch.

It **rains** a lot here.

active sentence In active sentences, the agent (the noun that is performing the action) is in subject position and the receiver (the noun that receives or is a result of the action) is in object position. In the following sentence, the subject **Alex** performed the action, and the object **letter** received the action.

Alex mailed the letter.

adjective A word that describes or modifies the meaning of a noun.

the **orange** car

a **strange** noise

adverb A word that describes or modifies the meaning of a verb, another adverb, an adjective, or a sentence. Many adverbs answer such questions as *How? When? Where?* or *How often?* They often end in *-ly*.

She ran **quickly**. She ran **very** quickly.

a **really** hot day **Maybe** she'll leave.

adverb of degree An adverb that makes adjectives or other adverbs stronger or weaker.

She is **extremely** busy this week.

He performed **very** well during the exam.

He was **somewhat** surprised by her response.

adverb of frequency An adverb that tells how often a situation occurs. Adverbs of frequency range in meaning from *all of the time* to *none of the time*.

She **always** eats breakfast.

He **never** eats meat.

adverb of manner An adverb that answers the question *How?* and describes the way someone does something or the way something happens. Adverbs of manner usually end in *-ly*.

He walked **slowly**.

It rained **heavily** all night.

adverb of opinion An adverb that expresses an opinion about an entire sentence or idea.

Luckily, we missed the traffic.

We couldn't find a seat on the train, **unfortunately**.

adverb of possibility An adverb that shows different degrees of how possible we think something is. Adverbs of possibility range in meaning from expressing a high degree of possibility to expressing a low degree of possibility.

He'll **certainly** pass the test.

Maybe he'll pass the test.

He **definitely** won't pass the test.

adverb of time An adverb that answers the question *When?* and refers to either a specific time or a more indefinite time.

Let's leave **tonight** instead of **tomorrow**.

They've **recently** opened a new store.

adverbial phrase A phrase that functions as an adverb.

Amy spoke **very softly**.

affirmative statement A sentence that does not have a negative verb.

Linda went to the movies.

agreement The subject and verb of a clause must agree in number. If the subject is singular, the verb form is also singular. If the subject is plural, the verb form is also plural.

He comes home early. **They come** home early.

article The words **a**, **an**, and **the** in English. Articles are used to introduce and identify nouns.

a potato an onion the supermarket

auxiliary verb A verb that is used before main verbs (or other auxiliary verbs) in a sentence. Auxiliary verbs are usually used in questions and negative sentences. **Do**, **have**, and **be** can act as auxiliary verbs. Modals (**may**, **can**, **will**, and so on) are also auxiliary verbs.

Do you have the time?

I **have** never been to Italy.

The car **was** speeding.

I **may** be late.

base form The form of a verb without any verb endings; the infinitive form without *to*. Also called *simple form*.

sleep be stop

clause A group of words that has a subject and a verb. *See also dependent clause* and **main clause**.

If I leave, . . .

The rain stopped.

. . . when he speaks.

. . . that I saw.

common noun A noun that refers to any of a class of people, animals, places, things, or ideas. Common nouns are not capitalized.

man cat city pencil grammar

comparative A form of an adjective, adverb, or noun that is used to express differences between two items or situations.

This book is **heavier than** that one.

He runs **more quickly than** his brother.

A CD costs **more money than** a cassette.

complex sentence A sentence that has a main clause and one or more dependent clauses.

When the bell rang, we were finishing dinner.

conditional sentence A sentence that expresses a real or unreal situation in the *if* clause, and the (real or unreal) expected result in the main clause.

If I have time, I will travel to Africa.

If I had time, I would travel to Africa.

consonant A speech sound that is made by partly or completely stopping the air as it comes out of the mouth. For example, with the sounds /p/, /d/, and /g/, the air is completely stopped. With the sounds /s/, /f/, and /l/, the air is partly stopped.

contraction The combination of two words into one by omitting certain letters and replacing them with an apostrophe.

I will = I'll we are = we're are not = aren't

count noun A common noun that can be counted. It usually has both a singular and a plural form.

orange — oranges

woman — women

definite article The word **the** in English. It is used to identify nouns based on assumptions about what information the speaker and listener share about the noun. The definite article is also used for making general statements about a whole class or group of nouns.

Please give me **the** key.

The scorpion is dangerous.

dependent clause A clause that cannot stand alone as a sentence because it depends on the main clause to complete the meaning of the sentence. Also called *subordinate clause*.

I'm going home **after he calls**.

determiner A word such as **a**, **an**, **the**, **this**, **that**, **these**, **those**, **my**, **some**, **a few**, and **three** that is used before a noun to limit its meaning in some way.

those videos

direct object A noun or pronoun that refers to a person or thing that is directly affected by the action of a verb.

John wrote **a letter**.

Please buy **some milk**.

first person One of the three classes of personal pronouns. First person refers to the person (*I*) or people (*we*) who are actually speaking or writing.

future A time that is to come. The future is expressed in English with **will**, **be going to**, the simple present, or the present continuous. These different forms of the future often have different meanings and uses.

I **will** help you later.

David **is going to** call later.

The train **leaves** at 6:05 this evening.

I'm **driving** to Toronto tomorrow.

general quantity expression A quantity expression that indicates whether a quantity or an amount is large or small. It does not give an exact amount.

a lot of cookies **a little** flour
a few people **some** milk

general statement A generalization about a whole class or group of nouns.

Whales are mammals.

A daffodil is a flower that grows from a bulb.

generic noun A noun that refers to a whole class or group of nouns.

I like rice.

A bird can fly.

The laser is an important tool.

gerund An **-ing** form of a verb that is used in place of a noun or pronoun to name an activity or a state.

Skiing is fun. He doesn't like **being sick**.

if clause A dependent clause that begins with **if** and expresses a real or unreal situation.

If I have the time, I'll paint the kitchen.

If I had the time, I'd paint the kitchen.

imperative A type of sentence, usually without a subject, that tells someone to do something. The verb is in the base form.

Open your books to page 36.

Be ready at eight.

impersonal you The use of the pronoun **you** to refer to people in general rather than a particular person or group of people.

Nowadays **you** can buy anything on the Internet.

indefinite article The words **a** and **an** in English. Indefinite articles introduce a noun as a member of a class of nouns or make generalizations about a whole class or group of nouns.

Please hand me **a** pencil.

An ocean is a large body of water.

independent clause See **main clause**.

indirect object A noun or pronoun used after some verbs that refers to the person who receives the direct object of a sentence.

John wrote a letter to **Mary**.

Please buy some milk for **us**.

infinitive A verb form that includes **to** + the base form of a verb. An infinitive is used in place of a noun or pronoun to name an activity or situation expressed by a verb.

Do you like **to swim**?

information question A question that begins with a **wh-** word.

Where does she live? Who lives here?

intonation The change in pitch, loudness, syllable length, and rhythm in spoken language.

intransitive verb A verb that cannot be followed by an object.

We finally **arrived**.

irregular verb A verb that does not form the simple past by adding a **-d** or **-ed** ending.

put — put — put buy — bought — bought

main clause A clause that can be used by itself as a sentence. Also called *independent clause*.

I'm going home.

main verb A verb that can be used alone in a sentence. A main verb can also occur with an auxiliary verb.

I **ate** lunch at 11:30.

Kate can't **eat** lunch today.

mental activity verb A verb such as **decide**, **know**, and **understand** that expresses an opinion, thought, or feeling.

I don't **know** why she left.

modal The auxiliary verbs **can**, **could**, **may**, **might**, **must**, **should**, **will**, and **would**. They modify the meaning of a main verb by expressing ability, authority, formality, politeness, or various degrees of certainty. Also called *modal auxiliary*.

You **should** take something for your headache.

Applicants **must** have a high school diploma.

modal of ability **Can** and **could** are called modals of ability when they express knowledge, skill, opportunity, and capability.

He **can** speak Arabic and English.

Can you play the piano?

Yesterday we **couldn't** leave during the storm.

Seat belts **can** save lives.

modal of necessity **Should** and **must** are called modals of necessity along with the phrasal modals **ought to**, **have to**, and **have got to**. They express various degrees of necessity in opinions, obligations, rules, laws, and other requirements.

Students **must** take two upper-level courses in order to graduate.

Employees **should** wear identification tags at all times.

We've **got to** arrive before the ceremony starts.

modal of possibility **Could**, **might**, **may**, **should**, **must**, and **will** are called modals of possibility when they express various degrees of certainty ranging from slight possibility to strong certainty.

It **could / might / may / will** rain later.

modal of prohibition **Must not** is called a modal of prohibition when it means that something is not allowed (prohibited).

Drivers **must not** change lanes without signaling.

modal of request **Can**, **could**, **will**, and **would** are called modals of request when they are used for asking someone to do something. They express various degrees of politeness and formality.

Can you pass the sugar, please?

Would you tell me the time?

modify To add to or change the meaning of a word. Adjectives modify nouns (**expensive** cars). Adverbs modify verbs (**very** fast).

negative statement A sentence with a negative verb.

I **didn't** see that movie.

He **isn't** happy.

noncount noun A common noun that cannot be counted. A noncount noun has no plural form and cannot occur with **a**, **an**, or a number.

information mathematics weather

nonseparable Refers to two- or three-word verbs that don't allow a noun or pronoun object to separate the two or three words in the verb phrase. Certain two-word verbs and almost all three-word verbs are nonseparable.

Amy **got off** the bus.

We **cut down on** fat in our diet.

noun A word that typically refers to a person, animal, place, thing, or idea.

Tom rabbit store computer mathematics

noun clause A dependent clause that can occur in the same place as a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase in a sentence. Noun clauses begin with **wh-** words, **if**, **whether**, or **that**.

I don't know **where he is**.

I wonder **if he's coming**.

I don't know **whether it's true**.

I think **that it's a lie**.

noun phrase A phrase formed by a noun and its modifiers. A noun phrase can substitute for a noun in a sentence.

She drank **milk**.

She drank **chocolate milk**.

She drank **the milk**.

object A noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that follows a transitive verb or a preposition.

He likes **pizza**.

She likes **him**.

Go with **her**.

Steve threw **the ball**.

particle Words such as **up**, **out**, and **down** that are linked to certain verbs to form phrasal verbs. Particles look like prepositions but don't express the same meanings.

He got **up** late.

Tom works **out** three times a week.

They turned **down** the offer.

passive sentence Passive sentences emphasize the receiver of an action by changing the usual order of the subject and object in a sentence. In the sentence below, the subject (**The letter**) does not perform the action; it receives the action or is the result of an action. The passive is formed with a form of **be** + the past participle of a transitive verb.

The letter was mailed yesterday.

past continuous A verb form that expresses an action or situation in progress at a specific time in the past. The past continuous is formed with **was** or **were** + verb + **-ing**. Also called *past progressive*.

A: What **were** you **doing** last night at eight o'clock?

B: I **was studying**.

past participle A past verb form that may differ from the simple past form of some irregular verbs. It is used to form the present perfect, for example.

I have never **seen** that movie.

past progressive See *past continuous*.

phrasal modal A verb that is not a true modal, but has the same meaning as a modal verb. Examples of phrasal modals are **ought to**, **have to**, and **have got to**.

phrasal verb A two- or three-word verb such as **turn down** or **run out of**. The meaning of a phrasal verb is usually different from the meanings of its individual words.

She **turned down** the job offer.

Don't **run out of** gas on the freeway.

phrase A group of words that can form a grammatical unit. A phrase can take the form of a noun phrase, verb phrase, adjective phrase, adverbial phrase, or prepositional phrase. This means it can act as a noun, verb, adjective, adverb, or preposition.

The **tall man** left.

Lee **hit the ball**.

The child was **very quiet**.

She spoke **too fast**.

They ran **down the stairs**.

plural The form of a word that refers to more than one person or thing. For example, **cats** and **children** are the plural forms of **cat** and **child**.

possibility modal See *modal of possibility*.

preposition A word such as **at**, **in**, **on**, or **to**, that links nouns, pronouns, and gerunds to other words.

prepositional phrase A phrase that consists of a preposition followed by a noun or noun phrase.

on Sunday

under the table

present continuous A verb form that indicates that an activity is in progress, temporary, or changing. It is formed with **be** + verb + **-ing**. Also called *present progressive*.

I'm **watering** the garden.

Ruth **is working** for her uncle.

He's **getting** better.

present perfect A verb form that expresses a connection between the past and the present. It indicates indefinite past time, recent past time, or continuing past time. The present perfect is formed with **have** + the past participle of the main verb.

I've **seen** that movie.

The manager **has just resigned**.

We've **been** here for three hours.

present progressive See *present continuous*.

pronoun A word that can replace a noun or noun phrase. **I**, **you**, **he**, **she**, **it**, **mine**, and **yours** are some examples of pronouns.

proper noun A noun that is the name of a particular person, animal, place, thing, or idea. Proper nouns begin with capital letters and are usually not preceded by **the**.

Peter Rover India Apollo 13 Buddhism

purpose infinitive An infinitive that expresses the reason or purpose for doing something.

In order to operate this machine, press the green button.

quantity expression A word or words that occur before a noun to express a quantity or amount of that noun.

a lot of rain **few** books **four** trucks

real conditional sentence A sentence that expresses a real or possible situation in the **if** clause and the expected result in the main clause. It has an **if** clause in the simple present, and the **will** future in the main clause.

If I get a raise, I won't look for a new job.

regular verb A verb that forms the simple past by adding **-ed**, **-d**, or changing **y** to **i** and then adding **-ed** to the simple form.

hunt — hunted

love — loved

cry — cried

rejoinder A short response used in conversation.

A: I like sushi.

B: **So do I**.

C: **Me too**.

response An answer to a question, or a reply to other types of spoken or written language. *See also rejoinder.*

A: Are you hungry?

B: Yes, I am. Let's eat.

A: I'm tired of this long winter.

B: So am I.

second person One of the three classes of personal pronouns. Second person refers to the person (**you**, singular) or people (**you**, plural) who are the listeners or readers.

separable Refers to certain two-word verbs that allow a noun or pronoun object to separate the two words in the verb phrase.

She **gave** her job **up**.

short answer An answer to a Yes/No question that has yes or **no** plus the subject and an auxiliary verb.

A: Do you speak Chinese?

B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

simple past A verb form that expresses actions and situations that were completed at a definite time in the past.

Carol **ate** lunch.

She **was** hungry.

simple present A verb form that expresses general statements, especially about habitual or repeated activities and permanent situations.

Every morning I **catch** the 8:00 bus.

The earth **is** round.

singular The form of a word that refers to only one person or thing. For example, **cat** and **child** are the singular forms of **cats** and **children**.

stative verb A type of verb that is not usually used in the continuous form because it expresses a condition or state that is not changing. **Know**, **love**, **resemble**, **see**, and **smell** are some examples.

subject A noun, pronoun, or noun phrase that precedes the verb phrase in a sentence. The subject is closely related to the verb as the doer or experiencer of the action or state, or closely related

to the noun that is being described in a sentence with *be*.

Erica kicked the ball.

He feels dizzy.

The park is huge.

subordinate clause *See dependent clause.*

superlative A form of an adjective, adverb, or noun that is used to rank an item or situation first or last in a group of three or more.

This perfume has **the strongest** scent.

He speaks **the fastest** of all.

That machine makes **the most noise** of the three.

tag question A type of question that is added to the end of a statement in order to express doubt, surprise, and certainty. Certain rising or falling intonation patterns accompany these different meanings.

You're feeling sick, **aren't you?**

He didn't leave, **did he?**

tense The form of a verb that shows past, present, and future time.

He **lives** in New York now.

He **lived** in Washington two years ago.

He'll **live** in Toronto next year.

third person One of the three classes of personal pronouns. Third person refers to some person (**he**, **she**), thing (**it**), or people or things (**they**) other than the speaker/writer or listener/reader.

three-word verb A phrasal verb such as **break up with**, **cut down on**, and **look out for**. The meaning of a three-word verb is usually different from the individual meanings of the three words.

time clause A dependent clause that begins with a word such as **while**, **when**, **before**, or **after**. It expresses the relationship in time between two different events in the same sentence.

Before Sandy left, she fixed the copy machine.

time expression A phrase that functions as an adverb of time.

She graduated **three years ago**.

I'll see them **the day after tomorrow**.

transitive verb A verb that is followed by an object.

I **read** the book.

two-word verb A phrasal verb such as **blow up**, **cross out**, and **hand in**. The meaning of a two-word verb is usually different from the individual meanings of the two words.

used to A special past tense verb. It expresses habitual past situations that no longer exist.

We **used to** go skiing a lot. Now we go snowboarding.

verb A word that refers to an action or a state.

Gina **closed** the window.

Tim **loves** classical music.

verb phrase A phrase that has a main verb and any objects, adverbs, or dependent clauses that complete the meaning of the verb in the sentence.

Who **called you**?

He **walked slowly**.

I **know what his name is**.

voiced Refers to speech sounds that are made by vibrating the vocal cords. Examples of voiced sounds are /b/, /d/, and /g/.

bat dot get

voiceless Refers to speech sounds that are made without vibrating the vocal cords. Examples of voiceless sounds are /p/, /t/, and /f/.

up it if

vowel A speech sound that is made with the lips and teeth open. The air from the lungs is not blocked at all. For example, the sounds /a/, /o/, and /i/ are vowels.

wh- word Who, whom, what, where, when, why, how, and which are **wh-** words. They are used to ask questions and to connect clauses.

Yes/No question A question that can be answered with the words **yes** or **no**.

Can you drive a car? Does he live here?

Index

A

a/an, see Indefinite articles

Ability, see Modals of ability

-able, adjectives formed with, 305

about, with *as . . . as*, 358

Accepting and refusing offers, 194

ache, in present continuous, 37

Actions, see also Conditions;

Events; Repeated actions;

Situations; States

and gerunds, 389

and infinitives, 402

and present perfect, 100–101

Action verbs, in statements about

ability, 163

Activities, see also Actions; Events;

Situations

activities in progress

and past continuous, 76

and present continuous, 36–37,

40

Additions, see *and*, *and . . . either*,

and . . . too, *and . . . neither*, and

so, *but*, and Tag questions

Adjectives, 301–316

vs. adverbs, 322

and adverbs of degree, 331

in *be* + adjective + preposition +
gerund, 387, 388

comparative forms of, 348–350,
352–353, 356–359

ending in *-ing* and *-ed*, 310

formation of, 305

order of, 309–310

placement of, 304–305

and *so . . . that* clauses, 328–329

and *such . . . that* clauses,
328–329

superlative forms of, 368–369,
373

with *too* and *enough*, 335, 337

Adverbs, 317–342

vs. adjectives, 322

adverbs of degree, 328–329,
331

adverbs of frequency
and simple present, 12
and tag questions, 232

and *used to*, 65

adverbs of manner, possibility,
time, and opinion, 320–322

comparative forms of, 348–350,
352–353, 356–359

with gerunds, 385

and present continuous, 40

and present perfect, 104

and *so . . . that* clauses, 328–329
superlative forms of, 368–369,
373–373

too and *enough*, 335, 337

with two forms, 326

with *will* and *be going to*, 130

Advice

and *if* clauses, 147

and imperatives, 22

with modals and phrasal modals,
202–204, 208–210

a few, in quantity expressions,
265, 266, 270–272

Affirmative imperatives, 20

Affirmative short answers, see

Short answers

Affirmative statements, see

Statements

afraid, placement of, 305

after

in future time clauses, 141, 144

in past time clauses, 84

a great deal of, in quantity
expressions, 265, 266, 270

agree, with infinitives, 405

Agreeing to and refusing requests,
186–187

Agreement, in clauses with *too*, *so*,
not . . . either, and *neither*,
250

alike, placement of, 305

a little, in quantity expressions,
265, 266, 270–272

almost, with *as . . . as*, 358

alone, placement of, 305

a lot of, in quantity expressions,
265, 266, 270, 271

already, with present perfect, 104

am, see *be*

Amounts

and general quantity expressions,
270–272

and specific quantity expressions,
276–277

and, see also *and . . . either*; *and . . .
too*

with adjectives, 305

with comparatives, 353

and . . . either, 243

meaning and use of, for
combining ideas, 255

and . . . neither, 246–247

meaning and use of,
for similarities, 250

and . . . too, 242, 243

meaning and use of,

for combining ideas, 255

for similarities, 250

and neither, 248

meaning and use of,

for combining ideas, 255

for similarities, 250

and so, 247, 248

meaning and use of,

for combining ideas, 255

for similarities, 250

any, in general quantity
expressions, 265, 266

anyone, and adjectives, 305

- a piece of*, in specific quantity expressions, 277
- appear*, and adjectives, 305
- are/aren't*, see *be aren't I?*, 227
- Articles, 281–298, see also Definite articles; Indefinite articles; No article
- and adjectives, 305
 - forms of, 264–265, 284–285
 - meaning and use of, 287–289
 - with nouns in general statements, 293–294
 - with prepositional phrases, 292
- as . . . as*, 356–359, 361
- asleep*, placement of, 305
- Auxiliary verbs, see also *be*; *do*; *have*; and Modals
- and adverbs, 321
- avoid*, with gerunds, 405
- awake*, placement of, 305
- B**
- Background information, and past continuous, 79
- bad*, 349
- Base form of verb, in infinitives, 399
- be*, see also *be able to*; *be going to*; *is/isn't*; *was/wasn't*; *were/weren't*
- and adjectives, 305
 - and adverbs of frequency, 12
 - with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, and *but*, 242–243
 - with *and so* and *and neither*, 246–247
 - in *be* + adjective + preposition + gerund, 387, 388
 - with *it* subject . . . + infinitive, 399
 - in present continuous, 32–33
 - in short answers to questions
 - with *be* about future possibility, 168
 - in simple past, 51
 - in simple present, 7
 - in tag questions, 226, 227, 230
- be able to*
- forms of, 160
 - meaning and use of, 162–163, 170
- become*
- and adjectives, 305
 - and comparisons, 353
- before*
- in future time clauses, 141, 144
 - in past time clauses, 84
- begin*, with gerunds or infinitives, 405–406
- be going to*
- forms of, 114–115
 - with future time clauses and *if* clauses, 140–142
 - meaning and use of, 119–120, 130–131
 - as modal of future possibility, 168
 - reduced forms of, 118
 - with time expressions, 122
- break down*, 415
- but*, 243
- meaning and use of,
 - for combining ideas, 255
 - for differences, 251
- by*, with gerunds, 390
- C**
- call for*, 415
- call up*, 415
- can*
- as modal of permission, forms of, 181
 - as modal of present and future ability
 - forms of, 158–159
 - meaning and use of, 162, 166
 - as modal of request
 - forms of, 180
 - meaning and use of, 186–187
- cannot/can't*
- in agreeing to and refusing requests, 186, 187
 - as modal of ability, 158, 159
- Cause and effect
- and *if* clauses, 146
 - and *so/such . . . that* clauses, 331
- certainly
- as adverb of possibility, 321
 - in agreeing to requests, 187
- Certainty/uncertainty
- and *if* clauses, 147
 - and tag questions, 231–232
 - with *will* and *be going to*, 130, 171
- Changing situations, and comparatives, 353
- chief*, placement of, 305
- Classification, with general statements, 294
- Clauses, 81, 141
- dependent clauses, 81, 141
 - if* clauses, for future, 141–142, 146–147
 - main clauses, 141
 - future time clauses, 140
 - if* clauses, 141
 - past time clauses, 80–81, 83–84
 - so . . . that* clauses, 328–329, 331
 - such . . . that* clauses, 329, 331
 - after superlatives, 372
- Collective nouns, specific quantity expressions for, 277
- Combining ideas, with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, *and so*, and *neither*, and *but*, 255
- come*, with present continuous as future, 119
- come across*, 415
- come out*, 415
- Comma
- with future time clauses, 141
 - with *if* clauses, 142
 - with imperatives, 23
 - with past time clauses, 81
- Commands, and imperatives, 22
- Comparatives, 345–364
- forms of, 348–350, 356–357
 - vs. superlatives, 368–369
 - meaning and use of, 352–353, 358–359, 361

- Comparisons, *see also*
 Comparatives; Superlatives
 with *would like*, *would prefer*, and
would rather, 194
- Completed actions, and simple
 past, 57, 76, 100
- Conditions, *see also* Situations;
 States
 and simple present, 12
- Conjunctions, 239–258, *see also*
and; *and . . . either*; *and . . . too*;
and neither; *and so*; and *but*
- Containers, specific quantity
 expressions for, 277
- continue, with gerunds or
 infinitives, 405
- Continuing time up to now, and
 present perfect, 97
- Continuous tenses, *see* Past
 continuous; Present continuous
- Contractions
 with affirmative short answers,
 115
 with modals of future possibility,
 167, 168
 with phrasal modals of advice
 and necessity, 204, 205
 in present continuous, 32, 33
 in present perfect, 93
 with *will*, 125, 126, 129
 with *would like*, *would prefer*, and
would rather, 182
- Conversation
 with *not . . . many* and *not . . .*
any, 270
 and tag questions, 236
 and *too*, *so*, *not . . . either*, and
neither, 250
- cost*, with *it* subject + infinitive,
 399
- could/couldn't*
 as modal of advice, necessity, and
 prohibition
 forms of, 202, 203
 meaning and use of, 208, 209
 as modal of future possibility
 forms of, 167, 168
 meaning and use of, 170
- as modal of past ability
 forms of, 159–160
 meaning and use of, 163
 as modal of permission, forms of,
 181
 as modal of request
 forms of, 180
 meaning and use of, 186–187
- Count nouns, 264–266
 with articles, 284–285, 287,
 293–294
 with comparatives, 353, 356,
 357
 with specific quantity
 expressions, 276–277
 and *such . . . that* clauses, 329
 with superlatives, 373
- count on*, 415
cut down on, 415
- D**
- d/-ed* (for simple past and past
 participles), 50, 51, 93
 pronunciation of verbs ending
 in, 53
- Definite articles
 forms of, 264–265, 284–285
 meaning and use of, 288–289
 in general statements, 293–294
 with superlatives, 368–369,
 372–373
- definitely*, 320, 321, 325
- Definitions
 general statements as, 294
 and simple present, 11
- Degree, adverbs of, 328–329, 331,
 337
- Dependent clauses, 81, 141
- Descriptions, with *as . . . as*, 361
- Desires, with *would like*, 193
- did/didn't*, *see also do*
 and simple past, 50–51
 and *used to*, 62–63
- did you*, pronunciation of, 56
- Differences
 and *but*, 251
- and comparatives, 352, 359
- Directions, and imperatives, 22
- Discourse, *see also* Background
 information; Conversation
 with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*,
and so, *and neither*, and *but*,
 255
- dislike*, with gerunds, 389, 405
- do*, *see also did/didn't*; *does/doesn't*;
don't
 in clauses with *and . . . too*, and
. . . either, and *but*, 242–243
 in clauses with *and so* and *and*
neither, 246–247
 in simple present, 6–7
 in tag questions, 227–228
 with imperatives, 12
 with phrasal modals of advice
 and necessity, 204, 205
 with present continuous as
 future, 119
- does/doesn't*, *see also do*
 in negative statements, 183
 in simple present, 6–7
- don't*
 in imperatives, 20
 in negative statements, 183
- Doubt, and tag questions, 232
- down*, as particle, 415, 419
- do you mind . . . ?*, 390
- drop by*, 415
drop out of, 415
- E**
- early, 322
- ed* (for simple past and past
 participle), *see -d/-ed*
- ed*, adjectives formed with, 310
- either*, *see also and . . . either*
 in short responses, 252
- Emphasis, and superlatives, 373
- enjoy*, with gerunds, 389, 405
- enough*, 335, 337
- Equal things, and *as . . . as*, 358
- er* (for comparatives), 349, 350,
 352

-*est* (for superlatives), 368–369, 372–373
Events, *see* Actions; Events in sequence; Simultaneous events; Situations
Events in sequence
 and future time clauses, 144
 and past time clauses, 84
ever
 with indefinite past time, 101
 with superlatives, 372
expect, with infinitives, 405
Explanations, with gerunds, 390
extremely, 328, 331

F

Facts, *see also* Definitions; Descriptions; Scientific facts and simple present, 11
fairly, 328, 331
fast, 322
feel
 and adjectives, 305
 in present continuous, 37
 in statements about ability, 163
few, in quantity expressions, 270, 271
fewer, 353, 359
fewest, 373
figure out, 415
fill out, 415
finish, with gerunds, 405
for, and present perfect, 97
forget, with gerunds or infinitives, 406
Formality/informality, *see also* Reduced forms
 and *be going to*, 118
 and comparatives, 353
 and *did you*, 56
 and *have* and *has*, 95
 and imperatives, 23
 negative imperatives, 20
 and modals and phrasal modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 207, 214

 and offers, 193, 194
 and phrasal verbs, 419
 and pronouns in short responses, 252
 and *of* in quantity expressions, 269
 and requests, 186, 187, 193
 and tag questions, 230
 and *will*, 129
 and *would you mind* + gerund, 390
former, placement of, 305
fortunately, 321, 326
-*ful*, adjectives formed with, 305

Future, 109–152, *see also be going to; will*

 future time clauses
 forms of, 140–141
 meaning and use of, 144
 modals of future ability
 forms of, 158–159, 160
 meaning and use of, 162–163
 modals of future possibility
 forms of, 167–168
 meaning and use of, 170–171
future, placement of, 305

Future possibility, *see* Modals of future possibility

Future time clauses
 forms of, 140–141
 meaning and use of, 144

G

General quantity expressions
 forms of, 265–266
 meaning and use of, 270–272
 vs. specific quantity expressions, 276
General statements
 nouns in, 293–294
 as opinions, 209, 293–294
General truths, and simple present, 11
Gerunds, 381–394
 forms of, 384–385, 387–388

 meaning and use of, 389–390
 vs. infinitives, 403, 405–406
get, in comparisons, 353
glad, placement of, 305
go
 with gerunds, 389
 with present continuous as future, 119
go along with, 415
good, 322, 349, 369
go over, 415
grow, in comparisons, 353
grow up, 415

H

Habits
 and simple present, 11
 and *used to*, 65
had better
 forms of, 203–204
 meaning and use of, 208, 209
happily, 321, 326
hard, 326
hardly, 326
has/hasn't, *see also have*
 in present perfect, 92–93
 reduced forms of, 95
hate
 with gerunds or infinitives, 389, 402, 405
have, *see also has/hasn't; have got to; have to*
 in clauses with *and . . . too*, and *. . . either*, and *but*, 242–243
 in clauses with *and so* and *and neither*, 246–247
 in past continuous, 77
 in present continuous, 37
 in present perfect, 92–93
 in simple present, 7
 in tag questions, 226, 227
 reduced forms of, 95
 with present continuous as future, 119
have got to
 forms of, 203–204, 207

- meaning and use of, 208, 210, 214
- have to*
forms of, 203–204, 207
meaning and use of, 208, 210, 214, 215
- hear*, in statements about ability, 163
- high*, 326
- highly*, 326
- how many*, 265, 266
- how much*, 265, 266
- hurt*, in present continuous, 37
- I**
- I*, vs. *me*, in short responses, 252
- ic*, adjectives formed with, 305
- Identifying nouns, with articles, 288–289
- Idioms, phrasal verbs as, 418
- I don't mind . . .*, 390
- if* clauses, for future
forms of, 141–142
meaning and use of, 146–147
- Imperatives, 17–28
forms of, 20
meaning and use of, 22–23
- Impossibility, *see*
Possibility/impossibility
- I'm sorry*, in refusing requests, 187
- in*, in future time expressions, 122
- incredibly*, 321, 326
- Indefinite articles, *see also* No article and adjectives, 305
forms of, 284–285
with nouns, 264–265
meaning and use of, 287
in general statements, 293–294
- Indefinite nouns, 287
in general statements, 294
- Indefinite past time, and present perfect, 100–101
- Infinitives, 395–410
forms of, 398–399
with *too* and *enough*, 335, 337
with *would like* and *would prefer*, 183
meaning and use of, 402–403, 405–406
- Informality, *see*
Formality/informality
- Information, *see also* Background information; Certainty/uncertainty; Classification; Definitions; Facts; General truths; Introducing topics; Plans; Predictions; Reasons
- Information questions
in future
with *be going to*, 115
with *will*, 126
with *how many* and *how much*, 265, 266
with modals of ability
with *can* for present and future ability, 159
with *could* for past ability, 160
with modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 202, 203
with modals of future possibility, 168
with modals of permission, 181
in past continuous, 73
with phrasal modals of advice and necessity, 205
in present continuous, 33, 40
in present perfect, 93
with adverbs, 104
in simple past, 51
in simple present, 7
with *used to*, 63
with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 182–183
- ing*, *see also* Gerunds; Past continuous; Present continuous adjectives formed with, 305, 310
in order, with infinitives, 399, 402
- Inseparable phrasal verbs, 414, 415
- Instructions, and imperatives, 22
- Intentions, and *be going to* and present continuous, 119
- Interrupted events, 83
- Intonation, with tag questions, 231–232
- Intransitive verbs, phrasal verbs as, 414–415, 418
- Introducing topics, with indefinite articles, 287
- Irregular comparatives, 348, 349
- Irregular superlatives, 368
- Irregular verbs
past participles of, 92–93
in simple past, 40–51
-ish, adjectives formed with, 305
is/isn't, 81, *see also be*
vs. present perfect, 93
- it*
as subject, with infinitives, 399, 403
and tag questions, 228
- I think*, with advice and opinions, 209
- K**
- know*, 37, 77
- know how to*, vs. *can*, 166
- L**
- Lack of necessity, with modals and phrasal modals, 202–204, 214–215
- late*, 326
- lately*, 326
- Laws, 214
- least*, 373
- leave out*, 415
- less*, with comparatives, 352–353, 359
- less*, adjectives formed with, 305
- like*, *see also would like*
with gerunds or infinitives, 389, 402, 405
vs. *would like*, 193
- little*, in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 270–272
- look*
and adjectives, 305

in present continuous, 37
look after, 415
look up to, 415
lots of, in quantity expressions, 270
love, with gerunds or infinitives, 402, 405
luckily, 321, 326
 -ly
 adverbs formed with, 321
 as adjective ending, 322
 as adverb ending, 322

M

main, placement of, 305
 Main clauses, 141
 and future time clauses, 140
 and *if* clauses, 141
 and past time clauses, 80–81, 83–84
 Manner, adverbs of, 320–321, 325
many
 with comparatives, 356, 357
 in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 270–272
may
 as modal of future possibility
 forms of, 167, 168
 meaning and use of, 170, 171
 as modal of permission,
 forms of, 181
may be
 vs. *maybe*, 170
maybe
 as adverb of possibility, 320, 321, 325
 with advice and opinions, 209
 vs. *may be*, 170
me, vs. *I*, in short responses, 252
mean
 in past continuous, 77
 in present continuous, 37
 Measurements
 and adjectives, 305
 specific quantity expressions for,

277
might
 as modal of advice
 forms of, 202, 203
 meaning and use of, 208, 209, 214
 as modal of future possibility
 forms of, 167, 168
 meaning and use of, 170, 171
mind, with gerunds, 390
miss, with gerunds, 405
 Modals, 154–220, *see also* Modals and phrases of request, permission, desire, and preference; Modals of ability; Modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition; Modals of future possibility; Phrasal modals of advice and necessity
 with *and . . . too*, and *. . . either*, and *but*, 242–243
 with *and so* and *and neither*, 246–247
 and tag questions, 226, 227, 232
 Modals and phrases of request, permission, desire, and preference, 177–198
 forms of, 180–183
 meaning and use of, 186–187, 190–191, 193–194
 Modals of ability, *see also be able to; can; could*
 forms of, 158–160
 meaning and use of, 162–163
 Modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition
 forms of, 202–203
 meaning and use of, 208–210, 214–215
 Modals of future possibility
 forms of, 167–168
 meaning and use of, 170–171
 Modals of possibility, *see* Modals of future possibility
more, in comparatives, 349, 350, 352–353, 368–369
most, in superlatives, 368–369,

372–373
much
 in comparatives, 356, 357
 in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 270–272
 Musical instruments, with *the*, 294
must
 forms of, 202, 203
 meaning and use of, 210, 214, 215

N

Names, *see* Personal names
 Narrative, *see also* Background information
 and past continuous vs. simple past, 79
nearly, with *as . . . as*, 358
 Necessity/lack of necessity, with modals and phrasal modals, 202–204, 214–215
need, with infinitives, 405
 Negative imperatives, 20
 Negatives, *see also* Negative short answers; Negative statements and *as . . . as*, 359
 and tag questions, 232, 235
 with gerunds, 384
 with infinitives, 398
 with *too* and *enough*, 337
 Negative short answers
 in past continuous, 72
 in present continuous, 33
 in present perfect, 93
 in simple past, 51
 in simple present, 7
 with *used to*, 62
 Negative statements
 with *and . . . either* and *but*, 242–243
 with *and so* and *and neither*, 247
 with *be able to*, 160
 with comparatives, 357
 in future
 with *be going to*, 114

- with *will*, 125
 - with modals of ability, 163
 - with *can* for present and future ability, 158
 - with *could* for past ability, 159
 - with modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 202, 203
 - with modals of future possibility, 167, 168
 - with modals of permission, 181
 - in past continuous, 72
 - with phrasal modals of advice and necessity, 204, 205
 - in present continuous, 32, 40
 - in present perfect, 92
 - with adverbs, 104
 - with quantity expressions, 271, 272
 - in simple past, 50
 - in simple present, 6, 7
 - with tag questions, 226–228, 230
 - with *used to*, 62
 - with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 182–183
 - neither*, see also *and neither*
 - in short responses, 252
 - for similarities, 250
 - never*, with present perfect, 104
 - next*, in future time expressions, 122
 - no*, in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 271
 - No article (Ø), 264–265, 284, 285, 287, 293
 - Noncount nouns
 - with articles, 284–285, 287, 293
 - forms of, 264–266
 - meaning and use of,
 - with comparatives, 353, 356, 357
 - with specific quantity expressions, 276–277
 - with superlatives, 373
 - and *such . . . that* clauses, 329
 - not*, see also Negatives; Negative short answers; Negative statements and *neither*, 247
 - not . . . any*, 270
 - not . . . either*,
 - for similarities, 250
 - not . . . many*, 270
 - nothing*, and adjectives, 305
 - Nouns, see also Articles; Count nouns; Noncount nouns
 - with adjectives, 304–305
 - comparative forms of, 348–350, 352–353, 356–359
 - in general statements, 293–294
 - with gerunds, 385
 - and quantity expressions, 261–280
 - and *such . . . that* clauses, 329
 - superlative forms of, 368–369, 373–373
 - now*, 321, 326
- O**
- Object
 - gerunds as, 384, 385
 - with infinitives, 399
 - with phrasal verbs, 415
 - Object pronouns
 - in comparisons, 350
 - in short responses with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
 - obviously*, 321, 326
 - of*, in quantity expressions, 266, 269, 276–277
 - of all*, with superlatives, 373
 - offer*, with infinitives, 405
 - Offers
 - and imperatives, 22
 - with *would like*, 193
 - OK, in agreeing to requests, 187
 - on*, as particle, 415
 - one of*, with superlatives, 373
 - only*
 - placement of, 305
 - in quantity expressions, 272
 - Opinions
 - adverbs of opinion, 321, 325
 - and general statements, 209, 294
- Order of adjectives, 309–310
 - ought to*
 - forms of, 203–204, 207
 - meaning and use of, 208, 209, 214
 - out*, as particle, 415
 - over*, as particle, 419
 - own*, and present continuous, 37
- P**
- Particles, see Phrasal verbs
 - Past, 45–88, see also Continuing time up to now; Indefinite past time; Past continuous; Past participles; Past time clauses; Present perfect; Simple past modals of past ability forms of, 159–160 meaning and use of, 163
 - Past continuous, 73–79
 - forms of, 72–73
 - meaning and use of, 76–77, 79
 - and simultaneous events and interrupted events, 83
 - Past participles
 - and adjectives, 305
 - in present perfect, 92–93
 - Past time clauses, 80–85
 - forms of, 80–81
 - meaning and use of, 83–84
 - with *since*, 97
 - Perfect modals, see Past modals
 - perhaps*
 - as adverb of possibility, 320, 321, 325
 - with advice and opinions, 209
 - Permission, with modals, 181, 190–191
 - Personal names, with imperatives, 23
 - Phrasal modals of advice and necessity
 - forms of, 203–204
 - meaning and use of, 208–210,

- 214–215
- Phrasal verbs, 411–422
forms of, 414–415
meaning and use of, 418–419
- Physical sensations, and stative verbs, 37
- pick up*, 415
- plan*, with infinitives, 405
- Plans, and *be going to* and present continuous, 119–120, 131
- please*
with imperatives, 23
with requests, 186, 193
- pleased*, placement of, 305
- plenty of*, in quantity expressions, 270
- Politeness, *see*
Formality/informality
- Portions, specific quantity expressions for, 277
- Possibility/impossibility, *see also*
Modals of future possibility
adverbs of, 320–321, 325
and *if* clauses, 147
- Predictions
and *be going to*, 120, 130
and *if* clauses, 147
and *will*, 130
- prefer*, *see also would prefer*
with gerunds or infinitives, 402, 405
- Preferences, with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 194
- Prepositional phrases, after superlatives, 369, 372–373
- Prepositions, *see also* Prepositional phrases
gerunds after, 387–388
vs. particles, 415
- Present, 1–44, *see also* Modals of present possibility; Present continuous; Simple present
modals of present ability
forms of, 158–159, 160
meaning and use of, 162
- Present continuous, 29–44
with comparatives, 353
forms of, 32–33
as future, 115, 168
meaning and use of, 36–37, 40
as future, 119–120, 122
- Present perfect, 89–108
forms of, 92–93, 95
meaning and use of, 97, 100–101, 104
with superlatives, 372
- pretty*, 328, 331
- previous*, placement of, 305
- principal*, placement of, 305
- probably*
as adverb of possibility, 320, 321, 325
with *will* and *be going to*, 130
- prohibit*, with gerunds, 405
- Prohibition, with modals, 202–203, 215
- promise*, with infinitives, 405
- Promises
and *if* clauses, 147
with *will*, 131
- Pronouns
and adjectives, 305
with comparatives, 353
in information questions, 33, 93
object pronouns
with comparatives, 350
in short responses with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
in short responses with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
subject pronouns
in short responses with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
in tag questions, 228, 230
- Pronunciation, *see also* Reduced Forms
of *can* vs. *can't*, 159
of *have* and *has*, 95
of *used to*, 63
of verbs
ending in *-d/-ed*, 53
ending in *-s/-es*, 9
- Proper nouns, and tag questions, 228
- put down*, 415
- put up with*, 415
- Q
- Quantity expressions, 261–280
general quantity expressions
forms of, 265–266
meaning and use of, 270–272, 276
specific quantity expressions
forms of, 266
meaning and use of, 276–277
- Questions, *see* Information questions; Tag questions; *Yes/No* questions
- Quick decisions, with *will*, 131
- quite*
as adverb of degree, 328, 331
in quantity expressions, 272
- R
- rather*, *see would rather*
- really*, 328, 331
- Reasons
in accepting and refusing offers, 194
and *in order* + infinitive, 402
in refusing requests, 187
- recently*, 321, 326
- Reduced forms
of *be going to*, 118
of *did you*, 56
of *has/hasn't*, 95
of *have*, 95
of tag questions, 230
of *will*, 129
- Refusing offers, 194
- Refusing requests, 186–187
- Rejoinders, with *too*, *so*, *not* . . .
either, and *neither*, 250
- remember*
with gerunds or infinitives, 406
in statements about ability, 163
- Repeated actions

- and present perfect, 100
- and simple past, 57
- and simple present, 11
- and *used to*, 65
- Requests
 - and imperatives, 22
 - with modals
 - forms of, 180
 - meaning and use of, 186–187, 193
 - with *would like*, 193
 - with *would you mind* + gerund, 390
- Requirements, 214
- resist*, with gerunds, 405
- Responses, with *too*, *so*, *not . . . either*, and *neither*, 250
- Routines, and simple present, 11
- Rules, laws, and requirements, 14
- run out of*, 415

- S

- same*, placement of, 305
- Scheduled events, and simple present, 11
- Scientific facts, and simple present, 11
- see*
 - in simple present and present continuous, 37
 - in statements about ability, 163
- seem*, 37, 77
 - and adjectives, 305
 - with *it* subject + infinitive, 399
- Separable transitive phrasal verbs, 414, 415
- Sequential events, *see* Events in sequence
- s/-es (for simple present), 6, 7
 - pronunciation of verbs ending in, 9
- several*, in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 270
- Shapes, specific quantity expressions for, 277
- Short answers
 - contractions with, 115, 126
 - in future
 - with *be going to*, 114
 - with *will*, 125
 - with modals of ability
 - with *can* for present and future ability, 158
 - with *could* for past ability, 159
 - with modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 202
 - with modals of future possibility, 167, 168
 - with modals of permission, 181
 - in past continuous, 72
 - with phrasal modals of advice and necessity, 205
 - in present continuous, 33
 - in present perfect, 93
 - in simple past, 51
 - in simple present, 7
 - for tag questions, 226–228
 - with *used to*, 62
 - with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 182–183
 - to Yes/No questions with modals of request, 180
- Short responses
 - with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
- should/shouldn't*
 - forms of, 202, 203
 - meaning and use of, 208, 209, 214
- show up*, 415
- Signs, with gerunds, 390
- Similarities
 - with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, *and so*, *and neither*, *too*, *so*, *not . . . either*, and *neither*, 250
 - and *as . . . as*, 358
- Simple past, 47–68
 - forms of, 50–51, 53, 56, 62–63
 - meaning and use of, 57, 60, 61, 63
 - for completed actions, 76, 100
 - for events in sequence, 84
 - for interrupted events, 83
 - in narratives, 79
 - with *since*, 97
 - and tag questions, 227, 228
- Simple present, 3–16
 - forms of, 6–7, 9
 - in future time clauses, 141
 - with *if* clauses, 142
 - meaning and use of, 11–12
 - and stative verbs with, 37
 - and time expressions, 61, 65
 - and tag questions, 227, 228
- Simultaneous events, and past time clauses, 83
- since*, and present perfect, 97
- Situations, *see also* Actions; Conditions; Events; States
 - changing situations, and comparatives, 353
 - and *used to*, 65
- so*, 328, *see also and so*
 - in quantity expressions, 272
 - for similarities, 250
- so . . . that* clauses, 328–329, 331
- so far*, with present perfect, 104
- some*
 - as indefinite article, 284, 285, 287
 - in quantity expressions, 265, 266, 270
 - someone*, and adjectives, 305
 - somewhat*, 328, 331
 - soon*, 321, 326
- Specific quantity expressions
 - forms of, 266
 - meaning and use of, 276–277
- Speech, *see* Conversation; Discourse; Formality/informality; Intonation
- start*, with gerunds or infinitives, 405–406
- Statements, *see also* General statements; Negative statements
 - with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*, and *but*, 242–243
 - with *and so* and *and neither*, 246–247
 - with *be able to*, 160
 - in future

- Statements (*continued*)
 with *be going to*, 114
 with *will*, 125
 with modals of ability, 163
 with *can* for present and future ability, 158
 with *could* for past ability, 159
 with modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 202, 203
 with modals of future possibility, 167, 168
 with modals of permission, 181
 in past continuous, 72
 with phrasal modals of advice and necessity, 204, 205
 in present continuous, 32, 40
 in present perfect, 92
 with adverbs, 104
 with *ever*, 101
 with quantity expressions, 271, 272
 in simple past, 50
 in simple present, 6, 7
 and tag questions, 226–228, 230, 236
 with *used to*, 62
 with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 182–183
- States, *see also* Conditions; Situations
 and gerunds, 389
 and infinitives, 402
 and present perfect, 100
 and simple past, 57
 and simple present, 12
 and *used to*, 65
- Stative verbs
 and adjectives, 304–305
 and adjectives vs. adverbs, 322
 and past continuous, 77
 and present continuous, 37
 and simple present, 12, 37
 in statements about ability, 163
- stick up for*, 415
- still*
 and present continuous, 40
 and present perfect, 104
- stop*, with gerunds or infinitives, 406
- Stories, *see* Narrative
- strangely*, 321
- Subject
 gerunds as, 384, 385, 403
 of imperatives, 20, 22
 infinitives as, 399
it subject, with infinitives, 399, 403
 and simple present, 7
- Subject pronouns
 in short responses with *too*, *either*, and *neither*, 252
 in tag questions, 228, 230
- such . . . that* clauses, 329, 331
- Suggestions, with modals and phrasal modals, 209
- Superlatives, 365–378
 forms of, 368–369
 meaning and use of, 372–373
- sure*, in agreeing to requests, 187
- Surprise, and tag questions, 232
- surprisingly*, 321, 326
- T
- Tag questions, 223–238
 answers to, 235
 forms of, 226–228
 meaning and use of, 231–232
 reduced forms of, 230
- take*, with *it* subject + infinitive, 399
- taste*
 in past continuous, 77
 in present continuous, 37
 in statements about ability, 163
- Tense, *see also* Future; Past; Present
 changes in, and time expressions, 61
- than*
 and comparatives, 349–350, 352–353
 and superlatives, 369
 with *would rather*, 194
- thank you*, in accepting and refusing offers, 194
- that*, and tag questions, 228
- that* clauses, *see so . . . that* clauses; *such . . . that* clauses
- the*, *see* Definite articles
- the . . . after next*
 in future time expressions, 122
- the fewest*, 373
- the least*, 373
- the most*, 373
- then*, with *if* clauses, 141, 142
- there is/there are*
 with specific quantity expressions, 266
 and tag questions, 228
- these*, and tag questions, 228
- they*, and tag questions, 228
- think*
 in past continuous, 77
 in present continuous, 37
- this*
 in future time expressions, 122
 and tag questions, 228
- those*, and tag questions, 228
- through*, as particle, 419
- Time, *see* Continuing time up to now; Future time clauses; Indefinite past time; Past time clauses; Time expressions
 adverbs of, 321, 326
- Time clauses, *see* Future time clauses; Past time clauses
- Time expressions
 for future, 122
 in past time clauses, 81
 and present continuous, 36, 40
 with present continuous, 119
 and present perfect, 97, 100
 and simple past, 57, 60, 61
 and simple present, 61
 and *used to*, 65
- Time words, *see* Time expressions
- to*, *see* Infinitives
- today*
 as adverb of time, 321, 326
 in future time expressions, 122

tomorrow
as adverb of time, 321
in future time expressions, 122
tonight, in future time expressions,
122
too, 335, 337, see also *and . . . too*
in quantity expressions, 272
in short responses, 252
for similarities, 250
Transitive verbs, phrasal verbs as,
414–415, 418
try on, 415
turn down, 415
turn out, 415

U

Uncertainty, *see*
Certainty/uncertainty
understand, 37, 77
in statements about ability, 163
unexpectedly, 320, 321
up, as particle, 415, 419
used to
forms of, 62–63
meaning and use of, 65

V

Verb phrases
with *and . . . too*, *and . . . either*,
and *but*, 242–243
with *and so* and *and neither*,
246–247
Verbs, *see also* Action verbs; *be*; *do*;
Future; *have*; Past; Present;
Stative verbs; Verb phrases;
other specific verbs
action verbs, in statements about
ability, 163
and adverbs, 321
auxiliary verbs, and adverbs,
321
with gerunds, 387, 405–406
with infinitives, 398–399,
405–406

in past time clauses, 81
phrasal verbs, 411–422
forms of, 414–415
meaning and use of, 418–419
pronunciation of
ending in *-d/-ed*, 53
ending in *-s/-es*, 9
very
as adverb of degree, 328, 331
vs. *too*, 337

W

want
with infinitives, 402, 405
and *would like*, 193
Warnings
and *if* clauses, 147
and imperatives, 22
with modals and phrasal modals,
209
was/wasn't, *see also be*; *was/were*
in past continuous, 72
was/were, *see also be*
in negative statements or
questions, 51
in past continuous, 72
watch out, 415
weigh, 37, 77
well, 322, 349, 369
were/weren't, *see also be*; *was/were*
in past continuous, 72
what, as subject in information
questions, 7, 33, 51, 63, 73
when
in future time clauses, 141, 144
in past time clauses, 83, 84
while
in future time clauses, 141
in past time clauses, 83
who, as subject in information
questions, 7, 33, 51, 63, 73
Wh- questions, *see* Information
questions
will (for future), *see also* Future
continuous
forms of, 125–126

with *be able to*, 160
with future time clauses and *if*
clauses, 140–142
meaning and use of, 130–131,
170–171
as modal of future possibility,
167, 168
reduced forms of, 129
with *be able to*, 162–163
will, as modal of request, *see also*
will (for future); *won't*
forms of, 180
meaning and use of, 186–187
will never, 406
won't
in agreeing to and refusing
requests, 186, 187
in negative short answers to
Yes/No questions with modals
of request, 180
would like
forms of, 182–183
meaning and use of, 193–194
would prefer
forms of, 182–183
meaning and use of, 194
would rather
forms of, 182–183
meaning and use of, 194
would/wouldn't, as modal of
request, *see also would like*;
would prefer; *would rather*;
would you mind . . . ?
forms of, 180
meaning and use of, 186
would you mind . . . ?, 390

Y

-y, adjectives formed with, 305
Yes/No questions
in future
with *be going to*, 114
with *will*, 125
with modals of ability
with *can* for present and future
ability, 158

Yes/No questions (*continued*)

- with *could* for past ability, 159
- with modals of advice, necessity, and prohibition, 202, 203
- with modals of future possibility, 167, 168
- with modals of permission, 181
- with modals of request, 180
- in past continuous, 72
- with phrasal modals of advice and necessity, 205

- in present continuous, 33, 40
- in present perfect, 93
 - with adverbs, 104
 - with *ever*, 101
- in simple past, 51
- in simple present, 7
- and tag questions, 227, 231
- with *used to*, 62
- with *would like*, *would prefer*, and *would rather*, 182–183
- yesterday*, 321, 326
- yet*, 104

you

- as subject of imperatives, 20, 22, 23
- in Yes/No questions with modals of request, 180

Z

- Zero article (\emptyset), 264–265, 284, 285, 287, 293

Grammar Sense 2

SERIES DIRECTOR
Susan Kesner Bland

Easy-to-use and comprehensive, *Grammar Sense* is a discourse-based grammar series that gives students a true understanding of the English language and how it works.

Grammar Sense 2 enables students at the intermediate level to communicate with ease and clarity as they develop a natural sense of *how*, *when*, and *why* English speakers use grammatical structures as they do.

- Learning is made easy with clear chapter organization, concise charts, and level-appropriate explanations.
- Structures are presented with authentic examples and communicative exercises so students experience and practice language as it occurs in real life.
- Form is introduced before Meaning and Use, allowing students to build accuracy before focusing on appropriate and meaningful communication.
- Special sections build accuracy, fluency, and confidence:
Beyond the Sentence shows how structures function differently in extended discourse.
Informally Speaking demonstrates the differences between spoken and written English.
Vocabulary Notes highlights connections between key vocabulary and grammatical structures.

The three levels of *Grammar Sense*

Level 1: Basic

Level 2: Intermediate

Level 3: High Intermediate to Advanced

Grammar Sense 2

Student Book	019-436571-9	Teacher's Book	019-436574-3
Student Book Volume A	019-436572-7	Cassettes	019-436575-1
Student Book Volume B	019-436573-5	Audio CDs	019-437814-4
Workbook	019-436621-9	Student Book with CDs	019-436634-0
Workbook Volume A	019-436622-7		
Workbook Volume B	019-436623-5		

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com

